

Gc
929.2
W297w
v.1
pt.1
1710075

M. L.

REYNOLDS HISTORICAL
GENEALOGY COLLECTION

.6



ALLEN COUNTY PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 1833 01435 7930



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2019

<https://archive.org/details/descendantsofric11wate>

744 no 111

DESCENDANTS
of
RICHARD WATERHOUSE

OF
PORTSMOUTH, N. H.

V. 1. p. 1
With Notes on the

Descendants of Jacob Waterhouse of New London, Conn., Joshua
Waterhouse of New Jersey and others.

Also

A sketch of the Waterhouse Family in England.

Compiled by

George Herbert Waterhouse

Member of the New England Historic Genealogical
Society.

Children's children are the crown of old men; and
the glory of children are their fathers. Prov. XVII: 6.

8E7
w304

1710075

To my much esteemed and beloved father, Eli Leland Waterhouse, whose oft repeated admonition to his sons that "a good name is rather to be chosen than great riches" has never been forgotten, this work is affectionately dedicated.

FOREWORD.

The following Preface and Introduction were written ten years ago. At that time a typewritten copy of the manuscript had been made with four carbon copies. An attempt to raise funds to defray the cost of publication unfortunately did not succeed, and it was then decided to have the manuscript copies bound and placed in several libraries. Little time has been available for such work but now an index has been completed and the binding will be done at once.

Thus endeth a task begun nearly fifty years ago. Had the writer realized the amount of time that would be required to compile the genealogy it would never have been undertaken. However, many pleasant acquaintances have been made and now that the work is finished there are no regrets but rather a feeling of satisfaction that because of it many records will be preserved which otherwise would have been lost forever.

Wakefield, Mass., Feb. 5, 1934.

PREFACE.

"A painful work it is and more than difficult, wherein what toyle hath been taken, as no man thinketh, so no man believeth, but he that hath made the trial."

Anthony a Wood.

Guppy, in his "Homes of Family Names", says, - "Most books have a history attached to their inception" and this volume is no exception to the rule.

The interest in family history which led to the compilation of this genealogy was aroused by a most unusual occasion. The writer's paternal grandmother lived to a remarkable age, lacking only a few months of being one hundred years old at the time of her death. With hardly a sickness in her life she was in ~~possession~~ possession of her faculties, to an unusual degree, to the end which came one August day, during an excessive hot spell, when she layed down to rest and in an hour or two "she was not for God took her." Her last years were spent in the home of her son, the writer's father, who was considerably interested in genealogy, and who was nearly seventy years old. Often did they talk over the family connections without, however, exciting much interest among the other members of the family.

Upon her ninety-fifth birthday a company of relatives and friends gathered to offer congratulations and among the former was one who had collected and published the records of several generations of his own immediate branch of the family. As the result of an examination of these records and the discussion which followed during the evening the writer decided to attempt to compile a history of the Waterhouse family in America. It was soon discovered, however, that the task was much greater than supposed and the original plan was abandoned and the work confined to the compiler's own branch, that of Richard Waterhouse, of Boston, Mass., and Portsmouth, N.H.

More than thirty years have passed since that evening and during all that period, with some interruptions, a large part of the spare time of a busy life has been given to the compilation of this genealogy. It is to be regretted that the records are not more complete, in some families, but the possibility of their destruction by fire, and increasing years, have impelled the writer to attempt to have the work published without further delay.

Many genealogists close the records of the daughters with their marriage, feeling that their children belong in the genealogy of the family of the husband. The great interest, however, which many of the Waterhouse daughters and granddaughters have taken in this work induced the writer to carry the records, in most cases, through the grandchildren of the daughters, and, in some instances, when specially requested, even further. The many pleasant surprises which have been experienced in finding persons of other names with Waterhouse ancestors have, in large measure, compensated for the extra labor.

In a work of this kind, consisting so largely of dates, all of which have probably been copied several times in the course of its preparation, mistakes are sure to occur, but care has been used to make them as few as possible. It is also occasionally difficult to get a reliable date because of disagreement between members of a family as to which is correct. We wish have had cases in which three or four dates were given for the same event by as many members of the family and each was positive his date was correct.

We wish to extend our sincere appreciation to all postmasters and public officials for their courtesy and assistance and to all kinsmen who have so kindly, and sometimes so patiently, answered our letters. Especially do we acknowledge our indebtedness to Moses Waterhouse, of Scarborough, Me., whose printed records of the ~~Scarbrough~~ ~~Waterhouse~~ of the ear-

ly generations of the Scarboro branch were of invaluable assistance; to Hiram Waterhouse, of Kennebunk, Me., for very great help on the Kennebunk branch; to Prof. Sylvester Waterhouse, of St Louis, Mo., for data of the Barrington, N.H., branch; to James Prentiss Waterhouse, of Poland, Me., for much assistance on the Poland branch; to Mrs. Fannie I. Prout, of Saco, Me., for work in Saco and Biddeford; to Henry W. Verrill, of Portland, Me., for much work on the Portland records and families; to Miss Gertrude Carver, of Augusta, Me., for a great deal of work in copying the records of the vital statistics of the State of the Waterhouse name; to Mrs. Mabel W. Bedell, of Auburn, Me., whose interest in the work is so great that she found time, in spite of her cares as the mother of several young children, to make typewritten copies of much of the material used in the biographies of Professors Benjamin and Sylvester Waterhouse; to the writer's brother, the Rev. Joseph E. Waterhouse, who spent practically one whole college vacation searching public records and obtaining family records throughout the State of Maine; to the writer's brother, John H. Waterhouse, for very considerable financial assistance, and also to the following for financial assistance,- William A. Waterhouse, of Melrose, Mass; Laforest Waterhouse, Boston, Mass; William S. Waterhouse, New York City;

Introduction.

"It is with Antiquity as with Ancestry; Nations are proud of the one and Individuals of the other; but if they are nothing in themselves, that which is their pride ought to be their humiliation."

Colton.

The Waterhouses of America are descended principally from Jacob Waterhouse, who settled in New London, Conn., Richard Waterhouse, who settled in Portsmouth, N.H., and Joshua Waterhouse, who settled in Hunterdon County, N.J.

Jacob Waterhouse probably came to this country soon after 1630, in a colony brought over by Gov. Winthrop, and perhaps remained for a time in Watertown, Mass. It is supposed that he was one of a company who removed from Watertown and vicinity to Wethersfield, Conn. The Indian name of this town, the oldest in the state, was Pyquag. It was later called Watertown and soon after changed to Wethersfield. Jacob Waterhouse was a soldier from this town in the Pequot Indian Campaign in 1637 but in 1643 became one of the original settlers of New London in the same state. In this branch of the family, after the first generation, the name appears with various spellings such as Waterous, Waterus, Watrus, Watros, Watriss, and, most common of all, Watrous. A more extended account of the descendants of Jacob Waterhouse will be found in the appendix.

Richard Waterhouse and his descendants constitute the subject of this book.

Joshua Waterhouse came to this country about 1735. A short account of his descendants will be found in the appendix.

Two others of the name were in and near Boston, Mass. at a very

early date. Rev. Thomas Waterhouse, came from Cotenham, Suffolk Co. Eng. He was educated at the Charter House, London, and afterwards at Emmanuel College, Cambridge, Eng. He was made a freeman in Dorchester, Mass., now a part of Boston in 1640. On the 30 of May 1649 the Town of Dorchester voted to tax the proprietors of Thompsons Island, belonging to the town, "for the maintenance of a school in Dorchester. This order, it is claimed, was the first public provision made for a free school in America "by a direct tax or assessment on the inhabitants of the town." The rent imposed on the island was twenty pounds sterling, "to be paid to such a schoolmaster as shall undertake to teach English, latine, and other tongues, and also writing." This Thomas Waterhouse was the first teacher of the school. Later, his wife inheriting some property in England, he returned there and finally settled at Ash Bocking. He was ejected by the Act of Uniformity in 1662 and died about 1680 aged nearly eighty years.

David Waterhouse, probably a son of Thomas above mentioned, born in England 1658, was a merchant in Boston, Mass. and became a member of the Ancient and Honorable Artillery Company there in 1679. He was very prominent in the outbreak of 1689 against Gov. Andros, and was one of the signers of the letter, dated April 18 in that year, requiring the Governor to give up his authority and surrender the forts to the people. He was one of the Committee of Safety in 1689. In the New York Genealogical Record for 1916 we find that on 18 June 1694, David Waterhouse, age 35, of St. Mary's Hill, London, "where he has lived for 3 months, theretofore of Boston in New England for 7 years. Merchant," made a deposition. He was residing in London in 1700 and we hear no more of him in this country.

There were also Waterhouses in Virginia as early as about 1642 but we have made no attempt to trace them.

In the early part of the last century, and later, several others of the name came to this country from England. They were, largely, wool-en manufacturers and their descendants are to be found most numerous in the mill cities and towns of Massachusetts, Rhode Island and Connecticut and around Philadelphia, Pa. Mr. George T. Waterhouse, of Waterbury, Conn., in a letter dated 5 Mar. 1888, says his father, Wright Waterhouse, living in Connecticut, carded the wool, spun the yarn and wove the piece of cloth that was awarded the first prize at the World's Fair, held in London, Eng., in 1851.

One other family remains to be noticed. About 1895-96 the writer received a letter from Mr. Archibald N. Waterhouse, of Philadelphia, Pa., asking if he was eligible to membership in the Society of the Sons of the American Revolution. The only information he could give of his ancestry was that his grandfather was John Waterhouse, born in Dover, N.H., 4 Apr. 1800. Two of the latter's children could give but little further assistance saying that their father was always very reticent concerning family affairs and that he never told them who his parents were.

As Dover is close to Barrington, N.H., the writer assumed that he belonged to the ~~Barrington~~ Barrington branch of the family but a record of his birth in an old note book, kept about 1800 by a member of this branch, is the only reference to be found of him in that vicinity and this is worded in such a way as to indicate that his name may not at first have been Waterhouse. The records of the Barrington branch, at about the time of his birth, are very complete and we can find no place into which he fits. The writer also interviewed several very elderly members of the Barrington branch, living in Dover and Barrington, soon after the receipt of the letter from Mr. Waterhouse and they were all positive John Waterhouse could not have been the son of any Waterhouse

of that branch. A record of John Waterhouse's descendants will be found in the appendix.

In closing it may be of interest to state that there is in our family, as in many others, the legend that the family descended from "three brothers" who came over from England. About the middle of the last century the Rev. Charles Waterhouse, of Bricksburg, N.J., a descendant of Jacob Waterhouse, of New London, Conn., compiled a genealogy of that branch of the family but, unfortunately, when almost ready for the printer the manuscript was burned. In a letter to his brother, in 1881, he gives a brief sketch of the family made from memory and a few records which he saved and has this to say under the heading "The Three Brothers."

"The tradition among the Waterhouses families in Connecticut is, that three brothers came over from England in the days of the Pilgrim fathers, and settled in the New England states. They are believed to have come in the year 1630 with governor John Winthrop, in a colony of about three hundred families, embracing some fifteen hundred persons, mostly Puritans, and largely from Middlesex shire, or county, in the southeastern part of which London is situated. One of the three brothers seems to have settled in southeastern New Hampshire or the southeastern part of Maine, where I am told the Waterhouse families are numerous at this day. Thomas, a second brother, whose name I found on the ancient Records in Boston, seems to have remained in eastern Massachusetts; and from him probably descended Dr. Benjamin Waterhouse, who was for many years a Professor in the Medical department of Harvard University, at Cambridge, and is said to have taken a prominent part in the introduction of vaccination into this country. The third brother, Jacob, appears to have been the youngest of the three, and is believed to have stopped a short time in Watertown, near Boston, and then to have come with a party through the wilderness to the Connecticut river, and settled at Wethersfield on the west side of the river, immediately south of Hartford, and afterwards to have removed to New London. Most of the these particulars respecting Gov. Winthrop and his colony, and the party of first settlers in Wethersfield, I obtained, Sept. 14, 1848, from Mr. Belden, who was then Clerk of the town, and had been investigating its history."

The "brother" who settled in southeastern New Hampshire was, of course, Richard, and even in the light of all the genealogical matter which has appeared since 1881 we have nothing to show that Richard Thomas and Jacob were brothers. Thomas, mentioned above as the second

"brother", as we have seen, came from Suffolk county, not Middlesex. He did not remain in eastern Massachusetts but returned to England, and was not the ancestor of Dr. Benjamin Waterhouse of Harvard University.

Judging from the birth of their children Richard was probably considerably younger than Jacob and Thomas Waterhouse.

Just before the writer began the preparation of this genealogy Mr. Moses Waterhouse, of Scarborough, Me., compiled and had printed a record of his own branch of the family in which he says,- "Moses Waterhouse, son of Richard Waterhouse, who was the son of Nathaniel Waterhouse, who was the son of Joseph Waterhouse, Jr., who was the son of Joseph Waterhouse, who came from England(two brothers with him), and settled in Portsmouth, N.H., Of the other two brothers I know nothing." He later added, with pen, "except that one, whose name was Timothy, settled in Gloucester, Mass; the other whose name was Richard, settled in Rhode Island." The latter statement is getting nearer to the facts for two names of an older generation are mentioned, but the truth is that Richard was the first of the name in Portsmouth. Timothy did not come from England or settle in Gloucester, but was the son of Richard and spent all his life in Portsmouth. Joseph Waterhouse did not come from England but was the son of Timothy and was born in Portsmouth and later removed to Scarborough, Me.

Richard Waterhouse had a son Samuel many of whose descendants live in Wells, now Kennebunk, Me. There is a story in this branch of another set of "three brothers" who came to this country under rather thrilling circumstances. Samuel Waterhouse and his two brothers were serving on a British man-of-war. On a dark night, while lying at anchor in an English port, they jumped overboard and swam to an American vessel near by where they were taken on board and brought to this country.

There is this much to be said, however, for the three brothers in our branch of the family. Richard Waterhouse had three sons so

that his descendants, in the male line, are from three brothers. Again, Richard's son, Timothy Waterhouse, whose descendants are the most numerous of the three, also had three sons so that his progeny, in the male line, is descended from three brothers.

The first of these three brothers was Richard Waterhouse, who was born in 1600, and died in 1650. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county. His son, Timothy Waterhouse, was born in 1630, and died in 1680. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county. His son, Timothy Waterhouse, was born in 1660, and died in 1710. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county.

The second of these three brothers was John Waterhouse, who was born in 1600, and died in 1650. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county. His son, Timothy Waterhouse, was born in 1630, and died in 1680. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county. His son, Timothy Waterhouse, was born in 1660, and died in 1710. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county.

The third of these three brothers was Thomas Waterhouse, who was born in 1600, and died in 1650. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county. His son, Timothy Waterhouse, was born in 1630, and died in 1680. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county. His son, Timothy Waterhouse, was born in 1660, and died in 1710. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county.

The fourth of these three brothers was William Waterhouse, who was born in 1600, and died in 1650. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county. His son, Timothy Waterhouse, was born in 1630, and died in 1680. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county. His son, Timothy Waterhouse, was born in 1660, and died in 1710. He was the first of a family which has since become one of the most numerous in the county.

THE SURNAME.

"You had not your name for nothing."

Old Proverb.

A Surname is a name added to the baptismal or given name to indicate the family to which the individual bearing it belongs, and so called because it was originally written between the lines over the other name, ("over-name") instead of after it as at present. At one time it was occasionally written Surname but this term is usually considered to have a somewhat different meaning.

The subject of Surnames with their origin or derivation is exceedingly interesting. It is said that all names were originally significant and while the writer has been engaged upon this feature of the work he has often, in his imagination, gone back over the centuries and wondered when, where and under what circumstances our name originated and what sort of a person it was who first bore the name Waterhouse or perhaps was known as de Waterhouse.

For several reasons it has been impossible to make any investigations concerning the source of our name beyond the examination of the various books on English surnames. In making this examination much information was obtained on the subject in general, a brief presentation of which, it is thought, will be of considerable interest.

In the earliest times and for a long period each person had but one name, and that name, we are told, was generally invented for the individual, in allusion to the circumstances attending his birth, or to some personal quality he possessed, or which his parents fondly hoped he might hereafter possess. Such names are Adam, Eve, Abraham,

Joseph, David, Isaiah, Pharaoh, Ulysses, Romulus, etc., etc. As the people increased in numbers, however, various ways were devised to distinguish the different individuals such as the patronimic and the local name, both of which will be explained later. Also the descriptive element was introduced as, "Elijah the Tishbite," "Simon the Zealot," "Dionysius the Tyrant," "Alexander the Great," etc. The Romans had a very complete system of nomenclature each citizen usually having three names as, Marcus Tullius Cicero, Publius Cornelius Scipio. With the overthrow of the Western empire, however, this system was lost, and the barbarians who overthrew it brought back the single name once more. At this time the one name Alarac, seems to have been sufficient even for so important a person as the King of the Goths.

When Christianity spread among the Northern nations of Europe the people, as they were baptized into this faith, dropped their pagan names and, as a matter of course, were given Christian baptismal names and for a long time this was the only name possessed by the one upon whom it was bestowed. Naturally such names as Peter, Paul, James, John, etc. were favorites and, indeed, we are told of one occasion upon which a large was baptized where all the men were given the name of Paul and all the women the name of Catherine. At another baptism all the men received the name of Peter and all the women the name of Margaret. As the families increased, however, so many persons were found bearing the same name that it again became necessary to find some way to remedy the growing confusion. Various methods were in use for a time including those already mentioned. Sobriquets or Nicknames were also largely used. These described the physical and moral qualities, habits, professions etc., as Harold Hardfoot, Richard Coeur de Lion. Gradually a change took place which finally led to the adoption of hereditary surnames as we know them today.

Most authorities agree that the practice began in Normandy about the year 1000 and gradually extended itself into England, although surnames were known to some extent in the latter country considerably before this time. However, it seems to have been some centuries later before they became general among the people.

These names originated in an almost endless variety of ways, being derived from personal or Christian names, places, features of the land scape as, hills, trees, etc., beasts, birds, fishes, insects, flowers, plants, fruits, metals, games, numerals, parts of the human body, diseases, weather, exclamations, occupations, trader's signs, offices, nicknames, edifices, time, seasons, etc. etc.

The following brief list of rather uncommon names taken at random from the index of "Surnames of Suffolk County," by Bowditch, will probably cause considerable surprise to one who has not given the subject of surnames any thought. Some of these names were in use in England but are now obsolete.

Ague, Allchorus, Always, Appletree, Ass, Axe, Baldhead, Barefoot, Barnfather, Bedbug, Belly, Hindloose, Bitterwolf, Blessing, Blunder, Byby, Boils, Bones, Booze, Bowels, Bricklayer, Bridecake, Burnup, Bygod, Careless, Candy, Catty, Cheese, Cheater, Chicken, Coal, Coffee, Cowherd, Crackbone, Cuckoo, Curlyhead, Lam, Dew, Drawwater, Earwhisper, Egg, Fatt, Feathers, Fever, Figg, Firebrace, Foothead, Fourname, Freshwater, Goodpasture, Gab, Getlive, Godshall, Gossip, Gotobed, Greygoose, Hailstone, Halfhide, Headache, Halfnaked, Heaven, Hell, Devil, Death, Hogsmouth, Housekeeper, Kiss, Kneebone, Leaper, Leatherhead, Liptrap, Longbottom, Middlecoat, Morebread, Morningstar, Motherwell, Muchmore, Myhill, Newbegin, Nose, Oakenbottom, Officer, Paradise, Parlor, Peasoup, Physic, Pigfoot, Pighog, Hotham, Pitchfork, Pluckrose, Poodle, Quart, Quirk, Rain, Raisin, Ramebottom, Rat, Ratter, Rattlebog, Beckless, Ropeyarn, Scaffold,

Saucer, Scoer, Scripture, Sefowl, Setright, Shakelady, Sharpshooters, Shingle, Shortleggs, Singmaster, Skin, Slaughterer, Slipshoe, Stockings, Snake, Spider, Staggers, Startup, Strawmat, Stunt, Sugarman, Sunday, Sweetapple, Teeth, Testimony, Thickbroom, Tickle, Toowater, Tomb, Toot, Toogood, Topcoat, Tree, Troublefind, Trufitt, Turnipseed, Twentyman, Twopotts, Twoyearold, Upfill, Upward, Vast, Victory, Village, Walkup, Waterworks, Weatherhogg, Welbeloved, Wellcome, Whalebelly, Wife, Would-have, Wildgoose, Wintersmith, Wolfhunt, Wombwell, Yalowhaire, Yesterday, Youngblood, Zigzag and zeal. Even this list will go far to confirm what Camden says i.e. " we have borrowed names from everything both good and bad."

The variety of names is also rather amusingly shown by a list of persons who were, at certain times, members of the English House of Commons. The arrangement is taken from Lower's " English Surnames."

A Fox	A Hare	A Rooke
Two Drakes	A Finch	Two Martins
Three Cocks	A Hart	Two Herons
Two Lambs	A Leach	A Swan
Two Bakers	Two Taylors	A Turner
A Plummer	A Miller	A Farmer
A Cooper	An Abbott	A Falconer

Nine Smiths!!!

A Porter, Three Pitts, Two Hills,
Two Woods, An Orchard, and a Earne,
Two Lemons with one Peel!
Two Roses, One Ford, Two Brookes
One Flood and yet but one Fish!
A Forester, an Ambler, a Hunter,
and only one Ryder.

"But what is a most surprising and melancholy thing of all, it has never had more than One Christian belonging to it, and at present is without any!"

Names are classified according to their origin, different writers employing anywhere from four to eight or more classes. Bardsley in his book on "English Surnames" says that every surname in all the countries of Europe will be found in one of the following divisions i.e.

1. PERSONAL NAMES.

These names are put by others under the headings PATRONIMIC; SURNAME, CHRISTIAN NAME. Lower says that the earliest approach to the present method of surnames was by the use of the father's name or patronimic. This form is common in the Bible as, "Joshua the son of Nun," or "Simon Barjonas," Simon the son of Jonas." When this practice was introduced into England the word son was usually added and Adam's son became Adamson, Isaac's son Isaacson, William's son Williamson, etc. In Scotland the prefix Mac was used to denote son and Macdonald was the son of Donald. The Normans prefixed Fitz and FitzGilbert was the son of Gilbert. In Russia the termination witz was used and Peter Paulowitz was Peter the son of Paul. The Poles used sky in the same sense as, James Petrosky, James the son of Peter. The Irish besides using Mac prefixed O' meaning grandson as, O'Neale, O'Hara, etc. a form still retained. The Welsh used the adjunct ap meaning son as, David ap Howell, i.e. David the son of Howell. They had a curious custom of stringing the names out one after the other to include sometimes seven or eight generations. Thus if a certain person named Jenkin was asked his name he would reply perhaps "Jenkin ap Griffith ap Robinson ap William ap Rees ap Evan" meaning Jenkin son of Griffith son of Robinson son of William son of Rees son of

Evan. An amusing story is quoted in Lower's "English Surnames" regarding this practice as follows. "An Englishman riding one dark night among the mountains, heard a cry of distress, proceeding apparently from a man who had fallen into a ravine near the highway, and, on listening more attentively, heard the words, 'Heelp master, help!' in a voice truly Cambrian. 'Help! what, who are you?' inquired the traveller. "Jenkins ap Griffith ap Robinson ap William ap Rees ap Evan" was the response. 'Lazy fellows that ye be,' rejoined the Englishman, setting spurs to his horse, to lie rolling in that hole, half a dozen of ye; why, in the name of common sense, dont ye help one another out?'"

Another group of Personal names are those given or Christian names which have become surnames without any change as, Oliver, Lewis, Lawrence, Thomas, etc.

2. LOCAL SURNAMES,-

This is one of the largest classes of names and includes those taken from villages, towns, districts, edifices, trader's signs, local features of the landscape, etc. etc. This class would include such names as Berkeley, Clifton, Hill, Brook, House. The connection of individuals with places was anciently indicated by such particles as, at or atte, de, of, and by. A person living near the water or by the water was known as at-the-water or by-the-water which finally became Atwater and Bywater. The prefix de has always been in special favor owing to its Normandy-french origin, and in some cases has been retained to the present day, as Roger de Boardman. "Simon of Cyrene" would be an instance of the use of the particle of.

3. OFFICIAL SURNAMES,-

This class includes those names derived from official positions or offices both Civil and Ecclesiastical as, King, Duke, Lord, Con-

stable, Steward, Deacon, Abbott, Pope.

4. OCCUPATIONAL SURNAMES,-

These are called by some TRADE names. As might be expected, a man's occupation gave him notoriety, especially if he was skilled in his handicraft, and thus we have such names as Baker, Farmer, Fisher, Cook, Smith, Carpenter, Brewer, Hornblower.

5. NICKNAMES,-

Barber writes of these names as follows,- "Unquestionably the oldest names of all are those derived from bynames, given on account of a strong peculiarity of figure, feature, character, deed of prowess, eccentricity of dress, speech or carriage. Among primitive nations the slightest deviation from the ordinary course of life or difference among his fellows was enough to mark a man." Such names are Bigg, Little, Short, Jay, Barebones, Peacock, Harefoot, Strongman, Fogg.

Barber in his "British Family Names" uses three classes in addition to the above i.e. CLAN or TRIBAL names in which he includes certain names which will be found in the above classification under Personal names; FOREIGN names brought into England from the Continent as Frere, Beauchamp, Durrant; FOUNDLING names. Regarding the latter Barber says,- "There is every reason to believe that we are indebted to the parish beadle, (a parish official), and the workhouse officials for many extraordinary and even ridiculous names which cannot be derived from any known sources, and they remain a puzzle to all who would attempt to clear them up, unless they are classed in this section." For instance, a girl named Anne was christened on Monday and being a waif was named Anne Monday, after the day of the week. A boy who was laid "atte Mr. Garratt's dore" during the night was christened John Bynight. An old parish record has the following,- "A male child was found in

our parish with a penny in his hand and called Henry Penny." Lower quotes the following amusing epitaph concerning the same name.

"Reader if cash thou art in want of any
Dig four feet deep, and thou shalt find a Penny!"

Such names as Haycock, because deserted under a haycock, Lillywhite, and Sweetapple are considered by some to belong in this class.

The name WATERHOUSE, doubtless belongs in the class of "Local Names." The writer of a book entitled "The Norman People," says it is the old Norman name Wasthouse, and gives as instances Alan Wastehose or Wastehouse of Normandy, and Roger de Wateruse of England, but Bardsley claims that Wastehose is an entirely different name.

Guppy in his "Homes of Family Names," says, "The source of the name of Waterhouse is a little doubtful. Waterhouses is the name of a place in the County of Strafford, and of a village in the County of Durham."

Harrison in his "Surnames of the United Kingdom," says the name comes from the Old English waeter-hus, the latter syllable being the Old England form of the word house, the whole word meaning "Dweller at the House by the Water."

Bardsley in his "Dictionary of Names," places it in the class of Local Names, meaning, "at the Water-house from residence thereby."

Foster in his "History of the Deanery of Doncaster" referring to the Waterhouse Arms says, "The arms, a charred and notched pile, or in the language of Blazonry, a pile engrailed sable, has allusion to the name, a house built on piles in the water, and from such a house, no doubt, the name was derived."

Bowditch in his "Suffolk Surnames," (Boston, Mass.) considers the name derived from an edifice, which, of course, makes it a Local name.

The names ending in "house" are very numerous. The following have come under the writer's observation,- Althouse, Burhouse, Burrhouse, Bakehouse, Backhouse, Bonehouse, Boothhouse, Bellhouse, Brookhouse, Brig-

house, Brochouse, Claverhouse, Carthouse, Chanonhouse, Culverhouse, Channelhouse, Churchouse, Chandlehouse, Charnelhouse, Drinkhouse, Dyhouse, Dikehouse, Dykehouse, Dwerryhouse, Dwerrihouse, Dernhouse, Ferlahouse, Fieldhouse, Cardenhouse, Garlinghouse, Gatehouse, Goodanhouse, Hobhouse, Huthouse, Harborhouse, Helhouse, Holehouse, Hursthouse, Holthouse, Hillhouse, Killhouse, Kirkhouse, Lofthouse, Longhouse, Mailhouse, Morehouse, Moorhouse, Morhouse, Merehouse, Monkhouse, Mydhouse, Malthouse, Neighouse, Newhouse, Newehouse, Outhouse, Osterhouse, Parkhouse, Peterhouse, Perahouse, Purshouse, Persehouse, Priesthouse, Pearcehouse, Piercehouse, Roadhouse, Roodhouse, Roydhouse, Rodehouse, Rodhouse, Redhouse, Sykehouse, Spittlehouse, Spittalhouse, Salthouse, Sharpouse, Stenhouse, Stonhouse, Stonehouse, Stackhouse, Southouse, Tatterhouse, Taphouse, Threhouse, Vangoodenhouse, Widhouse, Wydhouse, Woolhouse, Weasonhouse, Easthouse, Whitehouse, Westonhouse, Westinghouse, Woodhouse, Walhouse, Westerhouse, Wainhouse, Wodehouse, Whelohouse, Wheelhouse.

The origin of many of these names is quite evident, and some are obviously different spellings of the same name. It must be remembered that the meaning of many words have changed in the centuries that have passed since these names came into existence. For instance, the rather curious name Spittalhouse, means "at the spittle-house," from residence at the lodge of the hospital. Roadhouse does not come, as might be supposed, from residence on or at the road, but is a later form of the name Royd-house, from residence in the house on the royd or clearing. Also Hursthouse means at the Hurst-house, from residence in a cottage by the hurst, or wood.

THE
WATERHOUSE FAMILY

IN
ENGLAND

The Waterhouse Family in England is usually considered to have descended from Sir Gilbert Waterhouse, Knight, of Kirton, in the County of Lincolnshire, who lived in the time of King Henry III, who reigned from 1216 to 1272. The following letter, however, written by one who has given the subject much study, would seem to show that the family is considerably more ancient than would appear from the published pedigrees.

"To the Editor of the Sheffield and Rotherham Independent.

Sir,-

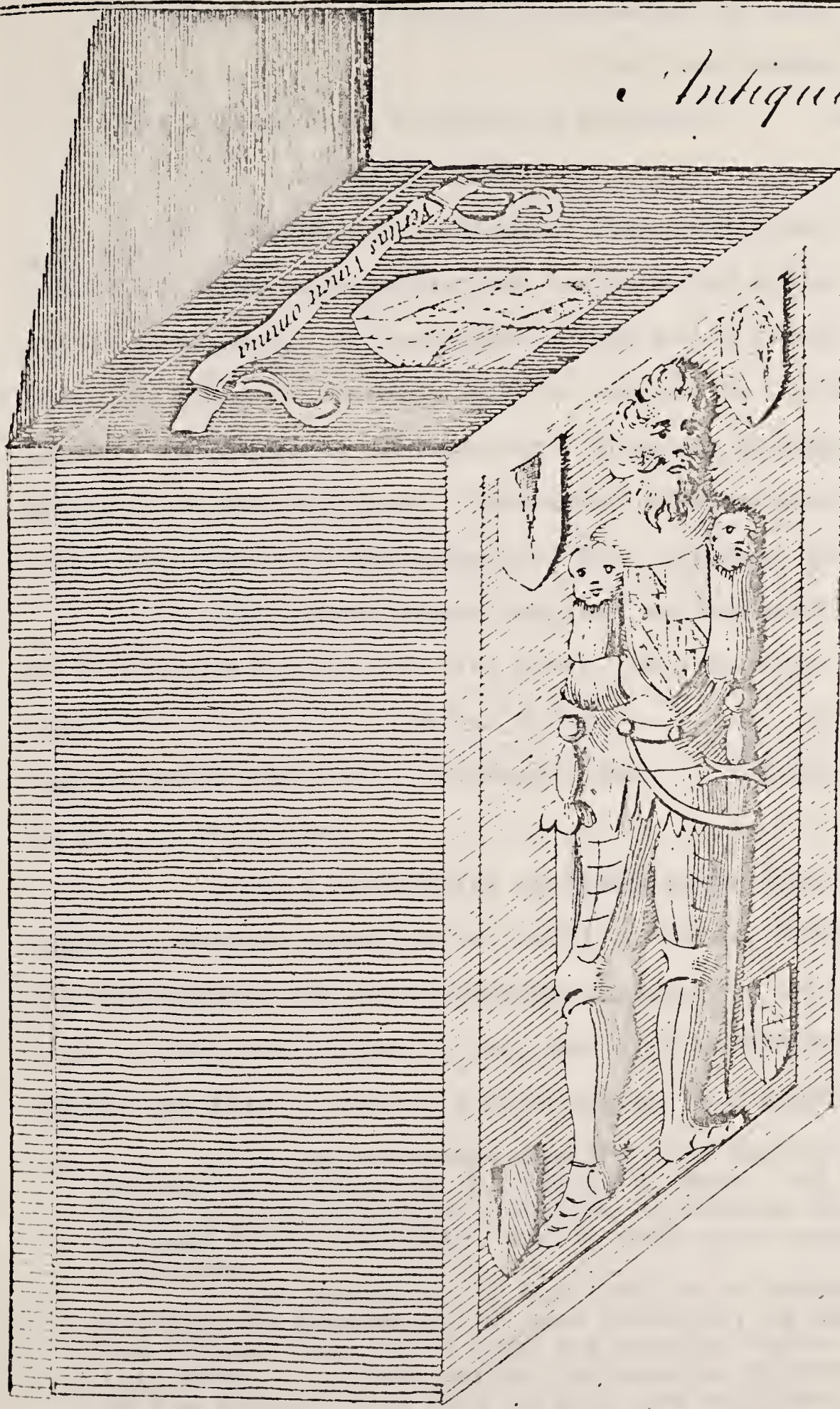
My attention has been called to an article which appeared in "The Halifax Guardian" of the 5th inst., relative to the death of the late Major Samuel Waterhouse, J.P., D.L., of Bell Head, Halifax. With over twenty-five years experience in genealogical research, I know, too well, how difficult it is ever to be strictly accurate in all details; therefore, with your permission, I will correct a few inaccuracies, which -- pardonably enough -- have crept into the above sketch of the Waterhouse family. It is stated that: "The pedigree, so far as the Halifax line is concerned, commenced with Sir Gilbert Waterhouse, Knt." Well, this younger son of the parent stock of the Waterhouses, of Lincolnshire, appears by common consent to be a sort of popular genealogical starting point; but if your readers refer to archives, containing say: (Vol. I, p. 242, col. 2; and Vol. II., p. 869, col. 1, Ed. 1861) "Dugdale's Monasticon Anglicanum," "Odericus Vitalis," (a learned monk of Saint Erroult, temp. Hen. I.); "Aubert de la Chenaye Des bois," "Dictionnaire de la Noblesse" (vol. X, pp. 541, and 542, Ed. 1775); and Grafton's Chronicle, vol. I, pp. 54, and 181, Ed. 1809), or a score authorities I could adduce, they may trace the earlier pedigrees of the unenglished Waterhouses, cum multis aliis, to a race of powerful seigniorial barons, whose lineage is enveloped in the obscurity of remote antiquity. In passant I may observe that Walter, Viscount de Moulins, (great grandson of Guiscard de Leumesin, Lord de Molyne, -- founder of the Normans' Aisle in the Abbey of Ramsey -- on whom King Henry I. bestowed the heiress of James de Longvalle, with the lands of the Earl of Cornwall and Morton); married Adelle, daughter of Lord de Seagrave, and had issue two sons: William de Leumesin, Lord de Molyne; and Roger de Leumesin (the first of the family), surnamed 'de

'Waterhouse', Castellan of Nottingham. In the olden monastic records, this family is described as:- "one of the most ancient houses in the Province of Normandy." It is stated that no fewer than 408 members of the family of Waterhouse, of Halifax, were interred at the parish church within two centuries. From 1638 there has been a steady diminution, the different branches having mostly moved off, died off, or lapsed through females into other names. It is further related that with the death of Major Waterhouse, "the family of Waterhouses, in direct line, becomes extinct." Such, however, is not altogether the case. Unfortunately neither Major Waterhouse, nor his respected elder brother, Mr. John Waterhouse, left male issue to represent their particular branch of the family; but, there exist two other branches of Waterhouse, formerly of Halifax; viz.: 'WATERHOUSE, OF SOUTH YORKSHIRE,' (Vide "Hunter's Hallamshire," p. 143, col. 2; Hunter's M.S.S. 24, 437, fol. 125) or (67 in pencil), &c.; and "Gents. Mag." p. 383, Dec., 1867); and 'Halifax', of Chadacre Hall; county Suffolk. Of the former, a reference to Hunter's M.S.S. (fol. 331, 24, 458, British Museum), &c. shows that during the reign of King Henry VIII., Henry Waterhouse, of Old Well Head, in the parish of Halifax, bought an estate from the family of Shaw, and settled at Onsacre, in the mountainous tract of country lying between the Riveling and the Don, once the northern moiety of the Sax-on manor of Hallam. Various branches of this numerous family of 'WATERHOUSE, OF SOUTH YORKSHIRE,' acquired considerable property of inheritance, in the rugged district extending north westward to the point, where the three counties of Chester, Derby, and York, form the Chapelry of Bradfield; but the members of the senior branch, are now mostly resident near Sheffield, London, and Dublin. The present representative of the family, in lineal descent (ninth successive eldest son), from the above mentioned Henry Waterhouse, of Old Well Head, Halifax; is (Major) Henry Waterhouse, Galway Militia Artillery, South Castle St., Liverpool.

Of the remaining branch of "Waterhouse, formerly of Halifax," I take the following extract from a letter in my possession:- "Dr. Jermyn will please to understand that Mr. Halifax is the first of the family having any connection with the county of Suffolk. Mr. H's father, the late Sir Thomas Halifax, had an estate in Middlesex, where he resided in part, being a banker and Alderman of the City of London. He left two sons, of which Mr. H (the eldest) is the survivor. Mr. H. has somewhere a long pedigree, given him by his late uncle, who resided in Warwickshire, but he does not know where to look for it; by which it appears that the family name was Waterhouse, a family of note in Halifax, in Yorkshire, from which was descended the celebrated antiquary and herald, Dr. Waterhouse. The eldest son at some time adding "de Halifax" to Waterhouse, which continued about three generations, when the first part was dropped, and the name "Hallifax" only retained.

Were it not that I fear to trespass on your valuable space, I might explain how many Halifax townsmen, surnamed Waterhouse, were unable to give any connected and satisfactory account of their descent, not so much from the want of evidences as from a family practice, which prevailed to an unusual extent, of bestowing the same baptismal names on contemporaries of the same patronimic. As an instance, I have before me copies of the Wills of seven pairs of brethren John and Isaac Waterhouse, of Barnsley, Elland, Kerwood, Skircoat, Sowerby, Washer-lane, and Woodhouse. Their descendants and namesakes, with the same want of care in the selection of baptismal names, continued the names of John and Isaac; and as if to add to the prevailing uncertainty and perplexity, many of their contempo-

Antiquities of Ex



The Monument of Waterhouse lately removed from Hatfield Church.



ELEZABETH



aries bore similar christian names; until it became almost impossible to distinguish one member of this gens from another.

I am, sir, yours, &c.,

The United Club, Lime-st., Liverpool, AB AQUAE DOMO.

March 23, 1881.

"Guiscard de Leumesin, Lord de Molyne, Constable of Normandy, A.D. 1100, A.D. 1100," from whom, according to the above letter, the Waterhouse family is descended, "is described in the Latin records as, 'Guiscardus de Lymosin' (alias Levenzoun), dominus Molyne; by Richard Glover, Somerset Herald, as 'Richarde de Leumesin,' Seigneur de Moulins. And by Norman chroniclers variously as: 'Guiscardus de Lavenezoun' 'Guiscard de Lymosin,' and 'Guiscard de Leumesin,' &c., Seigneur de Molyne."

The above letter was sent to Professor Sylvester Waterhouse of Washington University, St. Louis, Mo., by Major Henry Waterhouse, ret'd. Royal Artillery, M.A., Ph.D., F.R.E.S., G.H.S., &c., who in 1895 was living on South Castle St., Liverpool, Eng. Whether or not it was written by him is not clear.

From Lincolnshire the Waterhouse family gradually became resident in various counties as, Straffordshire, Derbyshire, Hertfordshire and Buckingham, but was particularly numerous in the large parish of Halifax in the West Riding in the county of Yorkshire. Burke's Landed Gentry has this to say of the family in this locality:-

"In the sixteenth century this family was exceedingly numerous in the West Riding of the county of York, and especially within the large parish of Halifax, wherein in several branches it was possessed of much landed property, and in many also engaged in trade and manufactures.

The fecundity of the race is so remarkable, when contrasted with the population of that district, so much less than at the present day, as to make its details worth recording in a work of this kind. In the parish register of Halifax alone, are entered in the century from 1538 to 1638 the baptisms of 445 of this name, who it is pretty well ascertained, were all of this family; of these 231 were males, and 214 females. The marriages in the same period were 200; of which 81 are of males, and 119 are of females. The burials are 300; of which 164 are of males: of these, 81 were grown up or aged men; 83 were boys, infants, or young men; and 136 females,

of whom 46 were wives, 19 were widows, 4 spinsters, and 67 young women or girls, whose fathers were living.

The members of the family, or persons bearing the name of Waterhouse, began to decline from this time. Several of the wealthy branches had removed or had become extinct, and others appear to have been reduced in estate, very probably in consequence of the largeness of their families.

From 1638 to 1745 the baptisms are 90; 42 males and 48 female. The marriages, 54 viz., 30 males 24 females. The burials from 1638 to 1708 are 108: 56 males; of these, 29 were grown up or aged men, 27 young men and boys; and 52 are females: 14 of these were wives, 10 widows, 6 spinsters, and 20 young women or girls, whose fathers were living. This diminution has steadily continued. There are now few among the middle or poorer class bearing this name, and among the wealthier none remain in the county except the members of the family here recorded."

Mr. Hunter, in his History of the Deanery of Doncaster, says,-

"The Waterhouses were a very numerous family in the parish of Halifax, so numerous as to mock the best efforts of experienced genealogists to throw them all into a strict genealogical series. Of that which may be considered the chief house of Waterhouse, there are accounts in many collections of Yorkshire genealogies, and in the Visitation Books."

John Watson, in his History of Halifax, says,-

"The most considerable family which hath been resident in the town of Halifax, I take to be that of Waterhouse."

Mr. Watson also gives various inscription found on tablets and tombs of Waterhouses who were buried in the church in Halifax. These will be found in the sketch of the family which follows, under the names of the persons to whom they refer, except two which are given here.

"In the North Chapel, on a stone with a man in armor upon it, in old characters: 'Here lyeth the body of ROBERT WATERHOUSE, of Halifax, Esquyer, which departed this life the of June (hav)ying lyved as one that should dye.'"

"In Dr. Johnson's MS. Collections is the drawing of a tomb said to be removed out of the North Chapel when the stairs were made which lead to the north gallery there, at the head of which was a shield of arms, viz., Waterhouse, Or, a pile engrailed sable, quartered with Saville, parted per pale quarterly, 1. Bosseville, of Gunthwaite. 2. Bendy of thirteen pieces, or and argent. 3..... A lion rampant over all a

bend gules; fourth as first. Under these a scroll and motto 'Virtus vincit omnia.' "(Virtue conquers all things). "On the top of the tomb lay the figure of a man in armor, holding on his breast a shield with the same arms as above. On one side of his head were, on a shield, the arms of Waterhouse, and on the other the coats of Waterhouse and, Savile, quartered; on one side of his feet, Waterhouse impaled with Bosseville, and on the other, Waterhouse impaled with the same quarterings as are impaled in the shield on his breast. The above stairs were made in 1700." See plate No.1.

The following is a list of the Testamentary Burials of Waterhouses at Halifax taken from the same book as above,-

- Feb.3,1484 Richard Waterhouse of Warley. In his will he left his soul to God Almighty, St. Mary, and All Saints and ordered his body to be buried in the church or church-yard of St. John Baptist, at Halifax.
1533. John Waterhouse of Skircoat.
1535. Edward Waterhouse, buried in the church-yard at Halifax.
1538. Richard Waterhouse, of Shipden, His body to be buried in the church of the holy prophet St. John Baptist, of Halifax.
1543. Edward Waterhouse, of Skircoat.
1545. Humphrey Waterhouse, of Shelf. Left his soul to God Almighty hoping through Jesus Christ to be saved. "Here Protestantism began to show itself, and mankind began to act more from principles of reason and common sense, than to bequeath their souls to the Virgin Mary, and all the Saints, who are only in the same condition that all living Saints, will shortly be placed in, and who cannot if they are appealed to."
1545. John Waterhouse, of Skircoat.
1556. John Waterhouse, of Thollinges, in Warley.
1578. Anthony Waterhouse, of Warley, Gent.

One other inscription, found in the church at Conisborough is of interest. Henry E. Smith, in his History of Conisborough, says,-

"Formerly in what was called the Waterhouse Closet, might have been seen the following inscription: 'This closet, with three books here inchayned, viz.: a book of Homilies, Bullinger's Sermons, and Peter Martyr's Common Places, were of the gift and charge of John Waterhouse, of Halifax, Esq., deceased 1610.'"

We find in the same book that, "Henry Waterhouse, early in the reign of Henry VIII., purchased lands at Onsacre and Bradfield, South Yorkshire, where his successors remained located for several generations, their original arms being, Or, a pile engrailed sa. These arms were confirmed 17 Oct. 1573, to Robert Waterhouse, of Halifax (the grantee of the advowson of Conisbro) by Sir Gilbert Dethiche, &c., with the following additions, Two plates in base barry, wavy of six, sa. and az. Crest, a moorcock sa., winged, wattled, and crested gu. Harl MSS No. 5823."

This is evidently the same Henry Waterhouse, of Onsacre, as mentioned by Major Henry Waterhouse in the letter printed on the preceding pages.

Regarding the above arms, Mr. Hunter, in his History of the Deanery of Doncaster, referring to the pedigree of Waterhouse of Conisborough says that the arms were ,Or, a pile engrailed sable, but that the old arms of the family were Gules, three wells, or water-houses, argent, the doors sable, the water undée of six argent and azure.

A careful search of the large collection of genealogical matter in the British Museum and the records in other places in England, relating to the Waterhouse family, would doubtless reveal much of interest. As funds and time were not available to make this search, we have combined such published pedigrees as we have found, and added such information as could be obtained from various county histories and visitations to make the following connected sketch. It is, of course, very incomplete in many respects, and, as the pedigrees and authorities do not always agree, it may not be accurate at all points, but it will give a fair-

ly good idea of the family in England in the earlier centuries. Concerning the earlier pedigrees, in the *Familiae Minorum Gentium*, one of the Harleian Societies' publications, printed in London, 1895, Vol. XXXIX, are the pedigrees of several branches of the Waterhouse family. In beginning the pedigree the author says,- "This is the received descent of the Waterhouses of Halifax, appearing in many authorities & admitted (Ipresume) at the College. But there is, I fear, a total absence of proof for anything above John & Agnes, except that names similar to these are to be found in the Court rolls of the Manor of Wakefield."

SIR GILBERT WATERHOUSE, or Ab Aquae Domo, (from water house), Knight, of Kirton, in the division of Low Lindsay, or Lyncey, county of Lincolnshire, in the time of King Henry III., who reigned from 1215 to 1272. He was granted a coat of arms, viz., Or, a pile engrailed sa. He married Isabella or Isabella, daughter of Sir Richard de Longvile. She was the co-heiress of her brother, Sir John de Longvile, Knight.

CHILDREN:-

1. 1. Roger Waterhouse.
2. 11. Gilbert Waterhouse.

ROGER² WATERHOUSE, (Sir Gilbert¹), married Joan or Joane, daughter and heir of Sir John Castel, Knight, and Joan, his wife, who was a daughter of John Hastings.

CHILDREN:-

3. 1. James Waterhouse.

2

GILBERT² WATERHOUSE, (Sir Gilbert¹), married Mary, daughter of -----
Baildon, of Baildon.

CHILDREN:-

4. 1. Richard Waterhouse.

3

JAMES³ WATERHOUSE, (Roger² Sir Gilbert,¹), married Mary, daughter of
John and Elizabeth Smith. The latter was a descendant of Nicholas Bon-
ville or Bonevyle.

CHILDREN:-

5. 1. William Waterhouse.

4

RICHARD³ WATERHOUSE, (Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹), married the daughter and
heiress of Hollins of Hollins.

Mr. Hunter in his History of Doncaster, says that the descent
from this Richard as it stands in the usual collections of Yorkshire gen-
ealogies, may be supported by the evidence of the Court Rolls at Wake-
field.

CHILDREN:-

6. 1. John Waterhouse.

5

WILLIAM⁴ WATERHOUSE, (James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert¹), of Little Sterlyand or Sterler, married first, Alice, daughter of Edward Tempest, and second, Maud, daughter of Roger Preston, of Alderney and Joan, his wife.

CHILDREN:-

7. 1. Thomas Waterhouse.

11. William Waterhouse, died in Normandy without children.

111. Anne Waterhouse, married Christopher Medcalfe.

6

JOHN⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹), married Alice Rookes, of Rookes.

CHILDREN:-

8. 1. Richard Waterhouse.

7

THOMAS⁵ WATERHOUSE, (William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹), married Anne, daughter of Thomas Umphreville.

CHILDREN:-

9. 1. John Waterhouse.

11. John Waterhouse, died without children.

111. Thomas Waterhouse, died without children.

8

RICHARD⁵ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹), of Hollins, in Warley, married first, a daughter of ---- Mawd or Maude de Montcalto of Monton Banke, or Banks, and second, Elizabeth Clays.
He died in 1448.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Waterhouse, the ancestor of many of the families in Halifax and Holme Chapel.
10. 11. Richard Waterhouse.
11. 111. Robert Waterhouse.
- 1V. Margaret Waterhouse, married William Oates, of Shibden Hall.

9

JOHN⁶ WATERHOUSE, (Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹), married Elizabeth, daughter of John Blewett.

CHILDREN:-

12. 1. James Waterhouse.

10

RICHARD⁶ WATERHOUSE, (Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Warley, in Halifax, married Isabel Shaw. His will was proved Feb. 17, 1484, and he leaves the bulk of his estate to his sons George and Lawrence. He requests that he be buried in the church at Halifax.

CHILDREN:-

13. 1. John Waterhouse.

11. Robert Waterhouse.
111. George Waterhouse. An executor of his father's will.
- 1V. Richard Waterhouse, the ancestor of the Waterhouses of Shelf in Halifax, of Thornes, Alverthorp and of Wakefield.
14. V. Lawrence Waterhouse.
- VI. Joan Waterhouse.
- VII. Emma Waterhouse
- VIII. Isabella Waterhouse.
- IX. Daughter married John Smith of Helone.
- X. Marianne Waterhouse, married William Aykeroyde of Aykeroyde.
- XI. Daughter married ----- Kaye of Almondbury.
- XII. Daughter married ----- Winchfield.
- XIII. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married ----- Aykeroyde of Howorth.



ROBERT⁶ WATERHOUSE, (Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹),
Constable, of Skircote, 1454, married Joan ----- . His will was proved
Sept. 10, 1481.

CHILDREN:-

15. I. John Waterhouse.
16. II. Gilbert Waterhouse.



JAMES⁷ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹), of Ludlow, in County Salop, married Anne, daughter of Thomas Davenport, sister and coheir of John Davenport.

CHILDREN:-

17. 1. Francis Waterhouse.
 11. Anne Waterhouse, married Thomas Fitzhugh.
 111. Mary Waterhouse, married Henry Baynard.

13

JOHN⁷ WATERHOUSE, (Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹), born 1442, married Agnes, daughter of John Ryshworth or Rishworth, of Coley Hall, She was born Oct. 1442.

He was supervisor of his father's will. He died Jan. 2, 1539.
 The Rev. John Watson, in his History of Halifax, says that "in the middle aisle of the Church, on brass plates, fixed to a seat near the pulpit, which are all torn off except the heads, a man kneeling, with a book in his hand, and opposite to him a woman kneeling, and a string of beads hanging down from the waist. On a label over the man, in old characters: 'Miserere mei Deus, et salva me.' (God have mercy upon me and save me.) On another label near the woman, in like characters, 'Miserere mei Deus, secundum magnum misericordiam.' (God have mercy upon me according to Thy great mercy.) On a brass plate over their heads: 'I am the resurrection and the life, saith the Lord. He that believeth in me, though he were dead yet shall he live, and he that liveth and believeth in me shall never die.' Underneath, in the above characters: 'JOHN WATERHOUSE, of Halyfax, and AGNES, his wyff, which John dep^ted from thys worlde the XXVII day of January, anno Dm MCCCCXXIX.'" "Something wanting both at beginning and end."

His grandson, John Waterhouse, of Shibden, records of him, "that in the time of John Waterhouse, who died at Candlemas, twenty-six years ago, at his death being very neare one hundred years of age, I trow three years under: when he was but a child there were but in Halifax in all

Antiquities of Halifax Church.

Upon a Plate of Brass fixed to a seat in the Body of the Church

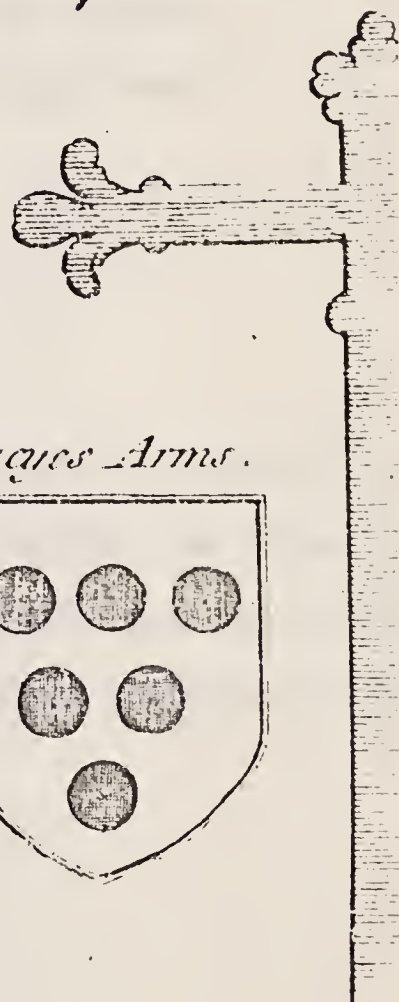
I am the Resurrection &c. &c.

Salva me
Deus et

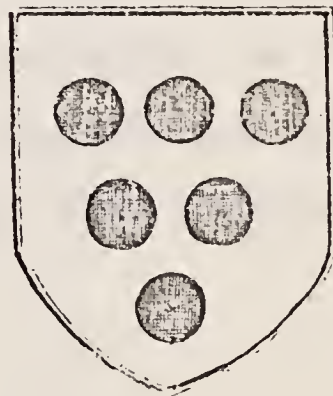
Miserere mei Deus secundum magnam



Upon a Gravestone in



Jacques Arms.

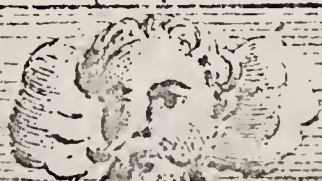


On the same Pew-door in Saxon Characters.
John Waterhows of Haltyfax and Agnies hys wyff
whiche John departed from this worlde the 27 day of
January anno Dñi. MCCCCCXXX.

v. 382

the Body of

closed



M.



thirteen houses; now, 1565, twenty and six score. God be prayed for his increase." See plate No. 2 for the inscriptions.

CHILDREN:-

18. I. Richard Waterhouse.
19. II. Robert Waterhouse.
- III. Christopher Waterhouse, died a student at Oxford.
- IV. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married Christopher Both, of Both.
- V. Margaret Waterhouse, married Gilbert Otes, of Halifax.
- VI. Agnes Waterhouse, married John Bentley, of High Bently.

14

LAWRENCE⁷ WATERHOUSE, (Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹), of Warley, yeoman, from whom descended a family who lived in Warley and Heptonstall in Halifax. He died Nov. 20, 1535, and in his will made his wife, Margaret, his executrix and requested that his body be buried in the church at Halifax.

CHILDREN:-

- I. Roger Waterhouse.
- II. Gilbert Waterhouse.
- III. Christopher Waterhouse.
- IV. George Waterhouse.

V. Bryan Waterhouse. Watson's History of Halifax, says that "in the North Chapel" (of the church at Halifax), "but now destroyed (as supposed) was another figure of a man in armor, with this inscription round, in old characters:
'Here lyeth the body of BRYAN WATERHOUSE of Halyfax, Gentleman, which departed this life the 14 day of Octo-

*a Pillar
Side of the Quire.*



p. 390

of Bryan Waterhouse

Here lyeth the Body

of Mathias



Here Sleepeth the Body



of

ber, in the year of our Lord God, 1589. Humanus est deridere vitam quam deplorari," (It is human to make fun of rather than to weep over life.) See plate No.3.

Bryan Waterhouse was a witness to the will of Robert Waterhouse, in 1578 and died Oct.4,1589, as made known by the above inscription.

15

JOHN⁷ WATERHOUSE, (Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹). He was called "the Elder, of Newhouse, in Skircote. He was a yeoman, and his will was proved Dec.3,1534. In it he requested that he be buried in the church in Halifax. His wife died Feb.1,1533.

CHILDREN:-

20. 1. John Waterhouse.

11. Sir Lawrence Waterhouse, a priest, had twenty marks by his father's will.

21. 111. Edward Waterhouse.

22. 1V. Robert Waterhouse.

V. Margaret Waterhouse, married Henry Batts, of Bristol.

VI. Sibil Waterhouse, married Richard Holdsworth.

16

GILBERT⁷ WATERHOUSE, (Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹). He was of Skircot, and married Agnes -----. His will was proved Nov.8,1541.

CHILDREN:-

23. 1. Lawrence Waterhouse.
 11. Robert Waterhouse.
 111. John Waterhouse.
 1V. Elizabeth Waterhouse.
 V. Agnes Waterhouse.
 VI. Isabel Waterhouse.

17

FRANCIS⁸ WATERHOUSE, (James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹), of Ludlow, county of Salop, married Elizabeth, daughter of Thomas Farrington.

CHILDREN:-

1. Robert or Roger Waterhouse, chaplain to the King.
 24. 11. John Waterhouse.
 111. Constance Waterhouse, married Andrew Thadden.

18

RICHARD⁸ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹).

He was of Hollins, in Warley, and married Isabel, daughter of Nicholas Saville, of Newhall. He continued the line of Waterhouses in Warley, and from an illegitimate branch sprang Richard Waterhouse, of In-chowleran Castle, in Kilkenny in 1608. Richard's wife, Isabel was buried at Halifax, Nov. 21, 1549.

CHILDREN:-

25. 1. John Waterhouse.

19

ROBERT⁸ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹). He was of Moot or Moote Hall, and of Shibden Hall, Halifax. He married, about 1522, Sibil, daughter and co-heiress of Robert Saville, of Shibden Hall, in Southowram, by Janet, daughter of William Otes, of Shibden.

A lease of the right of presenting to the five churches of Corningsborough, Harthill, Sandal, Dinnington and Braithwell was granted him by the prior and convent. According to the history of the Deanery of Doncaster, he greatly benefited his family by leases of land and churches under the priory of Lewes. The same book also says that he had three sons, "who were all the founders of wealthy families, several of whose descendants were settled in this Deanery."

Robert Waterhouse's will was proved Mar. 15, 1581, and his wife was buried Feb. 28, 1559.

CHILDREN:-

- 26. I. John Waterhouse.
- 27. II. George Waterhouse.
- 28. III. Gregory Waterhouse.

IV. Anna Waterhouse, married John Milner, of Pudsey.

20

JOHN⁸ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert² Sir Gilbert,¹), He was of Newhouse or Skircote, and married Elizabeth ----- He was the owner of Woodhouse. His will was proved Aug. 19, 1546.

CHILDREN:-

29. 1. John Waterhouse.
 30. 11. Michael Waterhouse.
 111. Isabel Waterhouse.
 1V. Effame Waterhouse.
 V. Sibil Waterhouse.

21

EDWARD⁸ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Elland, married Agnes ----- . He was left five pounds in his father's will, and his own will was proved Oct.5,1542.

CHILDREN:-

1. Gilbert Waterhouse. The will of a Gilbert Waterhouse, (probably this one) was proved between 1570 and 1575. It names Elizabeth, his wife, and children, John, Richard, Margaret, Christabel, Sibil and Agnes.
 11. John Waterhouse.
 111. Richard Waterhouse.
 1V. Thomas Waterhouse.
 V. Ann Waterhouse.
 VI. Jane Waterhouse.

22

ROBERT⁸ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Bankhouse, married Joan, daughter of John Crowder.

CHILDREN:-

31. 1. John Waterhouse.

11. Isaac Waterhouse, of Halifax, laborer.
 111. Jonas Waterhouse.
 1V. Mary Waterhouse.
 V. Susan Waterhouse.
 VI. Dorothy Waterhouse.
 VII. Prudence Waterhouse.

2 3

LAWRENCE⁸ WATERHOUSE, (Gilbert,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) He was the first son and was left the fourth part of Woodhouse. In 1540 he was of Skircote and under age. He married possibly Janet Bridge, Jan.30,1552 or 1553. His will was proved May 3,1587, and she was buried July 7,1604.

CHILDREN:-

32. 1. John Waterhouse.
 11. Isaac Waterhouse, bap. Jan.30, 1568-9, to whom his father leaves a house &c. near King's Cross and land in Skircote. He was a yeoman.
 111. Judith Waterhouse, married Hugh Booth.
 1V. Mary Waterhouse.
 V. Susan Waterhouse, married Andrew Smith.
 VI. Sarah Waterhouse, married (?) Sept.10,1582, John Waterhouse, bap. Nov.17,1556.
 VII. Edmund Waterhouse.

JOHN⁹ WATERHOUSE, (Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) married Anne, daughter and heir of ----- Sparke of London.

CHILDREN:-

1. Agnes Waterhouse, married Robert Combe, of Newington, County of Middlesex, and had two children, Richard and Alice.
11. Sir Thomas Waterhouse, was born in the parish of Hemel Hemsted, and was the last Rector of the College of Bonhommes at Ashridge. He subscribed with fifteen others, to the supremacy of the King, Sept. 14, 1534, and by surrendering up his monastery had a pension of £100 and fifty loads of wood per annum. On the 18th of March 1555, he was presented to the Rectory of Quainton which he voided on his death, which happened May 24, 1557. The following copy of his will is taken from Fuller's "Worthies of England."

"In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, Amen. I, Thomas Waterhouse, priest of the Catholick faith, whole of body and of good and perfect remembrance, do make and ordain my last Will and Testament, the 25th day of May in the year of our Lord 1557, in manner and form following.

First, I bequeath my soul to God Almighty, the Father of heaven, my Creator; and unto Jesus Christ, our Lord and God, my Redeemer. And I will my body to be buried in the chancel within the parish church of Hemel Hempsted, near to the place where my mother lieth. I bequeath to the parish church of Quainton my vestment of crimson satin. I bequeath to the parish church of Great Barkemsted my vestment of crimson velvet.

I bequeath to the parish church of Great Hemelsted my stole and fanon set with pearl.

I bequeath to my cousin John Waterhouse, the queen's servant, my standing cup of silver and gilt, with the cover.

I bequeath to my servant Thomas Ashton, ten pound in money, which I promised him.

I bequeath to my priest Sir Thomas Barker, my black gown faced with taffata &c.

And I ordain and make my brother John Waterhouse and my cousin Richard Combe, gentleman, mine executors"

Mr. Fuller continues as follows,- "Such as jeer him for his gallantry (as one of the church triumphant) may remember besides his worshipful extraction (which might the better countenance his clothes) these were not garments for his wearing, but vestments for his officiating; and according to the opinion of that age, nothing could be too costly in that kind."

In the chancel of the church at Hemel Hempsted, Buckingham County, was formerly the following inscription, to his memory.

"Hic jacet Tho. Waterhouse, clericus, quondam majester.

Sire gubernator venerabilis collegii de Ashridge nec non
Rector ecclesiae de Quainton, qui obiit 24 die mensis
Maii A^o Dⁿⁱ 1554 cuius a^l'e propitiatur Deus. Amen.

33. 111. John Waterhouse.

1V. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married Richard Langdale.

25

JOHN⁹ WATERHOUSE, (Richard,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³
Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) married Isabel, daughter of Gilbert Otes. He
had lands of Hollins by gift of his father, and had tithes in the parish
of Halifax. In his will, proved Nov. 23, 1556, he ordered his body to be
buried in the church of Halifax. His widow married George Wheatley.

CHILDREN:-

34. 1. Anthony Waterhouse.

35. 11. John Waterhouse.

111. Agnes Waterhouse, married James Greenwood.

1V. Jane Waterhouse, married Thomas Midgeley.

V. Isabel Waterhouse. She was left the reversion of her father's
tithe of corn, hay, wool, and lamb in Stansfield, Wads-
worth, Midgeley, and Warley, and all tithes in Ovenden,
Skircote, Northowram, Heptonstal, Southowram, Hipperholme,
Shelf, and Brighouse.

26

JOHN⁹ WATERHOUSE, (Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³

Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) married Jane, daughter and heir of Thomas Bosville, of Coningsborough. John Waterhouse was of Halifax and Shibden, Esq. and by letters patent bearing date June 14, 37 Henry VIII., (1528), the "priory manor of Coningsborough, with all its appurtenances, and the like at Braithwell, Sandal, Harthill, and Dinnington were granted to him and Robert, his son. The consideration for this and much other property included in the same grant was £150 5s 10d." By his wife he acquired in Coningsborough eight cottages, 120 acres of land, 10 of meadow, 16 of pasture, one of wood, and also lands in Hooton Roberts, Ravensfield, Barnborough, Thurnscoe and Hesill. Thus the Waterhouses as owners of all this property became persons of considerable weight and interest in the place. John Waterhouse died Jan. 23, 1584. His wife died May 1, 1592, and was buried in the church of St. Michael Belfrey, York. "Here lyeth Jane, wife to John Waterhouse of Shibden, in the county of Yorke, esquier, who died the first day of May, 1592."

CHILDREN:-

36. 1. Robert Waterhouse.

11. John Waterhouse, bapt. May 28, 1561, was buried at Braithwell, Aug. 31, 1583.

37. 111. Thomas Waterhouse.

1V. Philip Waterhouse, bapt. Jan. 2, 1555-6. He married Helen, dau. of Richard Lacy Esq. of Cromwellbotham. Philip was Master of Arts, fellow of University College, Oxon. He made his will Dec. 31, 1614, and at that time he was 56 years old and of Overthrope, Gentleman. He directed that he be buried in the Quire at Thornhill. The following are some of the bequests and names mentioned in the will. He gave his nephew, Theodore, "son of my brother David, 2 silver bowls with 3 fleurs de lis on each & a seal ring having the eagle's paw & this ins., 'Veritas liberabit'" (The truth will make us free) "also my Turkish scymeter & my enamelled sword; He gives his nephew, Philip, "brother of sd Theodore, a seal ring of gold with the eagle's paw & P.V. on either side." He mentions "my cousin Robert Waterhouse, of Wakefield, mercer; cousin Robert Waterhouse, of Harthill; brother

David's children; bro^r Thomas's children; sister Grace; Jane Gunson my sister Susan's dau.; nephew Tho^s., son of my brother Tho.; nephew Sir Edward Waterhouse, & his brother Richard; brother David & Steven; Tho^s Waterhouse, son of Vincent Waterhouse, deceased." Watson's "History of Halifax" says, - "Another Epitaph belonging to this family" (Waterhouse) "is cut in brass on a pillar in the church at Thornhill. 'Here lyeth the body of Philip Waterhouse, 3d sonne of John Waterhouse, of Halifax, esq.; Maister of Artes, and sometimes Fellow of University Coll. Oxon. He dyed the 16th of Januari, 1614, the 57th yere of his age. Hellen, daughter of Richard Lacye, of Cromwellbotome, esq; his beloved wife, dedicated this monument to his memori.' Arms of Waterhouse on this plate, Or, a pile engrailed, sable; Motto, 'Veritas liberabit;' alluding, perhaps to John Vill. 32."

V. Stephen Waterhouse, bapt. Mar.19,1558-9, Master of Arts.

VI. Samuel Waterhouse, bapt. Jan.1,1553, died at Cambridge.

38. VII. David Waterhouse, bapt. Mar.3,1564.

VIII. Sarah Waterhouse, bapt. Nov.30,1563, died young.

IX. Grace Waterhouse, married ----- Lowther.

X. Susan Waterhouse, married ----- Gunston.

XI. Mary Waterhouse, married Henry Everingham at Braithwell, in 1598.

27

GEORGE⁹ WATERHOUSE, (Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Harthill, County of Yorkshire, married Effame or Eufemia, daughter of Richard Wilkinson, of Bradford. He died intestate and Adm. was granted to his son, Robert, Feb.28,1585.

CHILDREN:-

39. 1. Robert Waterhouse.

II. John Waterhouse, married Catherine Thwaites, of Kent, and had a daughter, Ursula, who probably married Christopher Swan, D.D. Rector of Hurst Pierrepont.

111. Francis Waterhouse.

IV. Anne Waterhouse, married Arthur Johnson, 2nd. son of Sir Thomas Johnson.

V. Prudence Waterhouse, married Francis Nevile or Nevil, Esq. of Chevot.

VI. Isabel Waterhouse, married John Malone or Mallam.

VII. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married her cousin, Nicholas Waterhouse.

28

GREGORY⁹ WATERHOUSE, (Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Syddal, married Margaret, daughter of Nicholas Tempest, of Bracewell. Gregory had the "Ulnage" of Yorkshire with his father and another person. This word is defined as meaning "official measurer of woolen cloth." Gregory was buried in Halifax, Oct. 1589.

CHILDREN:-

1. Nicholas Waterhouse, bapt. Nov. 10, 1556, married his cousin, Elizabeth Waterhouse, as above. He sold the Old Hall in Halifax, to his cousin, Robert Waterhouse, of Shibden. He had two children, viz., Robert, died young, and Richard, who married Jane Hopton, of Armley.

11. Robert Waterhouse, bapt. July 2, 1561, married widow of ----- Tempest. Robert was of The Wythers, Gentleman.

Children:-

1. Robert Waterhouse, of London, clerk of the Crown Office, mar. Elizabeth Andrews.
11. Margaret Waterhouse, died young.
111. Ann Waterhouse, mar. ----- Dawson.
- IV. Isabel Waterhouse.

111. Jonas Waterhouse, bapt. Feb.15,1562, married Judith, daughter of Francis Rodes, Justice of Common Pleas. Jonas was of The Wythers, near Leeds, and of Carlton.

Children:-

1. Gregory Waterhouse, bapt. Nov.30,1606.
11. Judith Waterhouse, bapt. Jan.6,1607, was buried at St. Peters, Leeds,
111. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married Thomas Bullingham, Rector of Gisburn,
- 1V. Bridget Waterhouse, was living, unm., at Bracewell, in 1655.
In 1630 Sir Richard Tempest granted a lease of certain coal mines near Bradford, to Elizabeth and Bridget Waterhouse.

40. 1V. Lewis Waterhouse, bapt. Feb.12,1564.

V. Sibil Waterhouse, bapt. Jan.12,1566., married Henry Rayner, of Adwalton.

VI. Richard Waterhouse, bapt. Jan.30,1568, was Fellow of ----- Col. Oxf. died in his study.

VII. Jeremy Waterhouse, bapt. Dec.1573, married Elizabeth Talcock.

Children:-

1. Richard Waterhouse.
11. Thomas Waterhouse.
111. Gregory Waterhouse.
- 1V. Mary Waterhouse, married Lancelot Fletcher of Talantire.
- V. Margaret Waterhouse, married Tempest Pollard.
- VI. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married Roger Sawrey, a Col. in the Royal Army.

41. VIII. Tobey Waterhouse.

IX. Isabel Waterhouse, also said to have married Henry Rayner of Adwalton.

X. Alice Waterhouse, married ----- Keeling, Master of the Crown Office.

XI. Susan Waterhouse, living in 1578.

XII. Anne Waterhouse.

29

JOHN⁹ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Newhouse, married ----- Armitage or Armytage, sister of John Armitage. He was the ancestor of Waterhouse of Norwood Green, in Hipperholme, of Pontefract, and so of Waterhouse of Kingston-on-Thames, and so of John Wright Waterhouse, and Wilmot-Henry Waterhouse Esqs. of Hammersmith.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Waterhouse, of Newsome or Newhouse. Will proved Mar.9, 1571.

Children:-

1. John Waterhouse, Yeoman, of Norwood Green. He had lands there and at Hipperholme and Brighouse. Possibly married Ann -----.

Children:-

1. John Waterhouse, of Norwood Green, married Ann ---- and had John, Joshua, Michael, and Isaac.
- II. John Waterhouse.
- III. Susan Waterhouse.
- IV. Sarah Waterhouse.
- V. Ann Waterhouse, mar. John Boys.
- II. Michael Waterhouse, M.A., bapt. Sept.5, 1563, had Newhouse and lands at Skircote. Will proved July 22, 1601. To be buried in the church at Halifax.
- III. Ann Waterhouse, married John Brooke, and had 100 marks by her father's will.
- IV. John Waterhouse, of Hull, has £20 by his father's will. His own will was proved June 16, 1602.

30

MICHAEL⁹ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of The Woodhouse, in Skircote, which he inherited from his father, married first Nov. 18, 1555, Grace Wilkinson. She was buried Mar. 5, 1581 and he married second Cecilia, widow of William Rayner. His will was proved Jan. 30, 1587-8. He gave 40 shillings to the poor of Halifax and Skircote.

CHILDREN:-

By first wife.

42. I. Isaac Waterhouse.

II. Joshua Waterhouse.

1710075

43. III. Caleb Waterhouse.

IV. Abraham Waterhouse, bapt. 1564; married first Aug. 15, 1585, Susan Bentley and second Oct. 4, 1591, Jane Priestley, and had Joshua, perhaps the one whose will was proved June 21, 1630.

V. Jacob Waterhouse, bapt. 1566-7, married 1588, Agnes Bates and had issue.

VI. Michael Waterhouse, bapt. 1574, married and had Simon and Isaac and perhaps others.

VII. Rebecca Waterhouse.

VIII. Esther Waterhouse.

IX. Grace Waterhouse.

By second wife.

44. X. Nathaniel Waterhouse.

31

JOHN⁹ WATERHOUSE, (Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Skircote, married first Jan. 16, 1553, (?) Ann, daughter of William Bradley, of Halifax. She was buried Apr. 25, 1569, and he married second, Joan -----. He died Feb. 1587.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Waterhouse, his father's heir, married July 21, 1592, Dorothy, daughter of Thomas Savile, of Watergate, Elland.

Children:-

1. Robert Waterhouse, sold Bankhouse to Nathaniel Waterhouse for £170.
11. Anne Waterhouse.

32

JOHN⁹ WATERHOUSE, (Lawrence,⁸ Gilbert,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) eldest son to whom his father leaves the messuage in which he lives and all lands belonging to it, called the fourth part of Woodhouse, lately purchased of the heirs of Sir Henry Savile, of Washer Lane, which is a part of Woodhouse. John Waterhouse was a Yeoman and also had an estate at King's Cross. He married Mary -----. His will was proved May 3, 1619. If his wife married again the tuition of his children was left to his nephew, Isaac Starkey.

CHILDREN:-

1. Isaac Waterhouse, under age in 1618.
11. Mary Waterhouse, who appears to have been heir to Washer Lane and carried the estate to John Waterhouse in marriage with him.

In 1632, an indiotment was obtained against him for £200 debt.

Children:-

1. John Waterhouse.) Both these children were under age
11. Isaac Waterhouse.) in 1649, when their tuition was placed in the hands of Anthony Waterhouse, of Skircote. Yeoman.

3 3

JOHN¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Whitchurch, in the County of Buckingham.

The following information in regard to him was obtained from Clutterbuck's "History of Hertford," and Chauncy's "History of Hertfordshire."

"On the South side of the church yard there formerly stood an antient moated seat, called Hempsted Bury, which belonged to the Rector and Convent of Ashridge, in the county of Buckingham, parcel of the Manor of Hemel Hempsted, and was granted by yhem in the 27th Henry VIII to John Waterhouse and Richard Combe, jointly for the term of sixty years, by the Deyrie of Hemel Hempsted, with the meadow and pastures thereunto belonging, together with two mansions or manor-places in Hemel Hempsted and Bovingdom, for the sum of four pounds.

This John Waterhouse was for many years auditor to King Henry the eighth, who paid him a visit to this seat, where he was sumptuously entertained, and at the request of his host the said King by his letters Patents dated at Westminster, the 29th of Decem. Anno 21, Regni sui," (of his reign) "did incorporate this Vill by the name of Bayliff and Inhabitants, granting to them perpetual Succession, and that from henceforth one Person should be chosen Bayliff by the Inhabitants every Year to govern this Vill; and that they may plead and be impleaded by the name of Bayliff

and Inhabitants and shall have a Common Seal; that the Bayliff and Inhabitants, and their successors forever shall have a Market every Week, to be held on every Thursday in this Vill, and a Fair every Year to be held on the Feast of Corpus Christi, to continue one Day, with Pipowder Court during the said Market and Fair, together with all the Issues, Profits, and Amercements arising out of the same Market, Fair and Court.

The king also before his departure, honoured the children of his host with much praise and encouragement, foretelling that his son Edward would be the crown of them all, and a man of great honour and wisdom, fit for the service of princes."

John Waterhouse married Margaret, daughter of Henry Turner, of Blunts Hall, Essex. He was buried at St. Peters Church at Berkhamsted.

"In the Chancel going into the Church by the Belfry one Tomb in the Wall was this Inscription on the Gravestone before it. 'Hic jacet Johannes Waterhouse et Margaretta uxor ejus'" (Here lies John Waterhouse and Margaret his wife.) "This tomb was covered with a slab much mutilated, but upon which, with an escutcheon over it was this inscription in brass.

'Ecce! sub hoc tumulo conjux uxorque jacemus.

Aeternam pacem donet utrique Deus

Nil cuiquam abstulimus si quid benefecimus ulli

Est qui pro meritis praemia digna dabit,

Est tamen una salus Christi miseratio quam qui

Transis ambobus saepe precare precor.'" "

(Behold! under this stone husband and wife we lie.

May God give to each eternal peace

We abstain from doing nothing if we do good to anyone

There is One who gives a just reward for our deeds.

On the escutcheon was the arms viz.- Two shields - on the dexter, Or, a pile engrailed Sable; Waterhouse; sinister, Waterhouse; impaling Ermine, on a cross 4 mill rinds Sable.

On the marble on the wall over the tomb was written, 'John Waterhouse, gent, deceased the 11th daye of August, in anno 1558, and Margaret his wief, deceased the 10th daye of Januari, in anno dicto; which John and Margaret had issue, viz., John, Thomas, William, Edward, Arthur and Charles.

CHILDREN:-

- 45. I. John Waterhouse.
- 46. II. Thomas Waterhouse.
- III. William Waterhouse.
- 47. IV. Edward Waterhouse.

V. Arthur Waterhouse, married Grace, daughter of John Hanchett, of County of Hertford, and had no children.

VI. Charles Waterhouse, married Ursula Andrews, cousin of Sir Eusebius Andrew of Co. of Northampton, Knight. Charles lived in Baltra, Ireland, and had two children, viz., Charles and Edward, of Baltra.

3 4

ANTHONY¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁹ Richard,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Hollins, Gent., married Nov. 19, 1565, Ann, Wilkinson. In his will dated July 26, 1578, he directed that he be buried in the church of Halifax and states that he has a lease of the tithes of Corn, and hay and tithe of money in the townships of Warley, Widgeley, Wadworth, and Stansfield, and also of wool and lambs of the

grounds and townships of the north part of the Calder, within the Vicarage of Halifax.

CHILDREN:-

1. Jonas Waterhouse, a daughter of ----- Widdupp, of Tooting. He was the heir apparent and Executor to his father's will and was under age in 1578. He was an attorney in the Council of the North.

Children:-

1. Henry Waterhouse, of Tooting, in Surrey, Esq., sometime of Ston, married -----.

Children:-

1. Jonas Waterhouse, Vicar of Bradford, in the time of the Commonwealth. Was displaced at the Restoration and died Feb. 13, 1716, at the age of 90. With him seems to have ended this line.

11. Ann Waterhouse.

111. Susan Waterhouse.

3 5

JOHN¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁹ Richard,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) married Dorothy, daughter of John Lacy, of Cromwellbotham. He had the lands of Hollins by gift of his father, mentioned in his father's will in a manner to show that he was illegitimate. His will was proved Apr. 28, 1601, and in it he mentions cousin Jonas Waterhouse, of Bakrigg, Esq., cousins Robert and Lewis Waterhouse, Gentlemen.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Waterhouse, Esq., said to have been kept in foreign parts as long as his Uncle Anthony lived.

11. Richard Waterhouse. Perhaps the one sometime of the Hollins and then of Inshihowlecan Castle, in Kilkenney.

111. Fortuna Waterhouse.

IV. Martha Waterhouse.

36

ROBERT¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Halifax, Esq., barrister at law and Justice of the Peace, He married Jane, daughter of Thomas Waterton, Esq., of Walton. She died Mar.3,1598. Robert had a messuage at York, in the parish of St. Ellen and St Wilfred, and a messuage and lands at Ackworth. He bought the Old Hall in Halifax of his cousin Nicholas Waterhouse. He was a Member of Parliament for Aldborough, 31 Elizabeth. In his will he was of York, Esq., and left property in trust to sell to pay his debts; also to Jeremy and Toby Waterhouse and others and the residue, ("except my wife's chain of gold and one other chain of gold which I have in my custody of my son Edward's, which the Countess of Shrewsbury gave him") to Jane, his daughter, towards her preformment in marriage; her education to his sister, the Lady Margaret Gargrave and his wife; desires his cousin, Robert Waterhouse, of Harthill, to take upon him the education of his son John, his brother, Thomas, the education of his son Robert, and his cousin, Richard Gargrave, the education of his son Richard.

CHILDREN:-

1. Sir Edward Waterhouse, eldest son and heir, born at Shibden, June 19,1581, married Abigail, daughter of John Barker, of Ipswich. Sir Edward was of Leith, County of York. He seems to have been the spender of the estate. He sold Shibden in 1609 to Sir Arthur Ingram, and lived at Milton, in Surrey, but in 1619 he was living in Yorkshire, for in that year he brought an action against ----- Saltmarsh, Under Sheriff, for having entered his house violently in the night-time to exact payment of some bond entered into in connection with one David Waterhouse, who had been a bankrupt. His wife survived him and he died without issue in London.

11. John Waterhouse, born July 14, 1582, at Shibden. Died July,1584.

111. Jane Waterhouse, born in York, Dec. 6, 1583, married Oct. 12, 1603, Metham Jackson, Gent., of Cadeby.

IV. John Waterhouse, born in York, May 7, 1585, died without issue.

V. Robert Waterhouse, born at York, Sept. 1586, said to be of the Crown Office, London.

VI. Richard Waterhouse, born at York, Mar. 3, 1588.

VII. William Waterhouse, born at Kinsley, July 4, 1590, died Nov. 22, 1591.

VIII. Abigail Waterhouse, born at York, Sept. 5, 1595, died Jan. 14, 1596, at St. Ellens, York.

The "Deanery of Doncaster" says, "The authority for the birth of these children, is a sheet in the handwriting of the father. He says that the name of the younger daughter was given to her, contrary to the desire and intention of the parents, by the wife of Archbishop Toby Matthew, whose name of Frances it was intended she should have borne."

37

THOMAS¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) Esq., of Braithwell, married Sept. 8, 1573, Dorothy, daughter of Thomas Vincent of Braithwell. She was his sole heir. The following is taken from his will as given in the Rev. Joseph Foster's "History of the Deanery of Doncaster." He directs that he shall be buried in the Church of Braithwell, and that his funeral shall be performed in such decent sort as his quality doth require. He leaves to Vincent Waterhouse, his eldest son, all the interest he has in the tithes of Braithwell, Michelbring, paying yearly 20 Nobles to each of his younger sons during the life of Dorothy, his wife, and after her

decease the annuity to be continued out of his whole goods. His interest in Scroby Milnes farm, Londwood and Plumtree park, to his son Vincent, paying £200 to his daughter Eleanor. To his other seven daughters he gives £20 each besides the leases that he had bestowed upon them, and commits the tuition of them to his wife, and if she die to his cousin Robert Waterhouse, of Harthill, his brothers Phillip, Stephen and David, his son Vincent and his cousin Richard Combe. He adds,- "whereas I had of my lady Mallorie in her widowhood one hundred pounds, delivered unto me of trust to be bestowed of the poor of the towns of Rotheram, Rawmarsh and Ecclesfield after her decease, my will is that Dorothy my wife shall faithfully discharge the same, which I have as great a care to be performed as anything in this world." This will was made about 1598.

CHILDREN:-

48. I. Vincent Waterhouse.

II. Thomas Waterhouse, bapt. 1576.

III. Mary Waterhouse, bapt. 1577.

IV. Penelope Waterhouse, bapt. 1579, married Ralph Warrenner.

V. Charles Waterhouse, bapt. 1580.

VI. John Waterhouse. bapt. Nov. 5, 1581, executed in Smithfield.

VII. Jane Waterhouse, bapt. 1582.

VIII. Dorothy Waterhouse, bapt. 1583, married Edward Eyre.

IX. Susan Waterhouse, bapt. 1586.

X. Gervase Waterhouse, bapt. 1587, died without issue, 1614.

XI. Cressy Waterhouse, bapt. 1588, married William Williams, Esq., of Halifax.

XII. Robert Waterhouse, bapt. 1589, married ----- Judd, and had Thomas, Dorothy, Vincent and Isabel, the last two dying in infancy.

XIII. Ann Waterhouse, bapt. 1592.

XIV. Eleanor Waterhouse, bapt. 1594, married John Towers.

XV. Francis Waterhouse, died in infancy.

XVI. Edward Waterhouse, died in infancy.

XVII. Pettinger Waterhouse, died in infancy.

XVIII. Elizabeth Waterhouse, died in infancy.

38

DAVID¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (John,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Oquel or Ognel Hall, in the parish of Birstal, Esq., and Barrister of the Inner Temple, London, married Elizabeth, daughter of and coheir of Thomas Craine. This is probably the David Waterhouse, a lawyer, who was censured in Parliament in 1623 for penning a scandalous petition. He was fined £500 which was afterwards remitted. He was a Member of Parliament for Berwick in 1601, and for Alderborough at another time.

CHILDREN:-

- I. John Waterhouse, his father's heir.
- II. Theodore Waterhouse, entered University College, Oxford, May 6, 1624, aged 17 years.
- III. Elizabeth Waterhouse.
- IV. Robert Waterhouse, died young.
- V. David Waterhouse.
- VI. Joseph Waterhouse.
- VII. Catherine Waterhouse.
- VIII. Philip Waterhouse, of London, stationer. Will proved Jan. 9, 1631.
- IX. Mary Waterhouse.

39

ROBERT¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (George,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Harthill, Esq., married Grace, daughter of John Milner, of Pudsey. He married second, Mary, widow of Francis Milner, of Whitewell. In his will dated July 17, 1617, he leaves property to his wife Mary, "and to every son that I have begotten or shall beget on her body." Left to his son Maximilian all leases, advowsons, tithes etc.

CHILDREN:-

49. 1. Maximilian Waterhouse.

40

LEWIS¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (Gregory,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) baptized Feb. 12, 1564, was of Newhall Grange, in the parish of Laughton or Maltby, married Anne, daughter and heir of Richard Cosyn, of Newhall Grange.

CHILDREN:-

1. Jasper Waterhouse, bapt. Dec. 30, 1601, was probably of Fetter Lane, Gentleman. He married a daughter of Capt. Keeling, and was a Secretary in the Crown Office. He made his will Aug. 20, 1686, "being very ancient."
11. Robert Waterhouse.
111. John Waterhouse.

4 1

TOBEY¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (Gregory,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) D.D., and Rector of Whitwell, married Elizabeth, daughter of Edward Copley, Esq., of Southill, Bedfordshire. We have the names of only one of his children.

CHILDREN:-

1. Toby Waterhouse, youngest son died June 14, 1623. Whitwell or Whitwell is in Derbyshire very near the border of Yorkshire. When Mr. Hunter took the church records at this village in 1801, he came across the following rather remarkable inscription on a plate of brass affixed to the wall of the chancel.

"An D'ni 1623, June 14. Tobie Waterhous aged fowre yeares and sixe moneths: full of grace and truths, as a vessell, not as a fountaine, departed this life. The youngest son of Tobie Waterhous Doctor in Divinitie, the youngest son of Gregorie Waterhous Esq., the youngest sonne of Robert Waterhouse of the Moote Hall in Halifax in Yorkshire, Esq., and Elizabeth Copley daughter of Edward Copley of Southill in Bedfordshire Esquire.

Both life and grace in the sweet babe like parallels rann
on,

When sudden death did seem to make their points to meet
in one,

But thus on thee did life and grace thy parallels attend,
Whose equal lengt keeps equal breadth, now never meeting
end."

4 2

ISAAC¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Woodhouse, his father's heir, was baptized Nov. 3, 1556, married Mary, sister of John Crowther. Isaac was a benefactor to the Grammar School. His will was proved Oct. 3, 1611.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Waterhouse, bapt. July 19, 1584, died Dec. 23, 1598.

60. 11. Anthony Waterhouse.

111. Samuel Waterhouse, bapt. 1588, He was of Southowram, and a Yeoman. He had an estate at Newcastle. His will was proved Mar. 5, 1623, and in it he mentions Samuel, son of Joshua Waterhouse, of Halifax, clothier, and Samuel, son of Joshua Waterhouse, of Halifax, alehousekeeper.

1V. Michael Waterhouse, bapt. 1592. He was of Newcastle-upon-Tyne, and a merchant. He married Margaret ----- and his will was proved Oct. 14, 1624.

V. Robert Waterhouse, a merchant in London. He had an estate in Barnsley by his father's will. Administration of his effects was granted in the Commissary Court of London, to Ann Waterhouse, his widow, Aug. 30, 1625, and afterwards, Nov. 10, 1625, to Anthony Waterhouse, his brother.

VI. Daniel Waterhouse, bapt. 1597-8. Had a share in the tithes of Barnsley by his father's will. He was living, also his wife in 1623.

51. VII. John Waterhouse, bapt. Jan. 1, 1602.

52. VIII. Isaac Waterhouse.

IX. Susan Waterhouse, married first, Aug. 14, 1610, William Fenay, of Fenay, and second, John Farrer, Gent., of Eawood.

X. Mary Waterhouse. married Stephen White, of Stanton.

XI. Eleanor Waterhouse, married Thomas Wilkinson, of Elland.

XII. Grace Waterhouse, married July 22, 1621, John Cooper, of Shelf.

XIII. Elizabeth Waterhouse.

4 3

CALEB¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) baptized Sept. 21, 1561, married first,

Kleanor, daughter of William Brook. She was buried Feb.16,1596-7, and he married second, Elizabeth, daughter of John Armytage or Armitage, of Huddersfield Hall. He was of Skircot and a Yeoman.

In 1610 Caleb bought Shibden Hall, of Sir Arthur Ingram by whom it had been purchased of Sir Edward Waterhouse, Knt. in 1609. He resold it to ----- Lister in 1612. His will was proved Mar.23,1613.

CHILDREN:-

By first wife.

53. 1. Michael Waterhouse, bapt. June 7,1584.

11. John Waterhouse.

111. Joshua Waterhouse, of Halifax, buried Mar.15,1625. Administration granted Feb.9,1626, for the use of Dorothy and Mary his daughters.

By second wife.

1V. Samuel Waterhouse, bapt. Jan.12,1605, living in 1613.

V. Susan Waterhouse, bapt. Nov.22,1599. A clerk.

VI. Grace Waterhouse, bapt. Dec.13,1607, married ----- Hoyle.

4 4

NATHANIEL¹⁰ WATERHOUSE, (Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) baptized Sept.11,1586, Dorothy Wilson, of Eland.

He is spoken of in one place as a dry salter and in another as being in business as a Salter or Oil drawer. He was a benefactor to his native town, and left his estates to the almshouses which bear his name.

John Watson in his "History of Halifax," has this to say,-

"The next benefactor, in order of time, is Nathaniel Waterhouse, but to

give a proper account of his charities, we must go back to what is called the Corporation Charter of Halifax, or the Letters Patent which he obtained of King Charles the First, in these words:

'CHARLES, by the grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. to all whom these presents shall come, greeting. Whereas by the humble petition of our well-beloved and faithful Subjects, the inhabitants of the town and parish of Halifax, in the county of York, we are given to understand, that the said town of Halifax being anciently and yet a place of great cloathing, most of the inhabitants within the same town and parish being Clothiers, is now of late much impoverished, and like to be ruined, by reason of the great multitude of poor people there daily increasing, which hath occasioned many able men within the said town and parish to remove from thence to other places, being oppressed with the heavy of the assessments towards the maintenance of the poor within the said parish, there being above forty pounds paid monthly there, and most years eighteen or nineteen months assessments collected for one year. And for that Nathaniel Waterhouse, Gent. one of the Petitioners, hath given a large house within the said town to the end the same might be employed for a workhouse, to set the poor within the said town and parish on work, yet in regard there are no Justices of the Peace within or near the said town, to govern and well order the said house, (the poor people in said town and parish being most of them idle and disorderly people, imbezzling or spoiling the work brought to them,) the said house is become of no use, but is like to return to the donor, it being not employed according to his intent; wherefore the inhabitants of the said town and parish have humbly besought us, that we would be graciously pleased to take the premisses into our royal and gracious consideration, and to grant unto the Petitioners, that the said house may, by our Letters Patent under the Great Seal of England, be made and established a work-

house forever, for the setting of the poor within the said town and parish on work, by the name of a workhouse for the said poor within the said town and parish of Halifax; and likewise to grant unto the said Petitioners, that thirteen of the most able and discreet persons within the said town and parish may be nominated and elected Governors of the said house, by the name of the Master and Governors of the workhouse for the poor within the said town and parish of Halifax, and that the said Master and Governors may be a Body Politic for ever, and may have a perpetual succession; ***** may have power to search any suspected houses within the said town and parish, for idle vagabonds, ruffians, and sturdy beggars, and to take such idle vagrant persons, and sturdy beggars and ruffians, as shall be found within any such suspected house, and to place them in the said workhouse, there to be put on work, and to be corrected and punished according to the good and wholesome laws of this our realm of England.

And that we would be further graciously pleased to give unto the Petitioners such further powers, for the well ordering and governing the said workhouse, and the poor people therein to be placed and employed, according to a like Grant made by our late predecessor King Edward the Sixth, for the government of Bridewell, in the city of London. Know ye therefore, that we, for the considerations aforesaid, graciously inclining and condescending to the humble suit of the said Petitioners, and being of our own princely inclination willing and desirous to cherish and promote all pious and charitable works of that nature, and to establish the said house according to the good intent and meaning of the said donor, of our especial grace, and certain knowledge, and mere motion, have made, constituted, ordained, and established, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, do make, constitute, ordain, and establish that the said workhouse heretofore given by the said Nathaniel Waterhouse as aforesaid, situate within the said town of Halifax, shall for ever hereafter be, and

be called by the name of a workhouse for the poor within the town and parish of Halifax, in the county of York, and to that use shall be for ever hereafter employed. And for the better governing, ordering, and guiding of the said poor in their employment, and punishing of those that shall be found obstinate and refractory we further will, constitute, ordain, and appoint, that thirteen of the ablest and most discreet persons in the said town and parish shall be for ever hereafter A BODY CORPORATE AND POLITIC, by the name of Master and Governors of the workhouse for the poor within the town and parish of Halifax, in the county of York. ***** And for the better execution of our will and pleasure in this behalf, we have assigned, nominated, constituted, and made, and by these presents do, for us, our heirs and successors, assign, name, constitute, and make the said Nathaniel Waterhouse to be the first and modern Master of the said workhouse, willing that the said Nathaniel Waterhouse, in the said office or place of Master of said workhouse shall remain and continue, from the time of the taking of his oath as Master, as hereafter in these presents is expressed, until the Feast of St. Michael the Archangel, which shall be in the year of our Lord God, one thousand six hundred thirty and six, ***** and that after the said Feast of St. Michael, which shall be in the same year of our Lord God, one thousand six hundred and thirty and six, a new election of another Master shall be made, and oath by him taken as is expressed: the said Nathaniel Waterhouse shall be prime Governor of the said workhouse, next in order to the Master thereof for the time being, during his natural life, unless for ill aberring, or other just cause, he shall be removed from that place or office of Prime Governor of the said workhouse as aforesaid; ***** And we do further by these presents, **** give and grant ***** that it shall and may be lawful to and for the said Master and twelve Governors, or the major part of them for the time being, once in every year for ever, that is to say, on the Feast of St. Michael

the Archangel yearly, (if it be not on Sunday, and if Sunday then the next day after,) to elect and choose one of the ablest and discreetest persons of the said twelve Governors of the said workhouse, to be Master of the same for one year then next following, ***** and every of them after the time of his being Master is ended, shall return again unto his place of Governor, in the same rank, order and antiquity as he was before; ***** And to the end that Justice may be the better done and executed within the said town, **** we do hereby *** appoint that the said Nathaniel Waterhouse, **** and Anthony Foxcroft *** shall be Justices of the Peace, **** In witness whereof we have caused these our Letters to be made Patents. Witness Ourselves at Canterbury, the fourteenth day of September, in the eleventh year of our reign. Per breve de privato sigillo."

Wolsley.

Nathaniel Waterhouse's will was written on ten sheets of paper, each one of which was signed, witnessed and sealed, we are told, with an acorn and oak sprig between the capital letters N.W., "which," says Mr. Watson, "seems to prove that the Testator had no coat of arms, and after searching in the Herald's Office at London, I could not find his right to any." The following is taken from John Watson's "History of Halifax."

"The Will of Nathaniel Waterhouse, of Halifax,

From the Original in the Blew-coat Hospital, at Halifax."

"In the name of God, Amen. The first day of July, in the eighteenth years of the reigns of our Sovereign Lord, Charles, by the grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defend^r of the Faith &c. and in the year of our Lord God after the course and computation of the Church of England One thousand six hundred forty and two, I Nathaniell Waterhouse, of Halifax, in the Diocese and County of Yorke, Gent., being in good health, and p^rfect remembrance, (praised bee God) doe advisedly make and declare this my present last Will and Testam^t, in manner and form following, (viz.) First, I com^{end} my soule into to hands of Almighty God my heavenly Father, Jesus Christ his deare Sonne my Savio^r, and the Holie Ghost my Sanctifier, through whose mercies, meritts, and comforts I firmly believe to bee eternally saved; and my body I commit to the earth, in sure hope of a joyfull resurrection. And touching such worldly estate

as God, of his rich goodnes, hath blessed mee withall, and first concerning my lands and tenements, it is my minde, and I doe hereby give devise and bequeath unto the Right Worth Richard Marsh, Doct^r in Divinitie, Vicar of Halifax aforesaid, and unto Anthony Foxcroft, of Halifax, abovesaid, Gent. Thomas Byns, and Samuell Clough, both of the same, Yeomen, William Horton, my servant, and John Woodhead, of Halifax abovesaid, Scriv^r, and unto Henry Northead, of Quarlers, in Northowram, Robert Hall, of Boothstown, in Northowram abovesaid, Richard Tatterfall, of Warley, Lawrence Spencer, of the same, James Robinson, of Bowwood, in Sowerby, Thomas Wilkinson, of Brackenbed, in Ovenden, in the said county of Yorke, Yeomen, and unto my Cousens, John Wade, of Skircote, and Christopher Saville, nowe or late of the same, in the said county, Chapmen; and and Thomas Lister, of Shibden hall, in Southowram, in said county, Gentl^e, and Joseph Fountneys, of the Boothtown, in Northowram, Yeoman, and to their heires for ever, all and singular my messuages, houses, cottages, barnes, buildings, mills, lands, tenements, meadows, closes, pastures, feedings, woods, underwoods, rents, rev^lcons, easiements, emoluments, and hereditaments, with all and singular their and every of their rights, members, and app^ltenances, in Halifax, Skircote, and Southowram aforesaid, and in Siddall and Exley, in the said county of Yorke, and elsewhere in the county aforesaid, in whose tenures or occupacions foar^r the same bee. (except such housing, lands, tenements, rents, revenues, and proffitts, as are herein hereafter given and devised to the Maister and Governours, of the workhouse for the poore within the town and parish of Halifax, in the county of Yorke, and their successors for ever, To have and to hold the said messuages, cottages, mills, lands, tenements, closes, rents, hereditaments, and premises, with thappurtenances, (except before excepted,) unto them the said, (same names as above) and their heires for ever, yieldinge therefor yearely unto mee and my heires the rent of one red rose in the tyme of roses (if it be asked) of intent, confidence, and trust that they the said, (same names as above) and their heires, shall from and y^mmediately after my decease, conv^lte, dispose, and imploy the said messuages, mills, lands, tents, rents, hereditaments, and premises, with thappurtenances, and the rents issues, and p^rfits thereof, to the sev^lall uses, behalves, and purposes herein hereafter menc^loned, and accordinge to the true intent and meaneinge of this my Will, (viz.) first, that all that p^rte of the said houses and buildings, with thapp^rtenances, scittuat or beinge att or neare the over Church-steele and Canfeyhead, in Halifax aforesaid wh^{ch} I late bought and purchased to mee and my heires for ever, of Thomas Gowerfall, late of London, and Grace his wife, or thom of them, and wh^{ch} I allready made into twelve sev^lall dwellings, and in wh^{ch} I have allready placed certaine poore p^rsons, shalbe used conv^lted, and imployed, from tyme to tyme, for ever, to and for the habitacions and dwellings of twelve aged or impotent poore p^rsons, where of I will, and my minde is, that threeshalbe continually taken from the towne of Halifax aforesaid, and thother nine forth of thother townes within the parish of Halifax aforesaid, (to wit) one out of each of these townes of Sowerby, Kildgley, Warley, Ovenden, Skircote, Northowram, Southowram, Hippholme, and Shelfe, and there shall continue without payeing any rent for the same durainge their respective lives, or so longe as to the said sixteen Devises or Trustees before named, or to the greater p^rte of them, and their heires, shalbe thought fitt and convenient: And y^t after decease or removall of any of the said poore, the said Devises or Trustees, and their heires or the greater p^rte of them, shall and may chuse out of y^e said tenn townes some other aged or impotent poore people to succeed and be placed in the roome or place of such poore soe deceased or removed. In wh^{ch} chuse I will my sd Trustees shall deale faithfully and indifferently, accordinge to my true intent, y^t there may be alwaies in y^e sd houses thre of Halifax,

and one of ev'y of y^e s^d nine oth^r townes. And it is my will y^t my said Devisees and Trustees, and their heires, shall pay to the said twelve aged or impotent poore persons, the yearly some of eighteen pounds, (vizt.) to each of them thirtie shillings per ann in lawfull English money, towards their mayntenance; and five pounds a yeare in like lawfull money to array them withall in black; and both the said eighteen pounds and sixe pounds to commence after my death, and bee payable yearly thenceforth for ever, in or upon the Feast Dayes of Pentecost and St. Martin the Bischopp in winter, by even pore'ons, or contrary wise, as the said Feast daies shall fall out, by and after my death.

Item, I will that all house or tenem^t, garden, backside, and easm^{ts}, wth thapptenanc's, in Halifax aforesaid, now in the severall tenures or occupac'ons of *Xp^r Marshall, and Thomas Marshall his son, or thom of them, their or thom of their Assigne or Ass' shall bee ymployed and disposed of as followeth, viz. it is my minde, that if I doe not in my life tyme build and finish the same, my said Trustees or Devisees, and their heires, shall forthwth after my decease erect and build all theaft part of the said house belowe the floore, nowe in the tenure of the said Thomas Marshall, or his assignes, in a faire straight house, which shall conteyne from the streete towards the south into the backside fourteene or fifteene yards within the walls, and shalbee five yards and a halfe to the square two heightes heigh, and theaft wall thereof to bee sett upon the west end, or wall of the said twelve dwellings for poore p'sons, shall have therein twenty lights of windowes, and bee divided or made into two roomes or chambers in the higher height, and in either of those roomes meet places made for tenn bedd-rooms, and see many beds and furniture for them made and kept therein, viz. tenn bedds for tenn boyes, in thom chamber, and tenn beds for tenn maids or girles in thother room, for their more convenient lodging; and that the lower place or height bee also made into two roomes or distinct places for the said children to work in, and one chimney to bee made in the one of the said two lower roomes, and another chimney to bee sett upp in either of the said two upper chambers or roomes, three chimneys in all, and that all the upper p'te of the said house or ten^t above the flower, nowe in the ten^{re} of the said Christopher Marshall or his assignes, shall forthwth after my decease bee repaired, and made fitt for and converted to a meet dwelling or habitac'on, for a fitt discrete and carefull person, as my said Trustees or Devisees, or greater p'te of them, shall elect and put therein, for the trayning up and teaching of the said twentie children, in such imployment and worke as they shall bee most capable and apt to followe and doe, whiles they bee respectively sett to worke in said lower howse. And it is my will, that if I dye before the finishing of the said new house (p'te of it being done already) and repairs of thother, then my said Trustees and Devisees shall have, take, and carry away, and imploy to the building and repairs aforesaid, or see much thereof as shall bee undone, and not finished at such my decease, all that lathe, with thapp'tenances, in Halifax aforesaid, standing in theast end of the croft there, nowe in the tenure of John Lobson, or his assignes, built by John Holdsworth, Butcher. deceased, and which I late boughte of Raph Ashton, of Kirkly, in said county Esquire, (amongst other things). And that myne executours shall beare the charges w^{ch} shalbe necessary to be layd out in the buildinge and rep'ing of the said houses for y^e said l^r or ov'seer, and twenty children, to make it fitt for them as aforesaid, ov^r and above the said lath, and the m'rialls and stuffe of thold houseinge, below the said floore, and shall pay the same to my said Trustees or Devisees, and their heires, out of my p'sonall estate, that the said whole house may be specially made ready for the p'pose and intent aforesaid: And after y^e same be finished accordingly, then I will that my said Trustees or Devisees, and

*Christopher.

and their heires, shall bestow twenty shillings a yeare from thenceforth for ever in the maintenance of the same house appoynted for y^e said Ov'seer or Mr and twenty children, and of the said twelve dwellings for twelve poore p'sons aforesaid, in good and sufficient repair. And I will y^t my s^d Trustees or Devises, and their heires, do chuse thov'seer of y^e said workhouse for the tyme beinge, from tyme to tyme, to succedinge gen'ac'ons for ever, to be Ov'seer and M^r of y^e said twenty children, in regard the said houses are soe neare, y^t he may sup'intend y^e said twenty children, and discharge his office in y^e said workhouse wthout any greate toyle, and wth lesse charges to y^e said M^r and Gov'nors then if they chuse two sev'all p'sons. And y^t y^e s^d twentie children be taken into y^e said house such as be fatherles and motherles, at thage of six y^{rs}, and there kept at worke, and mainteyned wth all necessaries, till they accomplish their respective ages of thirtene or fouretene yeares, y^t they may be fitt for puttinge forth to bee app^rntices, at the discrec'on of my said Trustees or Devises, and their heires, and the Vicar and Church-wardens of the p'ish of Halifax aforesaid, and Justices of Peace for the tyme beinge, or oth^{rs} whom it may concerne, to have anythings to doe about disposinge of y^e said children after they attayne y^t age; and such of the said children as shall, for want of strength, bee unmet to be bound ap^rnti ... at their ages of thirtene or fouretene yeares atteyned, shalbe kept and mainteyned in the said house till they be fiftene yeares old, and then left to the p'vision of their friends and the said p'ish of Halifax, wthout any more charge to my said Trustees or y^e said Ov'seer. And it is my minde, y^t there be taken into the said house, and charge of the said Ov'seer, and be ymployed and mainteyned as aforesaid, such twenty children as abovesaid, (viz.) ten boys and ten girls in manner ensueinge, (to wit,) out of the said towns of Halifax aforesaid, five, of Southowram aforesaid, two, of Northowram two, of Hipp'holme two, of Skircote one, of Shelle one, of Ovenden two, of Warley two, of Midgley one, and of Sowerby two. And if any of y^e said twentie children dye or be removed thence, then it is my will, y^t y^e said Trustees or Devises, and their heires, or the greater p'te of them, shall or may take into his or her roome soe removed or dead, another such childe, whose p'ents are dead, as shalbe of the same sex that the childe soe dead and removed was, to be ymployed and mainteyned as aforesaid: And the same course to be held from time to time for ever, that ten boyes and ten girles may, out of y^e respective townes last aforesaid, and after the rate and number aforesaid, be allwayes kept to worke, trayned up, and mainteyned in the said house as aforesaid. And I will, that the said my Devises or Trustees, and their heires, shall for ev^r after my death, yield, pay, and allowe, unto y^e s^d p'son, made Ov'seer and Sup'intendent, or M^r of y^e s^d children, for their maintenance wth meat, drinke, clothinge, and all other necessaries, and his paynes in trayning y^m up in worke as abovesd, not only y^e y^rly sum' of fourty-five pounds of lawfull English money, but alsoe five pounds of like money p^r ann' to buy said twentie children blew coats withall, and shall p'mitt him besides, to take the gaines, w^{ch} he can make of the service of the said children: Nevertheless I will, that if such p'son elected and appointed Overseer of them as abovesaid, doe oppress or tyrannize over the said children, or seek to make a pray of them, that they cannot live comfortably, and grow in strength, and bee meet to bee put forth app^rntices as aforesaid, or bee negligent, careles, or remisse, in attending, trayning, or imploying them, that then such person chosen Overseer, and miscarrying in his place as aforesaid, shalbee forthwith displaced, and another speedily put thereinto by the said Devises and Trustees, and their heires, whom I request to be very vigilant and carefull herein, as I trust them. And touching the house and buildings at the Sawsey-head, now in the tenure of Christopher

Robinson, or his assignes, with the garden, west p'te of the croft adjoining thereunto, and new house lately by him built on the north part of the said croft, with all theire ap'pten'ces, in Halifax aforesaid, now in thoeoccupa'con of him the said Christopher Robinson or his assignes, and all rents and yearly profitts reserved upon my demise, lease, or graunt heretofore made of the p'misses last menc'oned, or any p'te thereof, my will and minde is, that the same shall be used and imployed by my said Trustees or Devisees, and theire heires for ever, to and for him and his benefitt, use, and comodity, who, from tyme to tyme, to succeeding generations, for ever, shall bee the Stipendary Preacher, or hyred Lecturer, att and in the parish Church of Halifax aforesaid, in which house, att Cawsey-head aforesaid, I will and intreate my said Trustees, or Devisees, and theire heires, and Lecturer for the tyme being, foure tymes in each yoare, or oftener as they shall think fitt, to resort and meet together to condider and debate for and about the'xecution of this my Will: And it is my minde, that the said Lecturer shall, from tyme to tyme, resorte to the poore persons aforesaid in the said twelve dwellings, and the said poore ymployed in the said workhouse, and to the said twenty children trained upp in the said new house, and admonish them to repaire to the Church to Divine Prayers and Sermons, at convenient prayer tymes, and shall catechize them, or the younger parte of them, weekly in the sommer tyme, at his, and my said Trustees, or Devisees, and theire heires discretion. And I will, that my said Trustees, or Devisees, and theire heires, shall, towards theire charges at theire said meetings, yearly allowe and keep to themselves forth of the rents and profitts of the p'misses, than'nall rent or so'me of fourty shillings of lawfull english money. And it is my minde, that during soe long tyme as there shalbee noe Lecturer at the said parish church of Halifax, the said house, buildings, garden, west p'te of the croft, and new house, with thapp'tenances in the tenure of the said Christopher Robinson, or his assignes, and the rents, yssues, and profitts thereof, shall be used and imployed towards the maynteynance of the poore people within the said towne of Halifax aforesaid, and Sowerby, Midgley, Tarley, Skirkote, Ovenden, Southoram, Northowram, Shelf, and Hipp'holme abovesaid, att the discreasion of my said Trustees, or Devisees, and theire heires, or the major p'te of them: Item, it is my will and minde, that my said Devisees, or Trustees, and theire heires, shall, from and after my death, pay, imploy, and dispose the annuall so'me of fourty six pounds of like current money of England, forth of the rents, tenements, hereditaments, and p'misses, (except before excepted) to such p'son or p'sons in such sort, manner, and forme, and to such uses, intents, and purposes as bee herein hereafter menc'oned, in, in or upon the aforesaid feast dayes, by even porcions, viz. unto the Preachers, from tyme to tyme being, and which shall bee to succeeding generac'ons, fore ever, hired at these Chappels, or Churches, within the said parish of Halifax aforesaid, called Sowerby, Sowerby-bridge Chappell, Illingworth Chappell, Cooley Chappell, Lightcliffe Chappell, Chappell in the Greaves or Bryers, Kastrick Chappell, Eland Chappell, or Church, Ribonden Chappell, Sowerby Chappell, Luddington Chappell, or Church, Heptonstall Chappell, or Church, and Croftone Chappell. These stipends following (vizt) the said Preacher of Sowerby-bridge Chappell foure pounds. Att Cooley Chappell foure pounds. Att Litchcliffe Chappell, foure pounds. The Preacher of Chappell in the Greaves three pounds. At Kastrick Chappell fourty shillings. Sowerby Chappell foure pounds. Att Eland Chappell, or Church foure pounds. Att Ribonden Chappell, three pounds. The Preacher at Luddington Chappell, or Church three pounds. At Heptonstall Chappell, or Church, fourty shillings; and at Croftone Chappell fourty shillings, towards the augmenta'con of the respective stipends, maintaynance and wages of the said Preachers. And it is my minde, that ev'y of the said Preachers of the said several Chappells, or Churches, last named, shall preach a sermon in the

said parish Church of Halifax every first Wednesday in each month in the
 yeare, the Preacher at Sowerby-bridge Chappell aforesaid beginning the
 first month after my decease, and the other Preachers following monthly,
 according to that ranck I have herein first above placed them; and to con-
 tinue in that order and course, that they may keep a constant monthly Lec-
 ture for ever; for w^{ch} I will they shall have thannuall stipends aforesaid;
 and I will, that if there bee not a monthly Sermon begun and continued
 in forme aforesaid, for ever, or if there bee not constantly mayntayned
 at every of the said twelve Churches, or Chappells, a P^rching Ministry
 to supply the Cure at every of the said respective twelve places, from
 and after my death, to succeeding gen^a'cons for ev^r, that then, and for,
 soe long tyme as the said monthly Sermons shall not be made, or a Preach-
 ing Ministry bee awanting att the said Churches or Chappells aforesaid,
 in forme abovesaid, it is my will and meaning, that my said sixtene De-
 visees and Trustees, and their heires, shall imploy and pay the said
 yearely stipends, or wages, last above respectively men[']oned, or so much
 thereof as shall for that tyme bee proporcionably and ratably due or pay-
 able to the said Preachers, or any of them, by the tennor and true intent
 of this my Will, unto the said Overseer or Master of the said twenty child-
 dren, for and towards their better educac[']on and mainteynance, and y^e
 furnishing of the tenn bedds with necessary stuff and furniture; and I
 will that my said Trustees and Devisees shall pay, imploy, conv[']t, and
 dispose of the yearely some of forty shillings, p[']cell of the said some
 of forty and eight pounds, to the Churchwardens and Ov[']seers for the
 Poore of the parishes of Huddersfield and Mirfield, in y^e said county of
 Yorke, for the tyme being, and their successors for ever, (viz.) to each
 of y^e Churchwardens and Overseers of the said twones last specified,
 twenty shillings, on or before y^e Eves of the Feast of Pentecost, and the
 Nativitie of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, by even porc[']ons, or con-
 trarywise, as the said Eves shall fall by and after my decease, for that
 the same forty shillings may bee by them respectively given and distrib-
 uted in forme aforesaid, to and amongst the poore of the said two respec-
 tive p[']ishes of Huddersfield and Mirfield, upon the said feast daies last
 named, by even porc[']ons: And it is my will, that if the said Churchwar-
 dens and Ov[']seers of the said two p[']ishes of Huddersfield and Mirfield,
 or either of them, doe not distribute the said annuall of forty shillings
 respectively to the said respective poore in forme aforesaid, that then
 and from thenceforth soe much thereof as by the true intent of this my
 Will should belong, or bee distributed to that p[']ish of Huddersfield and
 Mirfield, whose Churchwardens and Overseers shall not soe distribute the
 same as abovesaid, shall utterly cease as to the paym[']t thereof to the
 said Churchwardens or Ov[']seers of those townes, or that towne whose Church-
 wardens or Ov[']seers shall not distribute the same as aforesaid, and be
 thenceforth for ever paid and distributed by my said Trustees or Devisees,
 and their heires, to the poore of the said parish of Halifax, to whom,
 in y^t case, I give and devise the same: And it is my minde, that my said
 Trustees and Devisees, and their heires, shall imploy and dispose of the
 annuall some of forty shillings, p[']cell of the said some of the said
 yearely some of forty and nyne pounds, to and upon the repairing a' amen-
 ding of the high wayes in the banks called Northowram banks, and South
 Owram banks, one leading from Halifax towards Bradford, another from Hal-
 ifax towards Wakefield, and another from Halifax to Southowram aforesaid,
 from tyme to tyme, for ever, and twenty shillings p['] an[']m, another p[']te of
 the said som['] of forty nyne pounds, upon the repaying and amending of
 the highway between Spright Smithy and Southowram banck, and shall also
 pay, imploy and dispose of th['] annuall some of forty shillings, residue
 of y^e said some of forty nyne pounds, on the said Feast dayes of Penti-

cost and St. Martin, or St. Martin and Fenticost, as y^e same shall fall
 after my death, unto the Gov^rno^rs of the possessions, revenues and goods
 of the Free Gran^r Schoole of Quenne Elizabeth wthin the parish of Hal-
 ifax, and their successor^s for ever, for the use of the said schoole, to
 whome I hereby give, devise and bequeath the same. Item, I doe hereby
 give, devise and bequeath to the said M^r and Gov^rno^rs of the same work
 house, for the poore wthin the towne and parish of Halifax, and their
 successor^s for ever, all the residue and remaynder of all y^e rents, is-
 sues, revenues, and profits of all and ev[']ie my said messuages, Mills,
 lands, tent^s, closes, rents, rev[']cons, hereditam^ts and p[']mises, (over and
 above the said yearly allowances, stipends, wages and gifts: And alsoe
 all that messuage, house, and tent, for div[']se yeares last past employed
 in and no^w co[']monly called or known by the name of the work house, and
 all the chamb[']rs, sell[']rs, soll[']rs, tav[']ns, roomes, and easem[']ts, whatsoever
 thereunto belonnginge, theast p[']te of the said croft used for a backe-
 side, for and adjoyninge to the said workhouse; all that lath or barns
 neare adioynsinge to the west p[']te thereof, and no^w in y^e tenure of the
 said Xpo[']fer Robinson. And all that close, com[']only called Hatt[']s
 close, w^{ch} I late purchased of Edward Slater, wth all their and ev[']ie of
 their rights, members and appurten[']cs, in Halifax aforesaid; and all
 rents and yearly profits res[']ved upon all, ev[']ie or any demise, lease,
 or grant heretofore made, of the last specified p[']mises, and ev[']ie, or
 any p[']te thereof: To have and to hold the same p[']mises last menc[']oned
 to the said M^r and Gov^rno^rs of the workhouse for the poore wthin the towne
 and parish of Halifax aforesaid, and to their successor^s for ev['], to
 thuse of the said workhouse, and for settinge and ymployinge the poore
 therein on worke, accordinge to the true intent of his Ma[']ty L[']res Patents
 to them and me granted to y^e p[']pose. And it is my full will and meaninge
 yt my said Trustees and Devisees, and the sev[']all Preachers of the said
 twelve sev[']all Chappells, or Churches, shall twice a yeare viewe the re-
 paires of the said houses, and other p[']mises, whence the annuities, sti-
 pends, gifts, wages and allowances aforesaid are to be raysed, and take
 sp[']iall care that they decay not for want of seasonable timely lookinge
 too and repaireinge, and shall for ev['] lett and demise them to the tent^s
 thereof at such easie rents that the occupants thereof may sufficiently
 repaire and uphold them. And it is my will and minde, trust and confi-
 dence in my said Devisees and Trustees reposed, further is, that after y^e
 death of six of them, thoth[']s surviveinge shall, wthall convenient speed,
 make elecc[']on and nominac[']on of so many other honest and sufficient p[']sons
 of the said p[']ish of Halifax, (whereof the Vicar for the tyme beinge to be
 one, if the former bee then dead,) as may supply the number of fiftiene
 Trustees, and then make a feoffm['] and graunt, or other good conveyance,
 as the case may require, of all the thinges above menc[']oned, devised in
 trust as aforesaid to thuse of themselves, and and of those other elected
 p[']sons, and to those of all their heirs for ever: In trust and confidence
 that they and their heirs shall p[']forme and execute in every behall this
 the last Will of mee the said Nathaniel Waterhous, accordinge to the pur-
 port, true intent and meaninge thereof. And to this confidence and trust
 further in such feoffm['], graunt, or other conveyance to bee exp[']ssed. That
 after the death of six of the said Feoffees, Grauntees, or Trustees there-
 in, that the survive[']s shall make like election and nominac[']on of so many
 such other p[']sons as aforesaid, and make a sufficient feoffm['], graunt, or
 other conveyance, as the case shall require, to the use of themselves and
 those other p[']sons so chosen by them, to the same confidence and trust as
 is abovesaid; so that alwaies, for so long tyme as God shall please, there
 may be a competent number of honest and able p[']sons to sup[']intend, execute
 and p[']forme this my last Will and Testam[']t, and the charitable uses therein

ment'oned, accordinge to my true intent and faithfull desire. Also my will and minde is, that Dorothie, my wife, shall have her rights of and in all my goods, chattels, landes, and ten'ts, accordinge to the lawes of this realm, and the custome of the province where I dwell, save that I doe request my said wife not to clayme or take any thirdes or dower of or in the said messuages, lands and ten'ts, bought of the said Thomas Comerfall and his wife, in regard I have built and given the same to good and charitable uses: And I will that there be a defalkon of a third p'te of each of the said severall annuyties, stipends and wages, duringe the tyme that my said wife shall live, and take her rightes to my landes and te'nts. Item, it is my minde that the said Devisees and Trustees, and their heires, shall take speciall care that none of the wood or trees growinge or beinge upon any p'te of my said landes bee cutt downe, sould or destroyed, but that the same may by all meanes bee p'served till it bee stronge timber, and then bee carefullie made use of for the repairinge and amendinge of all my said houses, landes and ten'ts devised to my said Trustees, and by them bee built as aforesaid, for the pious uses abovesaid. And touchinge my goods and chattels, my will and minde is, that the true and lawfull debts which I owe, the charges of my funerall, and other Church dueties, bee first paid and discharged forth of my whole goods and chattels. Item. I doe give and devise unto the two daughters of my late deceased nephew, Joshua Waterhouse, son of my brother Caleb, deceased, five pounds a peece. Item, I give and bequeath to my cozen, M^{rs}. Susan Farrer, five poundes, to bee bestowed on a peece of plate, whereon these words to bee engraven, viz. "The Legacie of Nathaniel Waterhouse to M^{rs}. Susan Farrar, his niece." Item, I give unto my two god children, children of Samuell Cloughe and Samuell Mitchell, either of them two, twentie shillings a peece. Item, I give to M^r. Hoyle Clarke, who marryed one of the daughters of my brother Caleb, six poundes. Item, I forgive, remise, release, and acquitt unto my couzen John Waterhouse, all such estate, interest, right, title, clayme and demand whatsoever as I may, can, or ought to have, of, in, and to, all or any of his wives messuages, houses, buildinges, landes, ten'ts, hereditaments, and p'misses, by assignement, extent, judgmt, execution, or any otherwise, for which I paid threescore and tenne poundes."

Then follows numerous bequests to friends and distant relatives of no particular interest which we omit. The will continues thus,-

"Item, I give to the said my Feoffees, Trustees, or Devisees (except the said Will'm Horton and M^roffer Saville,) each of them twentie shillings to buy a silver cup, viz. for every one of them, with these wordes engraven on each of them, to witt, "The Legacie of Nathaniel Waterhouse." And I will, that when any of my said Trustees, or any hereafter to bee by them named, dye, his cup, so dyinge, shalbe delivered forthwith, after his death, to him that is chozen in his stead, so that the sixtiene Trustees may for ever have the said cups. Item, I will, that the said John Mitchell shall have one of the first of said twelve dwellings for poore p'sons that falleth for his life n'rall rent free. And to John Waterhouse my nephew, I do forgive, release, and acquitt the some of three hundred poundes, which he oweth mee by bond. And to Caleb Waterhouse my nephew, I doe give twentie poundes. And to Helen, Marie, and Susan Waterhouse, his sisters, I doe give each of them tenne poundes if they be living." Several bequests here omitted. "I give to Isaac and John Waterhouse, sonnes of Isaac Waterhouse, of Halifax aforesaid, and of Ruth his wife, daughter of M^r. Joseph Midgley, late of the same, deceased, fourescore poundes a peece, to be paid to them when they respectively accomplish their severall ages of twenty-one yeares. And I will that the same 160l shall rest in the interim in

the hands of my Executors, payinge therefore yearlye to their respective Tutor^s, Guardians, or Masters, (whose respective releases for the same to mine Executors I will shalbe sufficient) twelve pence the pound towards their educac'on and p'ferm^t to such trades as they shalbe most apt, able, and inclinable unto: And it is my will and mind, that the said severall legacies given to so many of my said Legatees as shal bee in minority at my death, shalbe respectively paid to them as they severally attayne their age of twentie one yeares; and that if any of them dye in the meanstyme, then his, her, or their gift, legacie, or bequest hereby, shalbe forthwith paid to the said Maist^r and Governo^rs of the workhouse for the poore within the towne and p'ish of Halifax, in the said countie of Yorke, for the benefit of the poore therein to be employed, to whom, in that case, I give, devise, and bequeath the same. Item, I give to the said M^r and Governo^rs of the said workhouse the som^e of two hundred poundes, to be bestowed on landes and ten'ts for the benefitt of the said workhouse and poore therein sett on worke, at the good discretion of the said M^r and Governo^rs, to be paid by my wife, and the rest of mine Executors, at such tyme as the M^r and Governo^rs aforesaid shall have p'cured and made readie lands and ten'ts to bee purchased therewith. Item, I give and bequeath unto Zachariah North, of London, Salter, whome I now deale withall, the som^e of foure poundes, to bee bestowed on a cupp, with my name engraven upon it. Item, I will that my said Trustees or Devisees, and their heires, doe, at the charges of Executors, buy a good chest, with three locks thereon, and that they see mine evidences bee safelie putt in it, and kept at the said house, at the Cawsey-head, in the room wherein John Smithson, deceased, did usually lye, and in which I will they shall constantlie sitt, at their said quarterly meetings. Item, I will, that if my cleare goods and chattells, debts and rightes remayninge after my debts pa'id, severally discharged, and wives right deducted, will not extend to satisfy and pay the said severall legacies by this my Will given and devised and bequeathed out of my goods and chattells, by reason of not cove'ing and returninge in of my debts, or otherwise; then I will, that the same legacies shalbe made up out of my first yssues, rents, revenues, and profitts of all my said mesuages, milles, landes, te'nts, hereditam^{ts}, and pr'misses (except the said house called Workhouse, backside, barne, close, and other p'misses specially given to the said M^r and Governo^rs, and houses given for twelve poore p'sons, and twentie children, and their M^r,) in which case it is my minde, that my said Trustees or Devisees, and their heires, shall employ and convert the same rents, issues, and profitts of them p'misses (except last excepted) to the raysinge and makinge up the same legacies; which my said cleare estate will not amount or extend to discharge as aforesaid, and pay the same over to my said Executors, that so much thereof as shall make up the legacies hereby devised to children in nonage, may (after my said legacies given to p'sons of full age at my death discharged) rest in mine Executor^s hands, till such legacies given to such infants, because by this my Will respectively payable without anythings therefore allowinge in the interim to any p'son (save only for the said 160L. given to y^e said Isaac and John Waterhouse as aforesaid.) And if my p'sonall estate in goods and chattells will extend to discharge my said legacies, and any things remayne, I give, devise, and bequeath the same cleare residue and remainder of all my goods, chattells, credits, and debts to my said Trustees and Devisees, and their heires, and the survivor^s and survivor^e of them, and his heires, by them to be bestowed on landes neerly for the use and benefitt of the poore of the p'ish of Halifax aforesaid, for ever, viz^t. the poore of Halifax, Ovenden, Northowram, Southowram, Ripp'holme, Shelf, Skircote, Warley, Midgley, and Sowerby aforesaid, and to and for no other use. Nevertheless I will that the same remainder shall rest in the hands of mine Executors till such landes bee bought and secured to the use abovesaid, my Executors

payinge therefore (and for all other monyes resting in their hands for the poore use) in the interim, after the rate of twelve pence p' pound, for the use of the said poore, and laying in such securite as my said Trustees or Devisees shall reasonably require to pay the same remainder to them, when such landes are purchased and estated as aforesaid. And I doe intreat my said deare wife to dispose of such estate as shall befall her by my death in such manner as I have hereby appointed, devised, and disposed myne estate: And I wish and earnestly beseech my said Trustees or Devisees, and their heires, and those who shall succeed them, and be elected in their place, faithfullie to discharge the great trust I have hereby reposed in them. And I doe humble intreat the Justices of Assize for the countie of Yorke for the time beinge, to succeedinge generations for ever, to compose and determyne by their order whatsoever differences, doubts, ambiguities, and questions shall or may growe, arise, or be made at any time after my death, touching this my will and meaning, or any thynge therein conteyned; and if any course can bee better devised for settling mine estate accordinge to my true intent herein expressed, that their Honours would p'scribe, and my said Trustees, and their heires, p'fect the same, with the rents and profitts of the p'misses, to wch purpose I referre the said doubts and questions, and other thinges to the said Justices. Item, I doe nominate, make, and appoint my said lovinge wife.... this (Dorothy) Waterhouse, George Wood, of Bury, and John Boys and John Brearcliff, of Halifax aforesaid, joynt Executors of this my last Will and Testam^t And I doe give to Will'm Horton, my nephew, twentie five poundes; to the said George Wood tenne poundes; and to the said John Boys eight poundes; and to the said John Brearcliff iii' the same to be in full satisfaction of what they may claime in my p'sonall estate, by reason of their Executorshipp; in regard I have already disposed my goods and chattells, and the remainder thereof, after debts and legacies paid as aforesaid, for the good of the poore: And my minde is, that the said George Wood shall have allowed for his paines, for every time he shall come to Halifax about the execution of this my Will, thirtie shillings: And I doe humble intreat y^e right worll Sir John Savile, Knight; John Farrer Esq^r; Anthonie Foxcroft, Gent. Thomas Lister, of Shibden-hall, and Thomas Byns, and Jeremie Bentley, of Halifax, to be Sup'visors of this my last Will, and aydinge to mine Executors and Trustees in the due execution of the same. And I doe give the said John Savile four poundes, and to the said Thomas Lister, and Thomas Byns, either of them, XX^s. and to Jeremie Bentley, X^s. to Isaac Waterhouse, son of Michael Waterhouse, iiii'. In testimonie whereof unto this my p'sent last Will and Testam^t, I the said Nathaniel Waterhouse, have sett mine hand and sealle the day and years abovesaid. And I do that this my last Will doth contayne eleaven sheetes of pap: and is the last Will and Testam^t of mee the said Nathaniel Waterhouse, who have subscribed my name and set my sealle to every of the said sheetes, and published and declared the same to bee my last Will and Testam^t, in y^e p'nce of those whose names bee hereunto subscribed, beinge specially called and requested to bee witnesses hereof, by y^e said Nathaniell Waterhouse. And I do that the four last sheets hereof are writton by a severall hand, by my direcc'on, and subscribed by severall of other witnesses; but hereby declared to bee my last Will, all of them together, viz. these XI sheetes wch are filed or affixed one to another, by me sealed and subscribed. And it is my will and mind, that if any of the legatories in this my Will shall not be contented with my gift, but shall trouble or sue my said Executors, then y^e said p'son or p'sons that shall see doe, shall loose all benefitt by my Will."

Nathaniel
O
Waterhouse.

The will was acknowledged as follows,-

"Julij 17^{mo}, Anno D'ni 1645.

probat. suit hoc Testament, per Dorotheam relictam testatoris,

Georgiu' Eood et Joh'em Boys, Testes etiam Jurat. dictis die et anno coram me Joh'ne Thomson, Com'issione mihi direct.

29^o Julij, 1645, cora' Guil. Smith Clico' sub.^r &c

Jacobus Sagar test. inravit, &c. de veretate recognico' instotius h'um. testi per testatorem pred.

Notand. quod Thomas Parkinson.

Gener. jurat testes ad septem pri-
mas sehedas solumodo juravit."

Nathaniel Waterhouse died June 3, 1645, and was buried in the North Chapel of Halifax Church, and the following words were once legible on his gravestone.

"The Church and Poor I left my Heirs,
My Friends to order my Affairs;
My Soul I sent before to try
What is provided in Eternity;
My earthly part lies here, you see,
Hoping to rise, that's best for me."

Dorothy Waterhouse, widow of Nathaniel, died May 20, 1652, and was buried in the same grave with her husband.

On the Almshouse is the following inscription,- "These twelve dwellings, left by Mr. Waterhouse for twelve aged persons, were rebuilt by the contributions of well-disposed people, in the year 1724."

In the Blue-coat Hospital was this inscription,- "Hospitium Hri Nath. Waterhouse, viri supra exemplum pli, qui ecclesiae et panperibus omnia legavit, 1678." (who, after the example of a pious man, bequeathed all he had to the church and the poor.)

the
Mr. Watson says that all went well with property until about 1700 when complaints were made that the Trustees were not acting according to the provisions of the will, even misappropriation of the funds being charged. Much litigation ensued and it was some fifty years before the charity was finally re-established upon its true footing.

4 5

JOHN¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Whitchurch and Hardwick, Buckingham Co., married Anne, daughter of Henry Birkenhead, of Luxley in County of Cheshire. To her was bequeathed the Manor house of Whitchurch. John Waterhouse died Feb. 1583.

CHILDREN:-

54. 1. Thomas Waterhouse.

11. John Waterhouse, married Mary, daughter of Agmondesham Muschamp, of Rowbarnes, Surrey. His brother Thomas gave him his best armor which had been given to Thomas by his sister Bassett. John died Dec. 14, 1632.

111. Henry Waterhouse, mentioned in his father's will.

1V. Edward Waterhouse, of Hemel Hemsted, Gent. Will proved Sept. 20, 1654.

V. Anne Waterhouse, bapt. Apr. 30, 1561, married Thomas Spicer, of Marston Pill, Bedford County, and was living 1649.

VI. Charles Waterhouse, bapt. at Burkhamssted, Aug. 17, 1563 and was buried there July 25, 1570.

VII. Clifford Waterhouse, buried June 12, 1579.

VIII. John Waterhouse, buried Sept. 9, 1570.

IX. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married John Bassett, of Stedborough, Co.

of Norfolk.

X. Grace Waterhouse, bapt. Nov.13,1571, married 1604, Thomas Tuke,
Gent., of Essex.

XI. Catherine Waterhouse, married Henry Huggeford, 1582.

XII. Susan Waterhouse.

46

THOMAS¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) born 1532, married 1566, Mary, daughter of John Kirby, of Nottingham County. Thomas was of Berkhamsted and died Sept.7,1600, aged 68. His wife died Dec.4,1598.

On the North wall of the Church of St. Peter's, at Berkhamsted, is a monument, with these arms and this inscription,-

Arms: "Waterhouse; impaling Argent, two bars Gules."

"Here under lyeth the body of Thomas Waterhouse, gent. deceased, and Marie his wife, who lived together in marriage 32 years, and had issue between them, six sons and five daughters. He died the 7th day of September, anno 1600, in the 68th yeare of his age, and she died the 4th day of December, anno 1598, in the 54th yeare of her age, both of them in the love and favour of God and Man."

The names of only seven children appear.

CHILDREN:-

65. 1. Edward Waterhouse.

11. Thomas Waterhouse, bapt. Oct.28,1590. He was a fishmonger, of London and married Frances, daughter of William Powell, of Taunton. Had three children, viz., Thomas, Susanna and Sarah.

57. 111. Francis Waterhouse.

IV. Elizabeth Waterhouse, bapt. Aug. 10, 1566, died Sept. 1587.

V. Anne Waterhouse, buried at Grunford, Magna, Middlesex County.

VI. Margaret Waterhouse, of London. Will proved Sept. 5, 1640.

VII. Mary Waterhouse, married Ralph Turner, of Essex.

47

SIR EDWARD¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) born in Helmstedbury, Yorkshire, 1535, married first, Elizabeth, daughter of George Villiers. She was divorced by her own consent, being very young at the time of her marriage. "The divorce was confirmed Mar. 29, 1578, by a Royal Commission appointed to consider the Appeal made against it." He married second, Margaret, daughter of Thomas Spillman, of Kent. She died July 6, 1587. On the East wall of St. Peters Church at Berkhemsted, is a marble monument, representing a lady kneeling in the attitude of prayer, with these arms and inscriptions: Arms, - "Waterhouse; impaling Sable, two bars Argent, between two mullets in chief Or, in base a besant; Spillman."

"Blessed are they who die in the Lord."

"Here under lieth interred the bodie of the worthie Ladie Dame Margaret Waterhouse, deceased, daughter of Thomas Spillman of Chart, in the Countie of Kent, Esq. in memorie of whose virtues and his dearest love, Sir Edward Waterhouse, knt. her husband, hath caused this monument to be erected. Shee died the 6th day of July, 1587, aetatis suae 38, and hee ye 13th day of November, aetatis suae 55, and lyeth buried with his last wife, Dame Deborah at the Mannor of Wordechurch in Kent."

Sir Edward married third, Deborah, relict of Martin Harlackendon, and daughter of Thomas Whitenhall, Esq. Thomas Fuller, in his "His-

tory of the Worthies of England," give the following account of Sir Edward.--

"Sir Edward Waterhouse, Knight, was born at Helmstedbury in this county of an ancient and worshipful family, deriving their descent lineally from Sir Gilbert Waterhouse, of Kryton, in Low Lindsay, in the county of Lincoln in the time of King Henry the Third. As for our Sir Edward, his parents were John Waterhouse Esquire, a man of much fidelity and sagesness; auditor many years to King Henry the Eighth, of whom he obtained (after a great entertainment for him in his house) the grant of a weekly market for the town of Helmsted; and Margaret Turner of the ancient house of Blunt's Hall in Suffolk and Cannons in Hertsfordshire. The king, at his departure, honoured the children of the said John Waterhouse, being brought before him, with his praise and encouragement; gave a Benjamin's portion of dignation to this Edward, foretelling by his royal augury, 'That he would be the crown of them all, and a man of great honour and wisdom fit for the service of princes.' It pleased God afterwards to second the word of the king, so that the sprouts of his hopeful youth only pointed at the growth and greatness of his honourable age; for, being but twelve years old, he went to Oxford, where for some years he glistened in the oratoric and poetic sphere, until he addicted himself to conversation, and observance of state affairs, wherein his great proficiency commanded him to the favour of three principal patrons.

One was Walter Devereux, earl of Essex, who made him his bosom friend; and the said earl, lying on his death-bed, took his leave of him with many kisses. 'O my Ned.' said he, 'farewell: thou art the faithfullest and friendliest gentleman that I ever knew.' In testimony of his true affection to the dead father in his living son, this gentleman is thought to have penned that most judicious and elegant epistle (recorded in Holinshed's History pp. 1266,) and presented it to the young earl, conjuring

him, by the cogent arguments of example and rule, to patrifate.

His other patron was Sir Henry Sidney (so often lord deputy of Ireland), whereby he became incorporated into the familiarity of his son Sir Philip Sidney; between whom and Sir Edward there was so great friendliness, that they were never better pleased than when in one another's companies, or when they corresponded with eachother. And we find after the death of that worthy knight, that he was a close concerned mourner at his obsequies, as appeareth at large in the printed representation of his funeral solemnity.

His third patron was Sir John Perot, deputy also of Ireland, who so valued his counsel, that in State affairs he would do nothing without him. So great was his employment betwixt state and state, that he crossed the seas thirty-seven times, until deservedly at last he came into a port of honour, wherein he sundry years anchored, and found safe harbour; for he received the honour of knighthood, was sworn of her majesty's privy council for Ireland, and chancellor of the Exchequer therein. Now his graceful soul, coursing about how to answer the queen's favour, laid itself wholly out in her service, whersin two of his actions are most remarkable. First, he was highly instrumental in modelling the kingdom of Ireland into shires as they now are; shewing himself so great a lover of the polity under which he was born, that he advanced the compliance therewith (as commendable and necessary) in the dominions annexed thereunto. His second service was, when many in that kingdom shrouded themselves from the laws, under the target of power, making force their tutelary saint, he set himself vigorously to suppress them. And when many of the privy council, terrefied with the greatness of the earl of Desmond, durst not subscribe the instrument whersin he was proclaimed traitor, Sir Edward, among some others, boldly signed the same (disavowing his and all treasons against his prince and country); and the council did the like, commanding the publication thereof.

As to his private sphere, God blessed him, being but a third brother, above his other brethren. Now though he had three wives and though he had so strong a brain and body, yet he lived and died childless, inter-commoning therein with many Worthies, who are, according to Aelius Spantianus either emprolific or have children in gonitorum vituperium et famarum laesuram.

God thus denying him the pleasure of posterity, he craved leave of the queen to retire himself, and fixed the residue of his life at Woodchurch in Kent, living there in great honour and repute as one who had no design to be popular and not prudent: rich and not honest, great and not good. He died in the fifty-sixth year of his age the 13th of October 1591, and is buried at Woodchurch under a table marble monument, erected to his memory by his sorrowful lady surviving him." Mr. Fuller concludes his sketch with the following note,-

"Reader, I doubt not but thou art sensible of the alteration and improvment of my language in this character; owing both to my intilligence and expressions unto Edward Waterhouse, now of Eton College, esquire, who to revive the memory of his namesake and great uncle, furnished me with these instructions."

It will be noticed that there is a discrepancy between his age and date of death as given in the above sketch and as given in the inscription on the monument to his wife Margaret.

Sir Edward Waterhouse bore for his arms-- "Or, a pile engrailed sable." This is inscribed on his tomb quartered with five other coats, and impaling a bend ermine, quartered with eight other coats.

48

CHARLES¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹⁰ John,⁹, Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵

William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) married Ursula Andrews, cousin of Sir Eusebius Andrews, of County of Northampton, Knight. Charles lived in Baltra, Ireland.

CHILDREN:-

1. Edward Waterhouse, mentioned in the will of Sir Edward Waterhouse as sufficiently provided for by a lease from Lord Huntingdon of the Park, Leicester, and Stocking near Leicester.

II. Christopher Waterhouse.

III. John Waterhouse.

IV. Frances Waterhouse, married James Field Esq., of Waterford.

58. V. Charles Waterhouse.

49

VINCENT¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (Thomas,¹⁰ John,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Braithwell, heir, appeared at the Visitation 1612, married Jane, daughter of Edmund Thorold, of Haugh, Lincoln Co., who survived him and married George French. Vincent was buried in London in 1614.

CHILDREN:-

59. 1. Thomas Waterhouse.

II. Robert Waterhouse.

III. Edward Waterhouse.

IV. Philip Waterhouse.

V. Vincent Waterhouse.

VI. David Waterhouse, died in infancy.

VII. Edmund Waterhouse; died in infancy.

VIII. Mary Waterhouse, died in infancy.

IX. Elizabeth Waterhouse.

50

MAXIMILIAN¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (Robert,¹⁰ George,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Wallingwells, Esq. heir, married Anne, daughter of Sheffield Saville Esq. of Leeds. She was his heir, and was buried at Carlton, Oct. 1, 1632. Maximilian was buried at Carlton, April, 1633.

CHILDREN:-

1. Elizabeth or Martha Waterhouse, married at Carlton, Apr. 17, 1631, William, afterwards Sir William Belt, recorder of York.
11. Margaret Waterhouse, co-heir, married at Carlton, June 2, 1631, William Stockham of Wallingwells and East Retford.

51

ANTHONY¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of the Woodhouse, bapt. July 17, 1586, married Elizabeth, daughter of Daniel Foxcroft, of Halifax. Anthony died in Ireland, Mar. 2, 1624.

CHILDREN:-

1. Isaac Waterhouse, died young.
11. Anthony Waterhouse, died young.
111. Mary Waterhouse, married Jonathan Wade of King Cross, near Halifax, Gent.
- IV. Grace Waterhouse, married William Lister, of Manningham, Gent.
- V. Sarah Waterhouse, married Henry Hayhurst, or Hayhirst, of Leeds M.D.
- VI. Susan Waterhouse, died unmarried.

VII. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married Richard Roades, of Knaresboro, Gent.

The three married sisters who were co-heirs, sold Woodhouse, Birkhouse, and all their father's lands in Skircote, Norland, and Newcastle-on-Tyne in 1639 to Charles Greenwood.

5 2

JOHN¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Wellhead, bapt. Jan. 1, 1602, or perhaps July 7, 1594, married Mary Gawkroger. He was left an estate at Barnsley in his father's will. He was an Executor to his brother Isaac's will. He was buried Oct. 2, 1649, and she afterwards married Thomas Oldfield

CHILDREN:-

- I. Anthony Waterhouse, bapt. Dec. 4, 1623. Administration granted to Anne, his wife, Jan. 22, 1672.
- II. Mary Waterhouse, bapt. Oct. 15, 1626, buried July 4, 1633.
- III. John Waterhouse, bapt. Oct. 25, 1631.
- IV. Isaac Waterhouse, bapt. July 19, 1636.

5 3

ISAAC¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Washer lane, in Skircote, baptized 1604, married May 7, 1624, Ruth, daughter of Rev. Joshua Midgley, of Halifax. Isaac was a Yeoman and had a share in the tithes of Barnsley. He was buried Dec. 30, 1630, presumably in the church or church-yard at Halifax, as directed in his will. His wife was buried May 30, 1627.

CHILDREN:- (next sheet.)

1. John Waterhouse, of Barnsley, bapt. May 8, 1625, married Dec. 22, 1652, Bridget Bateson, of Beverly. His will was proved July 26, 1675.
11. Isaac Waterhouse, of Barnsley, bapt. Apr. 15, 1627, married Janet or Jennett ----- . He was a mercer. In his will which was proved Oct. 30, 1672, he gives one half of the Rectory of Barnsley to his wife for life and then to go to his brother John.

Children,-

1. John Waterhouse, bapt. Nov. 9, 1651, died young.

5 4

MICHAEL¹¹ WATERHOUSE, (Caleb,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) baptized June 7, 1584, buried Apr. 25, 1641.

CHILDREN:-

- I. Isaac Waterhouse, bapt. Sept. 16, 1610.
- II. John Waterhouse, bapt. June 24, 1616.
- III. Caleb Waterhouse, bapt. Oct. 22, 1626.
- IV. Joshua Waterhouse, bapt. Apr. 27, 1628.
- V. Helen Mary Waterhouse.
- VI. Susan Waterhouse.

5 5

THOMAS¹² WATERHOUSE, (John,¹¹ John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) heir, baptized at Berk-hampsted, June 5, 1562, married Mary, daughter and co-heir of Valentine

Pigot. Thomas died Aug.10,1600.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Waterhouse, died young.
- II. Anne Waterhouse, married Philip Watson and died at Yelling, Huntingdon County, June 5,1629, She had a son Philip who inherited the Waterhouse estate at Whitchurch.
- III. John Waterhouse, born Oct.1,1591, married Elizabeth Nutting, of Middlesex County, who survived him. He died Sept.24,1621, without children.

5 6

EDWARD¹² WATERHOUSE, (Thomas,¹¹ John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) married Elizabeth, daughter of Sir William Lane, of Horton, Northampton County.

CHILDREN:-

- I. Mary Waterhouse, bapt. July 16,1598.
- II. Thomas Waterhouse, bapt. Mar.11,1600.
- III. William Waterhouse, bapt. Aug.29,1601, buried Dec.3,1601.
- IV. Heneage Waterhouse, of St. Alphage, Cripplegate, married Elizabeth -----.
- V. Philip Waterhouse.
- VI. Judith Waterhouse.

5 7

FRANCIS¹² WATERHOUSE, (Thomas,¹¹ John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of London, Gent. 1634,

married Bridgett, daughter of Morgan Powell, of Taunton. He was a fish-monger in London.

CHILDREN:-

62. 1. Edward Waterhouse.
 11. Mary Waterhouse, married ----- Johnson.

58

CHARLES¹² WATERHOUSE, (Charles,¹¹ John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) Esq., of Castle Waterhouse, Fermanagh County, married Etheldreda, daughter of George Butler, of Penny-Drayton and Stratford, Bedford County. She survived him and married Michael Hammond. Charles died while at prayers in the Church of Inniskillen.

CHILDREN:-

63. 1. Charles Waterhouse.
 11. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married John Madden of Enfield, Middlesex County, who died Aug. 17, 1661, aged 63 years. She became co-heir, died Feb. 9, 1671, and was buried in St. Micheans, Dublin.
 1111. Anne Waterhouse, married ----- Birch, Rector of Craven, and died without issue.
 1V. Sarah Waterhouse, married Edward Homer, Gent., of Belturbet.

59

THOMAS¹² WATERHOUSE, (Vincent,¹¹ Thomas,¹⁰ John,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Braithwell, Gent., heir, married 1620, Mary, daughter of George French, of Stainton, by Jane his first wife, who was the daughter of Hugh Bosville. Thomas was born

in 1660 and died in 1667.

CHILDREN:-

64. 1. Thomas Waterhouse, bapt. July 7, 1622.
 11. George Waterhouse, bapt. 1624, died 1695.
 111. Vincent Waterhouse.
 1V. Luke Waterhouse.
 V. John Waterhouse.
 VI. Jane Waterhouse.
 VII. Isabel Waterhouse.
 VIII. Frances Waterhouse.
 1X. Dorothy Waterhouse.
 X. Jane Waterhouse.
 XI. Mary Waterhouse.

60

JOHN¹² WATERHOUSE, (John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) baptized Oct. 25, 1631, married Apr. 20, 1656, Priscilla, daughter of Michael Chadwick, of Norland. She was born in 1635.

CHILDREN:-

1. Nathaniel Waterhouse, bapt. May 17, 1657.
 11. Isaac Waterhouse, bapt. June 26, 1659, of St. Batholomews, by the Exchange, administration granted Feb. 14, 1701, for Elizabeth his relict, and John his son, a minor, to Samuel Waterhouse.
 111. John Waterhouse, bapt. Sept. 2, 1661.
 65. 1V. Samuel Waterhouse, bapt. Apr. 12, 1663.
 V. Anthony Waterhouse, bapt. Aug. 7, 1664.

61

ISAAC¹² WATERHOUSE, (John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰, Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of King's Cross, near Halifax, baptized July 19, 1636, married Oct. 3, 1665, Grace, daughter of James Foxcroft of Halifax. Isaac died May 19, 1691, and his widow died June 26, 1691.

CHILDREN:-

1. Isaac Waterhouse, bapt. May 9, 1669, died without issue.
66. 11. John Waterhouse, bapt. May 2, 1671.
111. Samuel Waterhouse, bapt. June 1, 1673, buried Apr. 12, 1681, in North Chapel, Halifax, with arms of Waterhouse on his tomb.
- 1V. Mary Waterhouse, bapt. Mar. 4, 1665, married Jonathan Glover.
- V. Sarah Waterhouse, bapt. Oct. 7, 1667, married Joseph Holroyde, or Holeroid.

62

EDWARD¹³ WATERHOUSE, (Francis,¹² Thomas,¹¹ John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) L.L.D., in Holy Orders; born 1619, married first, Elizabeth, daughter of Richard Bateman, of Hartington, Derby County., and second, Mary, daughter and heir of Robert Smith, alias Carrington.

Edward was the author of several literary and antiquarian works. He died at Mile-End May 30, 1670, aged 51.

CHILDREN:-

1. Hugh Waterhouse.
11. Elizabeth Waterhouse, a minor in 1670.

111. Bridget Waterhouse, a minor in 1670.

63

CHARLES¹³ WATERHOUSE, (Charles,¹² Charles,¹¹ John,¹⁰ John,⁹ Francis,⁸ James,⁷ John,⁶ Thomas,⁵ William,⁴ James,³ Roger,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Castle Waterhouse, married Elizabeth, daughter of Richard Cope, of Blittog, Monaghan County

CHILDREN:-

- I. Charles Waterhouse, died without issue.
- II. Cope Waterhouse, died without issue.
- III. Richard Waterhouse, died without issue.
- IV. Edward Waterhouse, died without issue.
- V. Anne Waterhouse, married Patrick Harrison.

64

THOMAS¹³ WATERHOUSE, (Thomas,¹² Vincent,¹¹ Thomas,¹⁰ John,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Braithwell, Gent., his father's heir, baptized at Stainton, July 7, 1622, married Elizabeth ----- He was buried at Braithwell, April 6, 1704.

CHILDREN:-

67. I. Thomas Waterhouse.
- II. Elizabeth Waterhouse, bapt. 1659.
- III. Ann Waterhouse, bapt. 1662.
- IV. John Waterhouse, died in infancy.
- V. Anthony Waterhouse, died in infancy.
- VI. Francis Waterhouse, died in infancy.

65

SAMUEL¹³ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹² John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of the Lower Range of Ranns, in Northowram, baptized Apr.12,1663, married May, 6,1694, Mercy, daughter of Cuthbert Brookebank, of Halifax. She was born in 1670. Samuel was buried May,1,1702 and his widow died Feb.4,1744, aged 74.

CHILDREN:-

1. Sarah Waterhouse, born Oct.2,1695, married Elkanah Haddock, of London.
11. Samuel Waterhouse, born Oct.29,1696, buried Jan.14,1756, unmarried.
68. 111. John Waterhouse.

66

JOHN¹³ WATERHOUSE, (Isaac,¹² John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Skircote, baptized May 2,1671, married Ellen Spencer, daughter of ----- Spencer, of Daore Hall in Craven. John died Feb.17,1732, aged 63. His widow died Aug.11,1754, aged 76.

CHILDREN:-

1. Mary Waterhouse, bapt. June 14,1699, married William Greenup, of Halifax, and was buried Mar.24,1780, aged 81.
11. Sarah Waterhouse, bapt. Sept.24,1701, died Sept.17,1708.
111. Helen Waterhouse, bapt. May 10,1704, married John Waterhouse.
69. 1V. Isaac Waterhouse, bapt. Apr.22,1708.
- V. Sarah Waterhouse, died young.

- VI. Sarah Waterhouse, bapt. Sept.17,1708, married John Whitehead and died June 5,1744.
- VII. Anne Waterhouse, bapt. Mar.25,1713, died unmarried.
- VIII. Susanna Waterhouse, bapt. Feb.8,1715, died July 13,1738, unmarried.
- IX. John Waterhouse, bapt. Nov.19,1718, was buried Sept.5,1764.
- X. Elizabeth Waterhouse, born 1706, died May 11,1719.
- XI. Dorothy Waterhouse, bapt. Dec.28,1722, married Jonathan Poppleton, of London, and had a son John who died young.

67

THOMAS¹⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Thomas,¹³ Thomas,¹² Vincent,¹¹ Thomas,¹⁰ John,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Braithwell, Gent., heir, baptized 1653, married Aug.9,1677, Mary, daughter of Thomas Bosville, M.A., Vicar of Braithwell. She was baptized in 1647. Thomas Waterhouse was buried Jan.14,1709.

CHILDREN:-

70. I. Philip Waterhouse, bapt. Oct.12,1682.
- II. Robert Waterhouse, bapt. 1684, died before his father.
- III. Mary Waterhouse, married William Stables, of Hemworth.
- IV. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married ----- Nichols, of Kent.
- V. Alice Waterhouse, married ----- Barker.
- VI. Jane Waterhouse, married Timothy Hawksworth, of Tickhill Priars, Gent.
- VII. Anne Waterhouse, died young.

68

JOHN¹⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Samuel¹³ John,¹² John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Lower Range, or Ranns, Halifax, born Oct. 5, 1698, married Helen Waterhouse, baptized May 10, 1704. He died Apr. 4, 1759, and his widow died Nov. 17, 1792.

Referring to this John the History of Halifax, says, - "On the north side of the Church, where the deceased particularly desired to be buried, is a tomb, on which is wrote: 'Here lieth the body of Mr. JOHN WATERHOUSE, of Lower Ranns, in Northowram, who died April 4th., 1759, aged 60.' "On the west end of the tomb:

O Christian Reader! often think

Christ will appear,

How shall I then in Judgment stand!"

CHILDREN:-

71. 1. Samuel Waterhouse, born Dec. 8, 1727.

72. 11. John Waterhouse, born July 1, 1736.

69

ISAAC¹⁴ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹³ Isaac,¹² John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Skircot, baptized Apr. 22, 1708, married Elizabeth Walton. He died July 10, 1781.

CHILDREN:-

1. Samuel Waterhouse, of Washer Lane, Sapling Grove, Skircot, bapt.

Jan. 18, 1746, married Rachel, daughter of James Walton,

of Halifax, She was born in 1746. Samuel died June

20,1802, aged 55, and his widow died Feb.17,1807,
aged 61.

11. Ellen Waterhouse, bapt. May 8,1755, married Thomas Preston, of
Halifax. She had a son Samuel Waterhouse Preston who
became heir to Samuel Waterhouse and others.

70

PHILIP¹⁵ WATERHOUSE, (Thomas,¹⁴ Thomas,¹³ Thomas,¹² Vincent,¹¹ Thomas,¹⁰
John,⁹ Robert,⁸ John,⁷ Richard,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,²
Sir Gilbert,¹) of Braithwell, Gent., heir, baptized Oct.12,1682, married
Sarah ----- He was buried at Braithwell Aug.7,1723 and his widow at the
same place in 1762.

CHILDREN:-

1. Thomas Waterhouse, bapt. July 1713, buried the same year.
11. Mary Waterhouse, bapt. 1712, married Ralph Philips, of Doncas-
ter, Gent., who was living in 1739.
111. Sarah Waterhouse, bapt. Mar.12,1717, married Theosebius James
Buckley Wilsford, of Doncaster, surgeon.

71

SAMUEL¹⁵ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹⁴ Samuel,¹³ John,¹² John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹
John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹)
of Lower Hamns, J.P. for West Riding, born Dec.8,1727, married Anne, daugh-
ter of William Alexander, of Halifax. She was born in 1744. Samuel died
Mar.4,1801, and his wife died Dec.13,1800, aged 66.

CHILDREN:- (See next sheet.)

1. Ellen Waterhouse, born 1782, married Edward Alexander, M.D.
of Danet's Hall, near Leicester. She died in 1826, leaving no children.
11. Elizabeth Waterhouse, born 1766, married 1797, John Kershaw of
Halifax, and had a daughter, Mary Joanna.
111. Mary Waterhouse, married James Mellor, of Millan, near Coventry,

72

JOHN¹⁶ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹⁴ Samuel,¹³ John,¹² John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹
John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹)
of Wellhead, Halifax, which he built, was born July 1, 1736, and married
Elizabeth, daughter and co-heiress of Charles Beatty, of Louth, Lincoln
County. John died June 14, 1801, and his widow died Nov. 2, 1820.

CHILDREN:-

73. 1. John Waterhouse, born Dec. 1, 1773.
11. Samuel Waterhouse, of Old Wellhead.
111. Frances Waterhouse.
- 1V. Anne Waterhouse, married Oct. 10, 1797, Edward Protheroe, M.P.
for Bristol. She had a son Edward Protheroe Jr. Esq. M.
P. for Evesham in 1826 and for Bristol in 1831.
- V. Harriet Waterhouse, married May 18, 1808, Rev. Francis Hayshe of
Clisthyden, Devonshire County.

73

JOHN¹⁶ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹⁵ John,¹⁴ Samuel,¹³ John,¹² John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰
Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,²
Sir Gilbert,¹) of Wellhead, Halifax, J.P. for West Riding, was born Dec.

1,1773, married Oct.17, 1805, Grace Elizabeth, daughter of Jonathan Rawson, of Stonyroyd, Halifax, and died Jan.21,1847.

CHILDREN:-

- I. John Waterhouse, of Wellhead, F.R.S., R.A.S., R.G.S., J.P. for West Riding and D.L., born Aug.3,1806.
74. II. Samuel Waterhouse, born Oct.16,1815.
- III. Ellen Frances Waterhouse, married Feb.1830, the venerable Charles Musgrave, Arch-deacon of Craven, and Vicar of Halifax. She was his second wife.
- IV. Anne Elizabeth Waterhouse, married first, Oct.17,1833, Jonathan Lea Edwards, oldest son of Henry Lea Edwards Esq. He died Dec.27,1835, and she married second, Joseph Hegan, of Liverpool.
- V. Catherine Waterhouse, married Nov.9,1836, Charles Edwards, second son of Henry Lea Edwards Esq. She died Sept.17,1842 and her husband died Sept.19,1842. They had no children.
- VI. Elizabeth Waterhouse, married June 3,1841, Rev. Benjamin Bayfield, incumbent of Ripponden, near Halifax.
- VII. Sophia Waterhouse, died Jan.25,1814.

74

SAMUEL¹⁷ WATERHOUSE, (John,¹⁶ John,¹⁵ John,¹⁴ Samuel,¹³ John,¹² John,¹¹ Isaac,¹⁰ Michael,⁹ John,⁸ John,⁷ Robert,⁶ Richard,⁵ John,⁴ Richard,³ Gilbert,² Sir Gilbert,¹) of Hope Hall, Major 2nd West York Yeomanry,,M.P. for Pontefract, J.P. and D.L., was born Oct.16,1815, married Aug.25,1840,

Charlotte Lydia, daughter of Henry Lees Edwards Esq. of Pyonest, Halifax.

CHILDREN:-

1. Catharine Grace Waterhouse, only child, married Captain Henry Doherty. He was allowed, by act of Parliament, to take the Waterhouse arms, viz.-

Arms,- Or, a pile, engrailed, sa.

Crest,- The dexter leg and wing of an eagle, couped and displayed, sa.

Motto,- Veritas, vincit omnia. (Truth conquers all things.)

RICHARD WATERHOUSE first appears in this country, so far as we have been able to discover, in Boston, Mass., as shown by the following records of Suffolk County.-

" This Bill bindeth mee Robert Worley Merchant my heirs Executors or Administrators to pay or cause to be payd vnto Richard Waterhouse of Boston in New England the full & Just sum of Nine grosse hundreds of good Marchantable sugar to be payd vnto the Said Richard Waterhouse his Executors Administrators or Assignes by these presents as Att^{nes} my hand this twentieth Day of Agust in the yeare 1669.
as Witnes I W^y Marke of

Robert Worley.

Thomas Taggot.

Jan. 16, 1671.

" So it known unto all men by these presents that I, Samuel Snow, of Boston, Shoemaker, do owe and am indebted unto Richard Waterhouse of Boston Tanner, the sum of 2 pound 15 of Currant Money of New England to be payd to the Said Richard Waterhouse his Executors Administrators or assignes at or upon the sixth Day of March next ensuing the Date hereof: to which payment well & truly to be made I bind myself my heirs Executors & Administrators to the Said Richard Waterhouse his Executors & assignes in the penalty of five pounds ten shillings of Like money in witness whereof I have set to my hand the Day & year above written."

Witness

Samuell Snow.

John Moore.

Attest Isaac Addington

Clerk.

John Moore appeared this 6th Aug. 1722 and produced the original bill whereon was an assignment from R. Waterhouse. He did acknowledge he had rec'd the full thereof & was contented & paid.

As stated in the introduction, nothing has been found concerning the time or the circumstances under which Richard Waterhouse came to this country, or anything to show his relationship, if any, to others of the name then living here. He evidently removed to Portsmouth,

N.H., where he married Mrs. Sarah Lloyd, June 29, 1672. She was the widow of Allen Lloyd, and the daughter of Dr. Reginald or Renald Fernald and Joanna (Warburton) Fernald, and was born in Portsmouth in 1636.

Dr. Renald Fernald was the son of Sir William and Elizabeth (Amand) Fernald. He is said to have been a surgeon in the English Navy, which position he resigned, and was sent to this country by Captain John Mason in 1631, as surgeon for his Piscataqua plantation. His name appears in a list of "The Names of Stewards and Servants sent by John Mason Esq. into this Province of New Hampshire," as Reginald Fernald, Chirurgeon, and it is stated that he came over in the "Warwick". A book entitled "Old Eliot," (Maine) speaks of him as follows,-- "Without doubt the earliest physician in our Piscataqua plantation was Reginald Fernald, the doctor who came with Mason, and who practised on both sides of the river. His home was at Strawberry Bank; yet he owned land in Kittery, and ministered to the sick among the scattered settlers here. He died in 1656 at Pierces Island, and was buried at the Point of Graves in Portsmouth. His son Thomas had a perpetual lease of the Islands now occupied by the Navy Yard." This may be what Brewster refers to in his "Rambles about Portsmouth" where he tells us that when the United States bought the islands in 1806, it was found, in looking up the title, that the property had been originally entailed by the Fernalds, and was to descend to the oldest male heir from generation to generation "so long as the grass grows and the waters run."

Dr. Fernald was evidently a man of affairs, as well as a surgeon, for he was for years Town Clerk, one of the Selectmen, and also held various other offices in Portsmouth. He was one of the signers of the petition to the General Court at Boston, dated May 1653, praying, among other things, that the name of the plantation might be changed to Portsmouth, which prayer was granted. The petition closed as follows,--

"And whereas the name of this plantation att present being Strabery Banke accidentally soe called by reason of a banke where strawberries were found in this place, now we humbly desire to have it called Portsmouth, being a name most suitable for this place, being at the river's mouth, and good as any in this land." The name "Strawberry Bank," however, clung to that portion of the town along the river bank for many years afterwards.

Richard Waterhouse married second Dec.3,1701, Mary Swett of Hampton Falls, daughter of Joseph and Hannah (-----) Swett. Joseph Swett was a prominent man in Hampton Falls,(N.H.) being one of the Selectmen for years. Mary Swett's grandfather was Captain Benjamin Swett who settled in Hampton, N.H., before 1664. He was a celebrated Indian warrior and was killed by Indians at Black Point, Scarborough, Me.

It is not known where Mr. Waterhouse first resided in Portsmouth, but it is probable that he settled on what was then known as Doctors Island, situated just off the mainland about opposite where the Liberty Pole now stands, at the time of his marriage. In any event he must have gone there soon after, for the records of the town show that on the 3rd. of June, 1678, the selectmen passed the following vote, i.e. "In pursuance of an additional law of the General Court, made on the 23rd of May, 1677, touching the prevention of the profanation of the Lord's Day, enjoinning the selectmen to appoynt Tythingmen to inspect ten or twelve of their neighbors' families, the selectmen do nominate and appoynt the persons here undernamed to perform that service:" There were fifteen persons appointed, one of whom was to look after "Rich. Waterhouse and rest of famylies on the Island."

This island was owned largely by Dr. Renald Fernald, and for this reason was called Doctors Island. At his death he directed that it be given to his daughter Sarah and she came into formal possession of

the property through a deed from her brother Thomas, dated Jan. 21, 1688, which began as follows,-

"Know all men by these presents that I, Thomas Fernald of Kittery, in the province of Maine, in New England, shipwright, being ye eldest lawfull begotten sone of Reginald Fernald, doctor, deceased, many good considerations and causes mee thereunto moovinge, and especially in obedience of ye commands of my honoure father and mother at their deceases severally, and ye great and ardent love and natural affections and respect which I have and bear unto my dearly beloved and loving sister Sarah, sometime the wife of Mr. Allin Loyd, mariner, deceased, and now the wife of Mr. Richard Waterhouse of Portsmouth in y^e province of New Hampshire in New England, tanner, have given, granted, ***** unto my said sister Sarah all and whole that part of ye island commonly known by the terme or name of ye Doctors island, whereon the now dwelling of the said Waterhouse standeth, together with a little island near there unto, and ye land bounded, together with the said little island as followeth, viz: on the one end with some part of the same island, being at ye narrowest part or place there and commonly known by ye name or terme of ye Mast cove or Bass rock cove, and on the other end and near unto which is the aforesaid little island, bounded only with the water leading to that part of Portsmouth aforesaid commonly called Strawberry bank, and one side together with ye sd little island, bounded with the channel of ye river Piscataqua, and ye other side with a branch of ye said river leading unto and from that part of said Portsmouth called Little Harbour, which said tract of land or ground, together with all the privileges, properties, conveniences and appurtenances therein, thereon or thereunto belonging, concerning or any manner or waye appertaining, woods, underwoods, rivers, wells or waters, earth, stones, gravel and sands, and fishing, fowling, hunting and hawking, and whatever else is, will or may be profitable or pleasant in or upon my premises, unto my said sister Sarah, her heirs, executors, administrators or assigns forever etc.

Mr. Waterhouse continued to live here, following his occupation as a tanner, during the remainder of his life, and the island gradually became known as Waterhouse's Island. In 1703 he came into possession of the property of his stepson, Allen Lloyd, or what had been his, as will be seen by the following instrument,-

"This Indenture made y^e first Day of April in y^e year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lady Anne by y^e Grace of God of Engl Scotland France & Ireland Queen Defender of ye faith & Between Edw Toogood of Ports^m In y^e Proc of N. Hamp^s In N. Engld Bricklayer Adm of ye Goods & Chattels &c of Allen Lloyd late of Ports^m afores^d Mar. decd & Guardian to Allen Lloyd son of ye sd Allen Lloyd Decd of ye one part & Richard Waterhouse of y^e same place Tanner on ye other part. Whereas ye sd Allen Lloyd in his life time stood Justly owing & Indebted unto ye said Richd Waterhouse in y^e sum of fifty Pounds Cur. money of N. Engld to his ye sd Richard Waterhouse keeping & maintaining ye sd Allen Lloyd Dec'd Seat drink Washing Lodging &c for several years and to us also there is forty Pounds more of like Cur. money of N. Engld due & owing unto y^e sd Waterhouse for keeping & maintaining ye sd Allen Lloyd son to ye sd Allen Lloyd Decd

with Meat drink washing lodging & apparel for several years and this Indenture Witnesseth y^e y^e sd Edward Toogood Adm. & Guardian as afores for and in Consideration of ye several sums of money due & owing unto ye sd Richd Waterhouse as above sd for full satisfaction & Paymt of ye same toye full Content of ye sd Richd Waterhouse he y^e sd hereby acknowledging y^e he is fully Content & Satisfy ye & Several sums of fifty & forty Pounds before Mentiond & & thereof & of every part thereof doth Acquit & Discharge ye sd Edw. Toogood his Exe & Adms & every of them ar also of y^e sd Allen Lloyd on so ye sd Allen Lloyd Deed forever by these presents he ye sd Edw. Toogood as Adms & Guardian as afores by his lease Bearing date with these presents hath Granted Demised & to farme letten unto the sd Richd Waterhouse al y^e his now dwelling House & Land wch he now lives upon wch was formerlt Allen Lloyd deed (Except it is hereafter sold scituate lying & Being in ye Township of Portsmouth aforesd & hath also Given Granted Bargained Sold Ratify & Confirm & by these presents doth fully freely clearly & Absolutely give grant Bargain Sel Ratify & Confirm unto ye sd Richard Waterhouse in his actual possession now being thirteen Rods of Land or thereabouts Scituate Lying & Being upon an Island Called formerly Doctor's Island in ye town of Portsm^o whereupon are several Tan pits & is bounde^d as followeth, viz. Beginning at y^e North Corner of ye Beam House where a great Hole is Digged & filled up with stones & Sodds laid upon it & thence to lowater mark on a south & by west Point a little Southerly & from sd first Bounds near about thirteen Rods to ye side of a flat rock on y^e north side of Richd Waterhouse Jun. his house & from sd flat rock down to lowater mark on a South by West line a little southerly wch runs through ye middle of ye sd Waterhouse Juns house To have & to hold ye sd thirteen rods of land Tann Pitts or other y^e Before Grant^d & Bargain^d Prises unto ye sd Richd Waterhouse his heirs & assigns forever to & only sole proper use Benefit & Behoof of him ye sd Richd Waterhouse his heirs & assigns forever. In Witness wr of ye parties afores to these psents Interchanably have sett their hands & Seals ye day and year first Before written An^o Dom 1703.

Edw. Toogood.

Seald & D^d in

Pro^v N. Hampsh^o Mr Edw Toogood

y^e presence of

appeared & acknowledged ye fore-

Jn^o Low

going Instrument to be his free

Chas. Story

act & Deed

Mach 13--1733/4 Coram Tho Peirce

Just Pease

The two Allen Lloyds mentioned in the above document were the son and grandson of Richard Waterhouse's wife by her first husband, Allen Lloyd. It will be noticed that at this time Richard Waterhouse Junior was also living on the Island. The property remained in the Waterhouse family until 1735, when Richard Senior's son Timothy Waterhouse sold it to Joshua Pierce. It will be seen by the boundaries in

the following abstract of the deed, that at that time Timothy owned the whole Island.

"To all People to whom these presents shall come Greeting know ye y^t Timothy Waterhouse of Portsm^o In ye Provc of N. Hampsh In N. Engld Cord-
vaine^r fr & in consideration of thirty five Pounds to me in hand pd Be-
fore ye Sealing & Delivering here of by Joshua Pierce Jun. of Portsm^o
& frv afors^d Mercht ye Rect^w of I do hereby acknowledge & myself fully
satisfy & pd have Given Grant Bargain & by these presents have sold a-
lien Convey^d & Confirmd unto ye sd Josh Pierce his heirs & assigns for-
ever al my Right Share Interest Challenge Claim or Demand In & unto a
certain Island formerly by ye name of Doctors Island & Waterhouse's Is-
land & is bound on ye East part by Partridge Island & ye North & West &
south on Piscataqua River & more particularly one tract of land on ye a-
bove describ^d Island which my late father Richd Waterhouse Bot of Mr
Edw Toogood." *****

The island now gradually became known as Pierce's Island,,but
that the name Waterhouse clung to it for many years after this transac-
tion may be seen from the following memo. taken from a file of Ames' Al-
manac, and made by one Daniel Pierce.i.e. "Mar.14, 1766. Farrell's ship
drove from the wharf and overset on Waterhouse's island."

Richard Waterhouse's name appears at various times in connec-
tion with the affairs of the town. He was one of the signers of the fol-
lowing petition.

"To the King's most Excellent Majesty & o^r Dread Sovereain.

The Humble Adresse of your Maj^{tie} Subjets y^e Householdors of y^e

Town of Portsm^o on Pascataq River in N England Humble sheweth

That the fear of loseing the long enjoyed & still desired Benefitt of y^e
Massachusetts Governm^t hath occasioned us to venture to speak unto o^r
Soverain Lord y^e King, it may bee ye Lords of o^r Lord ye King may bee
comfortable to us & he will pform ye Request of his Servants y^e wee may
bee continued & settled under y^e same Jurisdiction as formerly under
which wee at first Voluntarily subjected ourselves and have never yet
had any cause to repent of soe doeing; under which by y^e good hand of o^r
God upon us & your Majesties Authority over us wee have been duely en-
couraged to lead quiet & peaceable lives in all Godliness and Honesty;
with which also wee rest fully satisfied and contented. wee are men y^t
desir to fear y^e Lord & ye King & not to medle with them y^t are given to
change as well knowing what confusions distractions & Damage changes of
Governm^ts are not unusually attended with. May this thing seem good in
yo^r Vajesties eyes & may wee bee favoured in this Matter. we shall pay
our Vowes to y^e ffather & ffountain of all o^r Mercies & find ourselves
further obliged to offer up o^r Prayers for y^e life of y^e king &c.

Dated in Portsm^h in Pascataq River in N.E. this 22 Octob^r 1677."

In 1682 Cranfield was appointed Governor of New Hampshire . After enduring his oppressive and tyrannical administration of affairs until 1685 the inhabitants of Exeter, Hampton, Portsmouth, and Dover petitioned for his removal. Richard Waterhouse was one of sixty signers from Portsmouth and some idea of the hardships through which these early settlers had to pass may be formed from this petition, a portion of follows,-

" To the Kings most excellent Majesty:

The humble address and petition of sundry of your Majestie's loyal subjects the freeholders and inhabitants of your Majestie's Province of New Hampshire, in NEW England, most humbly sheweth, That your petitioners predecessors, having, under the encouragement of your Majestie's royal ancestors, by their letters patent to the Great Council of Plymouth, removed themselves and some of us into this remote and howling wilderness, in pursuance of the glorious ends proposed; namely the glory of God, the enlarging his Majestie's dominions, either founded we now possess vacuum domicilium, or purchased them of the heathern, the native proprietors of the same- or at least by their allowance, approbation or consent-- have sat down in the peaceable possession of the same for the space of above fifty years; hoping that, as we had attained the ends, so we should have shared in the privileges, of these royal patents above mentioned, and thereupon did the more patiently bear, and cheerfully grapple with innumerable evils and difficulties which must necessarily accompany the settlers of new plantations, especially in such climates as these, besides the calamities of the late Indian war, to the loss of many of our lives and the great impoverishment of the survivors. We were also further encouraged, from your Majestie's princely care in taking us, by your late commission, under your Majestie's immediate government, and appointing some among ourselves to govern us according to those methods there prescribed, being particularly bound to discountenance vice and promote virtue and good living, and to keep us in a due obedience to your Majestie's authority and continuance of our just liberties and prosperities, together with liberties of consciences in matters of worship, and all in order to our living in all godliness and honestly, fearing God and honoring the King, which we profess to be our desire to do.

But contrariwise, partly by the unreasonable demands of our pretended proprietor, Robert Mason, Esq., and partly from sundry reasons, that are either effects or concomitants thereof, we are in a far worse condition than any other your Majesty's plantations, and reduced to such confusions and extremities that necessitate our humble application to your Majesty, upon whose clemency and justice only, under God, we depend for our relief:

Your poor, distressed and oppressed petitioners do therefore most humbly supplicate your gracious Majesty that you will vouchsafe to give leave to one of ourselves Mr. Nathaniel Beere, whom we have sent to that end, to spread before your sacred Majesty, and your most honorable privy council, our deplorable estate, the beholding of which we doubt not will move compassion towards, and your Majesty's propensity to justice will incline to, the using such means as your wisdom shall seem best, that the oppressed may be relieved, wronged ones righted, and we, your Maj-

esty's almost undone subjects, now prostrate at your feet, may, upon the tasting of your equity and goodness, be raised and further engaged in all humility and thankfulness, as in duty bound heartily to pray," etc. etc.

In 1691 Richard Waterhouse subscribed six shillings and eight pence towards the settlement of the Rev. John Cotton as pastor over the Congregational Church in Portsmouth. Two years later, on the 3rd. of April, 1693, "at a Generall Towne meeting held in that town there was a vote passed empowering the Selectmen, together with three others to be a comitte to regulate and order the seating of the people in the meeting house." The way in which this committee performed its duty will doubtless be read with considerable interest. Two men were seated "with the Minister in the Pulpit." Three men were seated "in the seat under the Pulpit." The rest of the men were seated "in The front seat before the Minister, in the men's gallery fronting the Pulpit, in the second seat," (the one in which Richard Waterhouse sat) and "in the men's Side Gallery." The women sat in the "Seat fronting the Pulpit, In the first seat between the Pulpit and Maj. Vaughn's pew, The next, In the Women's seat in the gallery, In the seat where Major Stileman's daughter satt," and in "The room over the women's staires." "The 5th. seat being the back seat is left for young persons about 14 years of age, unmarried. As for that seat where Capt. Fryer sat, Liout. Redford and his wife are there placed until further order. The back seats in the men's galleries is left for younge persons about 14 yeares old. As for the boyes under that age they are to sit in the men's allyes and the girls in the women's allyes. And also that no boyes be suffered to sit on the staires or above staires, and that noe younge men or younge women offer to crowde into any seat where either the men or the women are seated."

In the Province Rate for the town of Portsmouth, Sept. 24, 1681, we find that he paid a tax of six shillings and six pence, and

and from the fact that out of about one hundred and thirty tax payers there were only twenty-nine who paid more than he, it would appear that his condition was rather better than the average of his fellow-townsmen. His name appears in a list of Strawberry Bank Constable rates dated Dec. 9, 1688, at ten shillings, and in the same year his name appears on a similar list "for the discharging of the Province debts," for one pound and six shillings. On the tax list for the years 1713-1717 his name is found on the "Mill Dam List." He shared in the division of the common lands, according to the vote of 1699, and apparently sold his allotment, which was about forty acres, to William Cotton in 1710.

Mar. 27, 1682, Mr. Waterhouse was chosen to serve on the Grand Jury, and on the List of the Jury of Trials for the last Tuesday of July, 1684, he was the member of the Jury from Strawberry Bank.

We have no record of the date of death of Richard Waterhouse or either of his wives. His first wife, Sarah, signed a deed July 6, 1700, but must have died not long after that date for he married again during the next year. His second wife survived him. He died in the early part of 1718. A copy of his will follows.

"In the name of god Amen I Richard Watterhous sen^r of portsm^o In Newhampshir being very sik & weack of body but of sound & perfect memory & not knowing how it may ples god to deall with me being willing to set my house in order hav & doe mak this as my Last will & testament nulling and revokeing all other wills formerly by meo mad Either by word or wrighten & this only to be taken for my Last will & testament

& first I bequeth my sole into y^e hands of allmighty god who gave it meo hopin & beleveing for pardon of all my many fold sins & transgressions for the sak of my ever blessed Redemer the Lord Jesus Christ in whom I trust & hope for salvation/ my body to y^e dust to be boueryed at the descreshon of my Executor here affter named & apoynted: & for that worldly Estat which it hath ples allmighty god to bestow uppon me/ I give & bequeath as followeth----

that all my onest & Just debts being payed by my Executor & feuenerr-- all charges defrayed I desposed of my s^d Estate as folloes---

first I give & bequeath unto my beloved wiff mary all my Estat moveabells & Immoveabell of what sort & kind so ever in this world Except what herein Affter Exsepted:

2^d my will is whearas I hav sum hies in the watter & bark in the mill: to tan them that my son temothy watterhous tak the Care & charg of

then all & see them well taned when don to have on third for his
 payne the other too thirds to deliver my above s^d wiff for her one use
 s^d whereas my Estat is but small in this world am not capabell of doe-
 ing for my Childrin as I would: doe: doe therefor give unto my Son Rich-
 ard watterhous ten shilens: to my son temothy five shilens & to my son
 samuell watterhous five shilens all to be payed out of the above s^d hids
 then taned into Lether

My will is that my above s^d wiff shall have all the tanyard dower-
 ing her naturall Liff not to sell without she stand in need for her
 comfortabell subsistance & for that shes shall have Liberty soe to doe
 but I shes shall have sufficant to maintain her without selling it shes
 shall not then sell it but I then give & bequeath it to my son temothy
 watterhous to him his heirs & assigns for ever

Lastly I mak my beloved wiff Mary my sol Executrix to see this my Last
 will & testement well & trewly Executed in all respects: in conformation
 hereof I have sett to my hand & seall this 14th day of march 1717-8

Richard Waatterhous (-----)
 (Seal)
 (-----)

signed sealed & delivered
 In presents of

John Partridge

the mark of
 Sarah D Deverson ales ward

John Pickerin

Sworn to by all 3 witness July 23, 1718."

The following is the Inventory of his Estate.

to a tanyard and millhouse and land belonging to it	£ 30	- 0	- 0
to four cow hides and a kip	2	- 5	- 0
to bed and bedding	5	- 0	- 0
to twenty-three pounds of pewter	1	- 14	- 6
to too old old bras kittles	0	- 5	- 0
to one old warming pan	0	- 5	- 0
to a small skelet and mortar	0	- 4	- 0
to wooden dishes and trenchers	0	- 4	- 0
to earthen ware	0	- 4	- 0
to 2 iron pots	0	- 6	- 0
to a spit and gridiron -- old	0	- 2	- 0
to a old gun	0	- 8	- 0
to too old trammels and a slice and tongs	0	- 5	- 0
to old broken iron and spade and ax	0	- 4	- 0
to six old chear	0	- 3	- 0
to six glas botels	0	- 1	- 6
to six old books	0	- 3	- 0
to a old trunk	0	- 4	- 0
to three old chists	0	- 6	- 0
to 5 cotten and linen sheet	1	- 15	- 0
to six old napkins	1	- 4	- 0
to 2 old coats and too old par of britches	0	- 15	- 0
to a covered and two old blankets	0	- 8	- 0
to sute of slothes	3	- 0	- 0
to a lucking glass	0	- 2	- 0
to 2 old wheels	0	- 5	- 0
to a small cow	4	- 0	- 0

to 2 old table - - - - - 0 - 3 - 0

In pursuant from a warrant from Juge of propets
we have maid pri sall of the Estate of Richard
Waterhouse de seased.

June 3, 1718.

Wm. Hunkin

Sam'l Shackford.

No list of Richard Waterhouse's children has been found and no traces of any appear, except those mentioned in his will, consequently we think no others were living at the time it was made. In the "Early Records of New Hampshire Families," published from manuscript in the library of the New Hampshire Historical Society, we find the date of birth of his sons Richard and Samuel but have been unable to find any record of the birth or baptism of Timothy. Brewster, in his "Rambles about Portsmouth," says that Timothy was the third son. This was probably a tradition, as Brewster was descended from Timothy, and may be correct but it is probable that these children were mentioned in the order of their in their father's will, which would make Timothy the second son.

CHILDREN:-

- | | | |
|---|----------------------|---------------------|
| 2 | 1 Richard Waterhouse | b. April 19, 1674. |
| 3 | 11 Timothy | " b. probably 1675. |
| 4 | 111 Samuel | " b. May 9, 1676. |

2

RICHARD² WATERHOUSE (Richard¹) born in Portsmouth, N.H., April 19, 1674. Married first, Sarah ----- and second, after July 25, 1723, Elizabeth, daughter of Edward and Elizabeth Kenard.

He was a sea captain and Jan. 9, 1707, was master of a "Brigantine called the 'Dove' burthen of sixty tons, or thereabouts, built at Kittery in the Massachusetts Government," the same being registered by

the Council on that date. Later he owned and probably commanded the schooner "Swallow."

In 1703 he lived on the Island, where his father lived, but in 1709 he bought a place just across on the mainland, as shown by the following deed,-

"To all Christian People to whom thses Psents shal or may come Greeting know ye yt I John Preston of Portsm In ye Prov of N. Hampsh N. Engld for divers good causes & considerations as hereunto Moving but Especially for ye Consideration of one hundred & fifty pounds to me in hand Pd by Richd Waterhouse of Portsm aforesd^d Merria^d ye Recd^t wh of I do by thses psents acknowledge & myselve to be therewith fully satisfy^d Contented & Pd & thereof I of every part thereof for myselve my heirs Exec Adms do acquit Exonerate & discharge ye sd Richd Waterhouse his heirs Exec Adm Every of them forever by these psents have given granted bargained & sold & do by these psents Give Grant Bargain & sell Alien Enfeoff & Confirm unto ye sd Richd Waterhouse his heirs & assigns forever a certain Messuage or house & land lyeing or being in Portsm Aforesd on a certain neck of land Called Pickering Neck Bound^d as followeth viz # beginning at Mr Rogers stone fence on ye Westerly Side of ye path y^t leads to ye Bank over ye Creek or Lock from sd fence as sd path goeth forty-three feet Southerly having ye same breadth Westerly as Mr Roger's fence runneth & joyning home to sd fence Sixty five feet in length. To Have & to Hold sd Messuage or house & land according to ye Bounds thereof with all ye Privileges thereto belonging unto him ye sd Waterhouse his heirs Exec Adm or assigns forever without the least hinderance Molestation or interruption of me ye sd Preston my heirs Exec or Adms or any other pson or psons wh^osoever Claiming any Just right Title or Interest to sd house & land or any part thereof from by or under me but y^t sd Bargained house & land shal be & Remane to ye only use Benfit & behoof of him sd Waterhouse his heirs Exec Adm & Assigns forever free & clear from all manner of other bargains Sales Joyntures Dowries Judgats & Execution &c & y^t I sd Preston wil Defend ye title thereof against all Psons Patentees or proprietors only Except^d & Susanna my wife doth fully & freely give & yield up to ye sd Richd Waterhouse his heirs & assigns all her right & title of Dowry & Interest of in or to y^e p^{re}sses in Confirmation whof my Selve & sd Susanna my wife have hereunto set our hands & seals this twenty Eight day of Decem Ano Dom 1709.

John Preston

Signed Sealed & Ed in psens of us

Susanna S Preston
her mark

Saml Waterhouse)

Benj Gambling)

Prov. of N. Hampsh Apr. 10, 1710

Jno Preston & Susanna his wife

psionally Appeared before ye subscriber one of his Maj^{ties} Justices of ye Peace at Portsmouth In sd Prov. & acknowledged ye above Instrument to be their Act & Deed

Saml Fenhallow.

Memorandum that quiet & peaceable possession of ye hous & land within mentioned to be granted was had & taken by ye wthin Mentioned Richd Waterhouse In his own proper pson according to ye tenner of y^e wthin Witten Deed y^e wthin witnesses unto the Deed being psent

Entered & Recorded According)
 to ye Orig ye 1st July 1731.) Josh Pierce Record.
)

In 1713 he bought land of Dr. Richard Mills for which he paid Twenty Eight pounds and in 1725 was admitted as one of the original Proprietors of the Town of Barrington, N. H. receiving an allotment of one hundred and eighty acres. His name appears on the Portsmouth tax list for the years 1713-18 on the "Strawberry Bank List" and from that time to his death on the "South Side Craffords Lane List."

Jan. 15, 1717, he was rated to the new meeting house, his tax being seventeen shillings. Out of some hundred and eighty odd on the list only twenty-six were rated higher than he.

Of the fifty-two slaves owned in town in 1727 he owned two, only three owning a larger number.

May 18, 1693, he, with twenty-five or thirty others, was fined five shillings for not appearing with his arms May 11, preceeding according to an Act of the Assembly entitled an "Act for settling the Militia," but in 1708 he served from June 28 to July 8, at Fort William & Mary at Newcastle.

He died, probably in the early part of 1731, and his son, Captain Samuel Waterhouse, was appointed administrator of his Estate, the papers being dated June 25, 1731. His widow married Moses Dam of Newington, N.H., sometime before April 25, 1739 on which date she quit claim to the above Capt. Samuel Waterhouse her right of dower as the widow of Richard Waterhouse Junior. He left property amounting, according to the inventory, to £778-11-6, the principal items of which are as follows,-

"The Dwelling house & land above the way where he Lived	
also the land and warehouse below the way - - - -	350.
a lot of Land up by Jere. Libey's 120 foot into the back	
Crick Sixty foot front - - - -	30
20 acres of land on Hampton Line Laid out by the Comitte	
then Chosen - - - -	40
A Right of Land in ye Township of barrington - - - -	5
the Schooner Swallow & hir apertenance - - - -	180
a negro man names Tho. Turrah - - - -	80

The inventory was sworn to as follows,—"We whose names are underwritten by the Request of the Hon^{bl} Judge of Probate of wills: Capt. Samuel Waterhouse & ye Widow Waterhouse have apprized the Real as well as Personall Estate of Capt. Rich^d Waterhouse Deceased given under our hands this 25 June, 1731.

Hunking Wentworth

Richard Jose

CHILDREN:-

Probably all born in Portsmouth, N.H.

6 I Samuel Waterhouse b. 1706.

II Richard " bap. in Portsmouth, July 23, 1710, probably died young.

III Hannah " bap. in Portsmouth, July 23, 1710, married --- Scott of Hampton, N.H.

In August 1744 she was a widow and deeded her brother, Samuel Waterhouse of Portsmouth, Shopkeeper, in consideration of eighteen pounds paid her by him, all rights she had in the Estate "wh was our fathers Rich^d Waterhouse late of Portsm^o aforesd Merriner."

6 IV Arthur " bap. in Portsmouth, Aug. 16, 1711 or 1713.

V Sarah " married ----- Petty.

3

TIMOTHY² WATERHOUSE (Richard¹) born in Portsmouth, N.H., probably in 1675, married Jan. 1700, Ruth, daughter of Aaron and Ruth (Sherburne) Moses. We have found no record of his marriage and there appears to be some doubt as to the name of his wife. All we are sure of is that her name was Ruth, for he mentions her in his will. Mr. Brewster, who, as already stated was a descendant of Timothy Waterhouse, says that the latter married a Miss. Moses, but the Moses Genealogy fails to find any Ruth Moses in Portsmouth at that time. We quote from that work as follows,- "Among the first 'planters' that came to the Piscataqua was John Moycis (or Mosses) a Scotchman by birth; he settled on the south side of Sagamore Creek. He was a Deacon in the first in town and when a subscription list was started in 1653 to settle a minister he headed the same with a £11. He had a son Aaron who among other children had a dau. Sarah. Mr. A.D. Moses says 'from tradition and what I have heard from my Grandmother, this Miss. Moses was Sarah of Sagamore Creek, she being the only Miss. Moses in or at Portsmouth at that time.' This could not be, however, for we know the name of Timothy Waterhouse's wife was Ruth. The genealogy concludes the subject thus,- "It has been suggested that Aaron Moses also had a dau. Ruth but no such dau. is mentioned in the settlement of his estate and Ruth Waterhouse was alive at that time."

Timothy Waterhouse was a tanner and cordwainer or shoemaker, and probably settled on the land described in the following deed, about the year 1700.

"Know yee hoom & it May Consorn that I Richard Waterhouse of Portsmouth In the Province of New Hampshire In New England Tanner Do by these presents for Divers good Causes and upon good Considerations but more Espetyally ffor the Natural affectyon I Bear to my Sons Namly Sam^l Waterhouse & Tomothy Waterhouse of the Same town and Province abovesadd Cordwinders Resct whereof I Do Esteeme mySelf ffully Satisfied and Content-

ed have therefore given granted Infeoffed & confirmed and Do by thses presents give grant Infeoff sett over and Confirm a Certaine part or parsell of Upland of about Thurteen Acres in a place Comonly Called ye Pulpett Reitch in ye Town of Portsm^o aforesaid. Bounded as followeth Upon the Lowre Sid of the Land that was fformely Mr. Richard and Mr. Jno Cutts Two Hundred Acres and so Runs Thury two Rods by the River Side Downward where there was formerly and oake and a Pine Marked and Runs Bakeward Eighty Rods by the land of said Cutts to those my Said Suns Samuel and Tomothy their Heirs Executors, Administrators and Assigns for Ever to have and to hould use occupi Improve Inherite and Injoy for Ever without the Lease Lett Hindrance or Interruptyon or Mollestatyon whatsoever from wee the Said Richard Waterhouse or Anny of my Heirs Executors Administrators or any other person or persons whatsoever Layeing anny Lawfull Claims Riht or Interest of anny part or paraell of the Same for the true Confirmatyon of all above written I the said Richard Waterhouse and Sarah Waterhouse my wife have hereunto fixd our hands and seals this Sixth of July Seventeen Hundred and in the twelfth year of his Majties Reigne &c 1700

Signed sealed and Delivered

Richard Waterhous (-----)
(Seal)
(-----)

In presence of us witt:

Sarah Waterhous (-----)
(Seal)
(-----)

Thos Knight

Jn^o Low

Bethiah V Bragdon
Mark

Province of New Hampshire

Richard Waterhouse Sen^r personally

Appeared before me ye Subscriber this

Seventh Day of October 1700 and Ac-

knowledged the above Instrumt to

be his Act & Deed

Sam^{ll} Penhallow Jus^x p^o

The thirteen acres described in this deed are probably the "13 acres at the pulpit" allotted to Sarah Lloyd, afterwards the wife of Richard Waterhouse Senior, at the time of the settlement of the estate of her former husband Allen Lloyd. The bank of the river at this point is a high bluff hence it was called the "pulpit." Aug. 23, 1700 Samuel sold his interest in the property to his brother Timothy for nine pounds and the latter appears to have lived there the rest of his life. We are indebted to Brewster's "Rambles about Portsmouth" for the following description of the locality and of family life in the old Waterhouse home.

"One of the most beautiful locations in Portsmouth for river proximity, extensive prospect and varied landscape, is that above Portsmouth Bridge known of late years as Freeman's Point, but for nearly two previously as Hamn's Point. About a third of a mile north of the old Ham mantion-house between the great elm and the shore, in a grove, is the cellar of the house of Timothy Waterhouse. ***** He located himself on this cove above Freeman's Point probably soon after the year 1700. He was a tanner and shoemaker. Here were his tan pitts, and his cultivated acres. There was no little life in that old house - which had under its roof six merry girls and three roughish boys and a slave - and sometimes the staid old folks would tell them they almost raised the evil one. One winter evening, somewhere about 1725 the parents were absent for the night, the snow was fast falling, and the boys and girls resolved to have a good time. So the fire was enlivened with fresh wood and the dance began. The slave had a good voice, and as he capered round in a 'Country dance' merrily sang:-

'Don't you see how my head does wag-
 Don't you see how my shoulders lag-
 Don't you see how my hips do shake-
 Don't you see what pains I take,
 In dancing of my quivering shake!'

In the height of their hilarity, which would hardly have been enjoyed in the old folks' presence, there was a violent thumping at the door. In that stormy night, far away from any neighbors, and from any road, there was something frightful in that token. The singing was hushed and that parental admonition to beware of 'raising the evil one' seemed to flash suddenly over their superstitious minds. Margaret, the oldest and bravest, led the way to the door, but no sooner had she opened it than she saw what she thought Satan himself. The figure was white, with a horrible black face deep in a white lopped hat, which was hanging down over each shoulder. That the Old Scratch had now come they all believed; Margaret fainted, and it was some time before the ugly looking but faith-

ful slave of Nathaniel Jackson was recognized beneath his snow covering, who had 'come to get Massa's shoes!'

The parents had the ability to instruct their children, and they gave them a better education at home than girls generally received in that day."

Timothy Waterhouse's name appears in the Portsmouth records in various connections. In accordance with an order from the Lieut. Governor to post men detached for his Majesties service in certain places, probably as a protection against the Indians, Timothy Waterhouse was posted at "Heards" from Dec. 5, 1695, to Jan. 7, following. Jan. 15, 1717 he was rated to the new meeting house his tax being 17 shillings. He was one of the tythingmen for several years.

Like his brothers he was one of the original proprietors of the town of Barrington, N.H., being admitted as such in 1720. At a meeting of the proprietors held in Portsmouth Mar. 31, 1731, it was voted to build a meeting house in Barrington but nothing was done under this vote. In 1742 it was voted that a meeting house be built 44 feet long and 36 feet wide. Timothy Waterhouse was one of a committee of three to locate and superintend the construction of the same.

In 1748 he was one of the signers of the following petition,-

"Prov^s of)
New Hamp^r) To the Honb^{le} Theodore Atkinson Esq^r & others
) Purchasers and Proprietors of Masons Rights---
)

The petition of the Subscribers Humbly Shews that your Petitioners who are underneath Subscribed are Desirous to have Granted to them a Tract of Land for a Township on Merrimack River or as near the River as you think Proper and on such terms & Limitations as others who have asked the same Favour and as Speedily as Shall be Consistent with your Conveiniency and your Petitioners as in Duty bound shall Ever Pray *** "

We have been unable to find any record of the death of Timothy Waterhouse but it must have occurred in the latter part of 1748 as his will, which follows, was made in June and proved in December of that year.

"I Timothy Waterhouse of the town of Porchmoth In the Province of Newhamshair In newEngland coardwiner being aged and not knowing his soon it may Please god to remove me hence, I : do make and ordain this my last will and testement, all former wills maid by me at any time by word or writing to be of none Effect excepting this will and first of all I recommend my soul to god that gave it me and my body to the earth to be decently buried In a desent manner hoping at the great day of Jeneral Judgment boath soul: and body shall be united to geather In Eternal happiness, as for: my worly Estate I give and dispose of It after this manner form

first my dafter marget bruster and mary spinney and: ruth gains and sarah foos and Eleizebeth have all theas my dafters I give them each and every one of them five shillings a pease because I have givn them sufficient before as for my dafter Lidea I give hur twenty pounds old tenner: to be payd by my son Timothy when he shall receive: what is given to him as for my son John, my son Joseph to pay him twenty pounds old tenner when he shall receive what is given to him, now for my three sons I give to my son Joseph my: house and land at the pulpit wheare I now live to him and his airs lawfully begotten of his body for ever so that it shall be from air to air as a feirm Intailment for ever, as for my son Timothy I give my house and land at the bank in porchmouh to him, as for my son John I give him all: my write and intrust In Barinton of house or land what ever or commans to be to him and his airs for ever and all my wearing cloaths to John

as for my part In a pew In our meeting house that to belong to Joseph and his airs after his mothers death further I give my silver tankerd to my son Timothy and my Chist of draws to my dafter Lidea after their mothers death if she be not forst to dispose of it for hur neccesity support I do make and ordain and apoint my well beloved wife Ruth my onely and soul Excetureess of this my last will to order and dispose faithfully singurly every part here of as for my beloved wife to have the: use of all my estate duering hur widdowhood and hur thurds during hur life and after hur death what moovebles are left as housel goods and catel and horses and other creters to be to John as for cloaths to be Equally divided among the dafters if she hath not disposed of them before and for the confirmation I being In my right mind and reson set my hand and seal this third day of June one thousand seven hundred and forty Eight, 1748."

Timothy Waterhouse

(-----)
(Seal)
()

John Bennet

Ephr^m Bennet

Phebe Bennet

Proved Dec. 28, 1748.

The branch of the family which is descended from the maker of this will contains probably the largest number of the descendants of Richard Waterhouse, and its members have cause for much satisfaction in the fact of the existence of the will as it makes it possible to trace the line, beyond all dispute, back to the first Richard. Those of this

branch who have been sufficiently interested to look into the matter have been able to trace their pedigree back to the sons of Timothy, but beyond that point all was confusion. Many of the descendants of John asserted positively that he came from England, and one informed the writer that this John had a son John who was the ancestor of the Barrington Waterhouses. He was apparently unable to persuade this person that she was mistaken even though he proved conclusively by dates and records that if her statement was correct the age of miracles had not passed for John senior must have been a father at the remarkably early age of about six years. We have also been informed that Timothy Junior came from England directly to Portsmouth. Some of the descendants of Joseph claimed that he was the son of a Joseph who came from England, while others were just as positive that he himself came from England and settled at Black Point, in the town of Scarborough, Maine.

In the midst of all this uncertainty the writer felt a degree of pleasure, which only those who have been engaged in a similar work can fully appreciate, in finding, besides the above will, the following deed which gives not only the names of Timothy's children but also the places where they lived, thus proving that they were the identical ones mentioned in the will.

Deed of the other children of Timothy Waterhouse
to their brother Timothy.

"Know all men by these presents that we Ruth Waterhouse, widow, Sam'l Brewster housewright, & Margaret my wife, Ruth Gains, widow, Zachariah Poss marriner, & Sarah my wife, Wm. Ham, yeoman, and Elizabeth my wife, Spencer Coleby, mariner, and Lydia my wife, all of Portsmouth in the Province of N. Hampshire & John Spinney of Kittery in the County of York in the province of Mass. Bay, shipwright, & Mary my wife, & Joseph Waterhouse, tanner of Scarborough, in said County, & John Waterhouse of Barrington in New Hampshire, Cordwainer, the said women being widow and daughters & said Joseph & John being sons of Timothy Waterhouse late of Portsmouth, Cordwainer, Deceased, for and in consideration of five shillings to each of us in hand paid by Timothy Waterhouse of Newport in ye County of Newport in ye province of Rhode Island, chairmaker, another son of the said Deceased the receipt whereof is hereby acknowledged. I have given granted bargained and sold and by these presents do give grant bargain

sell Enclose Convey & Confirm unto him the said Timothy Waterhouse all the right title interest Estate property & Demand whatsoever which- ever either & each of us have or ought to have by any means whatsoever of in and unto that lot of land in Portsmouth, aforesaid bounded souther by a street and so running Northerly between the land heretofore Thomas packers on the one side & land heretofore John Frost's on ye other being the same land now in the occupation of Matthew Livermore Esq. however bounded and Limited with all the buildings thereon standing being the same which by the last will of the Deceased was given & Divided to the said Timothy the Grantee in these presents to have & to hold the said granted & bargained premises with all the privileges & appurtenances to him the said Timothy Waterhouse his heirs & assignees to his and their proper use benefit & behoof forever.

In witness whereof we have hereunto set our hands & seal the 24th Day of May 1749.

her

Ruth X Waterhouse

mark

Sam'l Brewster

Margaret Brewster

Ruth Gains

Zachih Foss

Sarah Foss

Wm. Ham

Elizabeth Ham

Spencer Coleby

Lydia Coleby

John Spinney

Mary Spinney

Jos. Waterhouse

John Waterhouse

Province of) May 25th 1749 Then Ruth Waterhouse Samuel Brewster
New Hampshire) Ruth Gains Zachah Foss & Sarah Foss all appeared &
) acknowledged the within Instrument to be their act
) and Deed before

Samuel Hart Just Peace

Province of) May 25th 1749 Then Mrs Margaret Brewster within Nam-
New Hampshire) ed Personally appeared & acknowledged this Instrument
) to be her free & Voluntary act & Deed on ye 26th day
) of ye same month the within Named John Spinney & Mary
) his wife William Ham & Elizabeth his wife & the with-
) in Named Lydia Colby all Personally appeared & Sever-
) ally acknowledged this Instrument to be their free &
) Voluntary act & Deed Before me

William Parker Just Peace

Province of New) May 29th 1749 Then John Waterhouse within Named ac-
Hampshire) knowledged this Instrument to be his free act & deed
) before me

William Parker Just Peace

province of New) August 23rd 1749 Then Spencer Colby appeared & ac-
 Hampshire) knowledged the within Instrument to be his Voluntary
) act & deed

Before Samuel Hart Just Peace

York ss Biddeford May ye 29th 1749 Joseph Waterhouse Personally Appear-
 ed & acknowledged This Instrument as His free & Vol-
 untary act & Deed

Coram John Cray Just Peace

Received & recorded 26 June 1755 D Peice Reg.

According to a notice in the New Hampshire Gazette Timothy Wa-
 terhouse's widow afterwards married Joseph Mead and 3rd Thomas Skinner.
 The notice reads as follows,- "Mrs Ruth Skinner aged 29 died in Ports-
 mouth, N.H., Apr.17,1769. She was born Oct.18,1679, m. Timothy Water-
 house in Jan. 1700; lived with him 50 years and had 13 children, from
 whom have descended 92 g'd chil. and 80 g't g'd children most of them liv-
 ing. She m. 2nd Joseph Mead and 3rd Thomas Skinner." If Timothy Water-
 house had thirteen children, as here stated, some must have died in in-
 fancy as we find mention of only ten.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Portsmouth.

- | | | | | |
|---|----------------------|------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| | I Timothy Waterhouse | bap. | July 25,1706 or 1708 | d. before 1715. |
| 7 | II Margaret | " " | July 25,1706 or 1708. | |
| 8 | III Mary | " " | July 25,1706. | |
| | IV Ruth | " " | June 18,1710, married Jan.18,1727/28 | |

Jonathon Gains, a native of Ipswich, Mass. He was a cab-
 inet maker and moved to Portsmouth about 1724 and engag-
 ed in business. After his marriage he moved into a new
 house which he had built on what is now Congress street
 near Market Square. Brewster in his "Rambles" thus
 speaks of it.

"This house was handsomely situated on what was then almost the outskirts of the town. It was finished in good style. For architectural symmetry the remaining ornaments of the front door exhibit evidence of good taste which few of modern times exceed. The caps of the pillars retain their beauty to the eye of every architect after more than a century's exposure. That Mr. Gains made his own furniture not only handsomely but faithfully, we have seen evidence in the now daily use of his first parlor chairs, which have passed down in the family for an hundred and thirty years and are yet as good as new. They never had a price set upon them.

The looking-glass, which the parents of Ruth presented her in 1727, in which her young and smiling face had often glanced, and which in its time has made many sad as well as pleasant reflections, hangs now in our office, a looking-glass in common, and a mirror to throw upon us reflections of the past."

Mr. Gains died in 1743 and his wife, Ruth died previous to May 1749.

CHILDREN:-

1. George Gains b. in Portsmouth, N.H., 1736. He was a cabinet maker and house carpenter and built a house in which he lived on the East side of the lot where the Franklin House later stood. He took an active part in the Revolution, and was conspicuous among the most patriotic of the times in opposition to the Stamp Act. In 1773 he

was elected one of the selectmen and held the office upwards of thirty years. For thirty consecutive years, with but one exception, he was representative to the General Court. He also held the office of State Commissary for many years, and as Major he was present in the army at the capture of Burgoyne.

Mr. Gains d. in 1809.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Gains b. probably in Portsmouth, in 1775, He was a watchmaker and d. in 1853 leaving two sons in New Orleans who were distinguished in the mercantile line.

9 V Joseph Waterhouse b. Apr. 11, 1711, in Portsmouth, N.H.

Vl Lydia " b. in Portsmouth, N.H., married 1st Aug. 23, 1747 Capt. Spencer Coleby of Newbury, a shipmaster in the employ of Sir William Pepperell. After his death she m. 2nd Capt. Ephriam Dennett who resided at the "Dennett House," or as it was sometimes called, "the Bee-Hive," situated on an elevated part of what was known as "Christian shore" and later as North Portsmouth. Brewster says that during their courtship, to save the time of frequently visiting Kittery in the winter, Capt. Dennett paid her board at a relatives on Christian shore by supplying the family with wood. After his death she m. 3rd Judge John Plummer of Rochester, N.H. We again quote from Brewster, the following interesting account of her last courtship. "Like a good housewife in those days when no factories were in operation she kept her

flock of sheep, and attended to the various processes of converting their product into cloth, and her fame extended beyond the limits of the town. Near the house is a good spring which still flows on as of old. It was the time for wool washing. Laying aside the widow's weeds, dressed in a leather apron, a man's broad-brim hat and other apparel to match, she was washing her wool at the spring, when a stranger on horseback approached and inquired for the widow Dennett. Nothing daunted she pointed to the house, directed him to the front door, while she stepped round and entered by the back way. He was not long in waiting before the lady of the house in comely apparel appeared. The gentleman introduced himself as John Plummer, of Rochester. He had heard of her good reputation, said perhaps it was too soon to come a courting, but would ask the privilege in proper time of proposing himself to her favorable consideration. In due time Judge Plummer came again, and they were married. They lived happily together for many years, and their gravestones in Rochester record the age of each at about ninety years. Whether he ever inquired who it was he found washing wool at the spring we have never been informed."

CHILDREN:-

1. Jeremiah Dennett.

- | | | |
|----|------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 10 | VII Timothy Waterhouse | bap. Aug. or Sept. 1715. |
| 11 | VIII Sarah | " " June 9, 1719. |
| 12 | IX Elizabeth | " " April 19, 1719. |
| 13 | X John | b. May 15, 1721, was bap. the same month. |

4

SAMUEL² WATERHOUSE (Richard¹) born in Portsmouth, N.H., May 9, 1676, married apparently twice, 1st Sarah ----- and 2nd Mrs. Sarah Libby, widow of Samuel Libby. No record of his marriage or marriages has been found, but the Libby Genealogy says that Samuel Libby m. Sarah Wells, dau. of John Wells of Wells, Me.; that he lived in Portsmouth, N.H.; that he died a young man and that his widow married Samuel Waterhouse. It would seem that this must have been the John Wells who married Sarah Littlefield, and who was the son of Thomas Wells, a physician who settled in Ipswich, Mass. in 1635, took the Freeman's oath at Boston, Mass. 1637 and removed to Wells in 1657. Bourne in his History of Kennebunk, says Sarah Wells, above mentioned, married 1st Samuel Libbey of Salem, Mass., who was killed by the Indians in their assault on Haverhill Aug. 29, 1703, and that she married 2nd about Dec. 10, 1710, John Sayer of Newbury. The Wells Genealogy states that Sarah Wells, dau. of John Wells married 1st Samuel Sibley and 2nd John Sayer and the Newbury, Mass. records show a marriage Int. between John Sayer or Sawyer and Sarah Sybley Nov. 25, 1710.

Both Bourne and the Wells Genealogy, however, are wrong in the name of Sarah Well's first husband for in the York County, Me. deeds we find recorded "Articles of Agreement between John Wells, Thomas Wells, Nathaniel Clark & Patience Clark his wife, and Thomas Wells in y^e right of Sarah Libbey, all of them Children to John Wells late of Wells Deceased concerning the Division of y^e Estate that did belong to their father Deceased Intestate." The Agreement begins as follows, "Imprimis/ It is agreed that Thomas Wells have in behalf of himself and of our Sister Sarah Lybboy" certain land adjoining that of Joseph Sayer, and is dated Apr. 3, 1702. Sarah was not there to sign the agreement.

Now Aug. 27, 1700, Samuel Waterhouse conveys to his brother, Timothy his interest in thirteen acres of land given them by their father, and the deed is signed by him and his wife Sarah. This wife could not have been Samuel Libby's widow, however, for she was still Sarah Libbey when the above agreement was signed in 1702. Nevertheless, Samuel Waterhouse did marry Samuel Libby's widow, at least, at a later time, for in a deed dated June 14, 1712, he and "Sary his wife formerly the wife and Helect of Samuel Libbey deceased," both of Portsmouth, conveys 14 acres of land, "being the parcel allotted to Samuel Libby when the common was divided between the inhabitants."

According to references in several documents Samuel Waterhouse was a cordwainer or shoemaker, and probably lived on the premises described in the following deed.

Be it Known unto all men thses Presents that I Rich'd Webber of Portsm^o Prov of N. Hamp in New England *Taylor for & in Consideration of ye full sum of twenty five pounds or Currnt mony of N. England in hand received before y^e Sealing & delivery of these presents wth^{ch} I acknowledge myself fully satisfied contented & paid by these presents have bargained & sold & do by these presents bargain Sell alien assign sett-over convey release deliver & confirm unto Sam^l Waterhouse of y^e same place cordwainer all my right title interest possession & reversion in & unto one acre of land scituate lying & being near unto the meeting house in Portsm & a dwelling house wch^{ch} now stands upon the S- acre of land aforesd & on y^e left hand of y^e path or high way from sd- meeting house & fronting on sd highway six poles from the land of Peter Hanfield southerly & so backward & down into the land of ye said Hanfields land by same breadth twenty six poles & two thirds of a pole as it is now bounded and Staked together with all privileges & aptinaces thereunto belonging or in any wise apptaining to have & to hold y^e sd house & acre of land so bounded & staked be it more or less to him y^e sd Saml Waterhouse his heirs Exec- Adms or assigns forever to have hold occupie improve possess & injoy to him his heirs & assigns forever without y^e let hindrance or disturbance of me y^e Sd Rich Webber me my heirs Exec Adm or assigns or any other pson or Psons from by or under me these or either of these free & clear & freely & clearly acquitted from all & all manner of claim rights titles or interests (excepting Passen right) dower or titles of lower or any incumbrance whatsoever and do hereby promise to Save & keep harmless ye Sd Sam. Waterhouse from all former & other gifts grants sales bargain dower or titles of dower had made or done or to be had made or done or any other pson or psons from by under me my heirs Exec. and Adm unto Sd Saml Waterhouse his heirs Exec. Adm. & assigns In Witness whereof I have hereunto set my hand & seal The Fifth Day of July one thousd Seven hund 1700 further it is Indented & agreed by & between y^e Sd Rich Webber & y^e Sd Saml Waterhouse & y^e Sd Waterhouse him his heirs & assigns

shall make & keep a sufficient fence between ye sd bargained premises & ye land of Mr John Hunking deceased & now in possession of Eliz^a Fernald y^e sd Hunkings daughter unto to w^{ch} ye sd bargained premises doth adjoyn at his & his heirs & assigns own proper cost & charge y^t y^e sd Hunking heirs & assigns may in no wise suffer damage on y^e forfeiture of sd premises or at law shall allow forever.

Signed Sealed & Delivered)

In psence of me

John Walker

John Preston

James Leavitt

Richard Webber

her

Lidia X Webber

mark

Rich Webber of Portsmouth personally appeared before me ye subscriber and of her Maj^{ties} J-h of Peace at Portsmouth in ye Prov of New Hamp. this 16th Sept. 1707 & acknowledged ye above instrum to be his act & deed

Sam^l Penhallow.

Samuel Waterhouse was one of the original proprietors of the Town of Barrington, N.H., and his widow sold his portion, consisting of twenty acres, Aug. 14, 1732 to Joseph Holmes of Portsmouth.

In a "List of Soldiers names: and Time they Served att her Majesties ffourt M and Mary: at New Castle in the province of New Hampshire. New England 1708" Samuel Waterhouse's name appears, he having served from June 17 to July 28. In 1717 he was rated to the old meeting house..

We have found no record of his death, but he was taxed on the the South side of the Mill Dam and the last year his name appears on the list was in 1718. The next year and up to 1725 his widow was taxed for the same property so that he probably died in 1718 or early in the next year. No administration on his estate appears.

No list of his children has been discovered, but the following deed which conveys the same property which he bought of Richard Webber, as per above deed, would seem to show conclusively that the Grantees were his children. Furthermore we know that they must have been

the children of Samuel or of his brothers Richard or Timothy and the administration papers on the estate of Richard, and Timothy's will show that they did not belong to them.

This Indenture made the twenty seventh Day of February Anno Domini one Thousand Seven Hundred & forty six & in the twentyeth Year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lord George the second by the Grace of God of Great Britain France & Ireland King Defender of the faith Between Samuel Waterhouse of Boston in ye County of Suffolk and Province of the Massachusetts Bay in New England Mariner for himself and as he is Attorney to William Waterhouse of Arrundel ye County of York & province aforesaid Cordwainer John Waterhouse of Boston aforesaid Barber and Robert Hart of Portsmouth in ye Province of New Hampshire Tanner and Elizabeth his wife on the part and Jotham Odiorne Jun^r of Portsmouth aforesaid Merchant of the other part Witnesseth that ye sd Samuel Waterhouse for himself and in his sd Capacity of Attorney for & in Consideration of the Sum of One Hundred and Fifty Pounds Old Tenor to him in hand ***** and by these Presents doth fully and Absolutely Give ***** and Confirm unto ye Said Jotham Odiorne his heirs and assigns forever One Acre of land Situate lying and being near unto the Meeting House in Portsmouth aforesaid and a Dwelling House which now stands upon the sd Acre of Land ***** In Witness whereof I the sd Saml Waterhouse have hereunto set my hand & seal the day & Year first within written.

Signed Sealed & Delivered)	Saml Waterhouse.
in presence of us)	
Joe Marion)	
John Lillie)	

Suffolk ss Boston Feb.27,1746, Cap. Samuel Waterhouse above named Acknowledged ye above Written Instrument as his free & Voluntary Act & Deed in his own Name & in his said Capacity of Attorney Before me

Joshua Winslow J.Pec.

Recorded 13,Oct.1752.

We have no record of the death of Samuel Waterhouse's widow. The last mention of her we find in New Hampshire records was in 1732 when she signed a deed as the widow of Samuel W. late of Portsmouth. It is probable that she removed to Newington, N.H., close by Portsmouth living, perhaps, with her son William, and later removed to Wells, Me., as would appear by the following entry in the Church records of Kennebunk, then a part of Wells. "May 7,1758 Sarah the wife of Samuel Wa-

terhouse dismissed from the Church in Newington rec'd to full communion in this Church." Some years previous to this William Waterhouse had removed from Newington to Arundel, Me., which town adjoined Wells.

CHILDREN:-

Probably all born in Portsmouth.

14. I. Samuel Waterhouse.

15. II. William " . b. about 1707.

16. III. John " . b. 1709.

IV. Elizabeth " . mar. Robert Hart, of Portsmouth.

V. Jacob " . bap. Sept. 14, 1712, prob. died in infancy.

5

SAMUEL³ WATERHOUSE, (Richard² Richard¹) born probably in Portsmouth, N.H., in 1706, married first Elizabeth -----, born in 1707. She died 1736, and is buried in Portsmouth. He married second, before Dec. 26, 1739, Mrs. Deborah Sumner, widow of Isaac Sumner, and daughter of John and Sarah Shackford, of Portsmouth, as shown by John Shackford's will, together with a warrant dated Feb. 17, 1743, to attach some property in which Deborah Waterhouse is mentioned as one of the latter's children.

Samuel Waterhouse was a sea captain and later a shopkeeper in Portsmouth. He is taxed on the South side Gafford's Lane from 1727, to 1743, his name appearing as Captain. The tax lists for the next few years are missing. In 1728 his father gave him a lot of land as described in the following deed.

To All people to whom these presents shall come Richard Waterhouse of Portsmouth in New Hampshire in New England Barriner Sendeth Greeting Know y^e yt the sd Richard Waterhouse for y^e natural love & affection he beareth unto his well beloved son Sam^l Waterhouse of Portsmouth aforesaid Barriner hath given **** unto his said son Samuel Waterhouse ***** one Certain piece or Lott of land Situate lying & being in Portsmouth aforesaid being buttred & bounded as Followeth viz. Beginning at ye land of Mr. George Peirce of Portsmouth aforesaid Blacksmith on ye Easterly side of y^e street y^t leads from y^e *Cannow Bridge (Commonly so

called) to Pickerins Mills And from said George Peirces land to Run towards ye s^d Richard Watterhouse Dwelling House thirty six feet & Fronting on ye aforesd street and Carring that same Breadth of thirty six feet back by ye Land of ye aforesaid George Peirce the whole depth of the said Richard Watterhouse Land be it one hundred feet more or less to geather with all ye Privileges & unto ye s^d Samuel Watterhouse **** also Sarah the wife of the s^d Richard Watterhouse lo by these Presents Give yield by and surrender all her Right of Lowry & power of thirds of in & unto all y^e before Given & Granted premisses unto her s^d Son Samuel Waterhouse ***** In witness whereof they the s^d Richard Waterhouse & Sarah his wife have hereunto set their Hands & Seals this Twenty fifth Day of July Anno Domini 1728.

Richard Watterhouse
her
Sarah X Watterhouse
mark

In 1736 Samuel Waterhouse bought land of John Banfill as shown by the following extracts from the deed:-

To all Christian People to whom these psepts shal come know ye yt I John Banfield of Portsm In ye Pro^c of N. Hamps^d in N. Engld Husbandman for & in Consideration of ye sum of Two Hundred & Ninety five Pounds in money In Cur^t Bills of Crdt to me in Hand pd *** by Capt. Samuel Waterhouse of said Portsm Marrin^e **** Convey to ye sd Saml Waterhouse *** a certain pecl of land containing Eleven Acres & one hundred & thirty rod Scituate & lying & Being In ye Township of Portsm aforesd Butting & Bounding & lying as followeth Beginning at a yellow Birch w^{ch} stands on ye Northerly Side of ye Road yt goes from ye Town to Sagamore Creek & runs on ye Northerly side of ye sd Road thirty three rod Southerwesterly to a Stake then it runs North fifty-five-Degrees-Westly-to a little pine thirty six rod Eighty Two Degrees Wly to a stake then it runs north fifty five Degrees Westly to a little pine thirty six rod then it runs north fifty nine Degrees Eastly twenty two rod then it runs North Seventy seven Degrees Eastly forty six rod to a little white oak then it runs South Seventeen Degrees Eastly thirty one rod to sd Birch where it Began ***** In confirmation of al ye above written I ye sd John Banfill have hereunto set my hand & seal this 8th day of Dec An^o Dom. 1736 & In ye 10th year of his Maj^s Reign George ye 2d over Great Britain King &c

John Banfill.

In 1744 Samuel and his brother Arthur divide their father's estate between them as will be seen by the following document:-

To all People to whom these Presents shall come Greetings - Whereas Samuel Waterhouse of Portsmouth in the Prov. of N.H., shopkeeper & Arthur Waterhouse of Portsmouth aforesaid Mariner are & Hand Siezed & Possessed as parcenors or Tenants in common of & in all the Real Estate which belonged & of Right Appertained unto their Father Rich:- Waterhouse Late of Portsmouth aforesaid Mariner deceased and to ye end that full & final Partition & Division should be thereof made Have Covenanted Granted & Agreed in manner & form following viz. that thesaid Arthur shall have as his full share part & portion thereof all that Lot of Land

fronting Easterly on that Street leading to the Mill Dam (so called) over the Stone Bridge heretofore called the Canoe Bridge - Northerly is bounded by Land of Nathani Rogers Esq- Westerly by land of George Pierce & Southerly by Land of ye sd Saml in part- part & partly by Land before the House standing on said lot which is left Open for a Common Passage between the House & the House of the said Samuel being bounded as the Fences round said lot now stand with all the buildings & apprt thereto belonging. To Have & to Hold the said Lot of land & Premises unto him the said Arthur his Heirs & assigns to his & their proper use Benefit & Behoof forever in Severalty Moreover the said Arthur shall have hold & Enjoy to him & his heirs only (without the power of assigning Conveying or Leasing or Letting the same) the Privilege of the Passage or Way up between the said Houses viz. the Dwelling House of the said Samuel & the the house standing on the said Lot being the same which was heretofore the Dwelling House of the said Rich^d as far as the North West Corner of the said Samuel then to run off on a Square till it comes even with the Northerly side of said Samuel's Garden or as far as the Stone Wall behind his said House runs Northward then to run off on a Square to the sd Wall which Passage shall be & Remain open for the Common Use & Benefit of the said parties Limited as aforesaid- And the said Samuel shall have as his full Share part & portion of the said Estate all & every part portion & member thereof besides & Excepting what is hereby set off & Granted to the said Arthur as above expressed To Have & to Hold all & every part of the said Estate (except as aforesaid) to him the said Samuel his Heirs & Assigns to his & their proper use Benefit & Behoof in Severalty forever. And the said parties for themselves their several & Respective Heirs do hereby Mutually Release & quit Claim to each other all Right title Claim Interest & Demand whatsoever of in & Unto the parts portions & Shares of the said Estate Respectively set off to the other of them in manner aforesaid I Testimony whereof the said parties have hereunto set their hands & seals the twenty Eighth of Aug. 1744, & in the Eighteenth year of his Majesty's Reign

Signed, Sealed & Deliv)

Saml Waterhouse

In presence of us (the word)

Deborah Waterhouse

Samuel on the side hereof)

being first Interlined) Thos)

Prov. of New Hampshire Aug. 28, 1744.

Peirce)

Saml Waterhouse & Deborah Waterhouse his

Geo Peirce)

wife appeared & acknowledg'd the forego-

ing Instrumt to be their free Act & Deed

Esfor Tho. Peirce Jus. Peace

Received & Recorded 11th Jan. 1762.

The following is Samuel Waterhouse's will:-

IN THE NAME OF GOD AMEN. The Twenty Sixth day of December in the year of our Lord Christ one thousand seven hundred and forty-four I Saml Waterhouse of Portsmouth in New Hampshire in New England Mariner being sick and Weak in Body, but of Sound and perfect memory (Praise be Given to God for the same) And knowing the uncertainty of this Life and

being desirous to Settle things in Order do make and Ordain this my last will and Testament in manner and form following. That is to say) First and principally I Commend my soul to God Assuredly Believing that I shall receive full pardon, and free Remission of all my Sins and be saved by the precious death and Merits of my blessed Saviour and Redeemer Christ Jesus and my body to the Earth from whence it was taken. To be buried in such Decent & Christian manner as to my Executor hereafter named shall be thot meet. And as thouching such worldly Estate as the Lord in mercy has blessed me with I Give and Dispose of the same in the following manner. Imprimis my will is that my just Debts and funeral Charges be paid by my Executor as hereafter. Item I give and Bequeath to my beloved wife Deborah one hundred pounds (old Tenor) to be paid by my Executrix hereafter named. I also Give her two Silver Cans and all the Goods and Chattels that I had with her also I Give her the one third part of all my Real and personal Estate besides what is above mentioned to be to her use during her life then the Real Estate to return to my Children as the Rest of my Estate to be divided between them. I give & Bequeath all my Real and personal Estate of whatever name or nature soever the same may be to my two Daughters Elizabeth and Sarah to be equally Divided between them the Real Estate to be to them (after the Division) and their heirs and Assigns forever. And I do hereby nominate and appoint my Uncle Mark Langdon to be the sole Executor of this my last will and Testament and I do hereby Revoke disannull and make void all other wills and bequests by me heretofore made Allowing and holding this and no other to be my last will and Testament. In Witness whereof I have hereunto set my hand and seal.

Witnesses	the Words (uncle Mark Langdon) & Executor
Thos. Hatch	amended before Sealing or Signing & the words
Jacob Randell	(the Real Estate) was Interlined before en-
James Jeffrey	sealing

Samuel Waterhouse

(Seal)

Samuel Waterhouse's Inventory, or rather that of his estate, including merchandise, which was his stock in trade as a shopkeeper, covers thirteen pages in a large record book at the Probate office and amounts to A 3901-6-1. It is dated 27 Feb. 1744 and is sworn to by Mark Langdon. The following are some of the items:-

A clock with a Mahogany	£60 - 0 - 0.
1 Vol in Quarto of Doctr Jacobs Sermons on the 9th Chap.	
Epist to ye Romans	1 - 5 - 0.
An Exposition upon ye Epistle to ye Collossians by	
Matt ^l Bifield	0 - 12 - 0.
Bible	0 - 30 - 0.
The Art of Navigation containing Easy Rules for finding	
the Latitude	0 - 10 - 0.
2 Marriners Compasses 16/ Marriners Callender 5/	1 - 1 - 0.

A Rationale on the book of Common Prayer by Anthony Sparrow,					
Bishop of Norwich			0	5	0.
1 Bible small much worn			0	7	0.
1 Vol of Richards Ecclesiastical History			0	5	6.
The second Nativity of Jesus by John Weldon of Rassin S.P.C.					
much worn			0	3	0.
The devout Christians Companion worn much			0	2	6.
Remarks on London P. William Stow			0	2	6.
A Small ps of Divinity much Broken			0	1	6.
A Journal of the Siege of Vienna			0	7	6.
1 Vol of Outways Plays much worn			0	2	6.
Ptolemys Quadrapartite			0	2	6.
The confessions of faith			0	5	6.
Three Books of Capt Waterhouse in writing consisting of					
Mathematicks Journals &c			0	3	0.
Barnet on the New Testament					
The ways to the Celestial Paradise by Robert Whittell V.D.M.					
Military Discipline by Humphrey Bland Esq					
1 Suite Cotton Curtains Counterpin Needle work			24	0	0.
1 Down Bed and Bolster, a mean bedstead Feather and Pillow					
all for Negro					
7 pr Briches 1 doz White Shirts					
129 Pewter 3 6/			38	14	0.
106 oz 13 pwt Plate 3 32/			126	16	0.
127 oz Silver Money 3 32/			204	0	0.
7 oz 8 pwt of Gold 3 5 2-2			162	16	0.
4 gold Rings					
Bills of Credit			60	0	0.
3 doz Sizors			0	90	0.
Silver Watch without the Christial					
A Dwelling house and Barn Warehouse and Wharf & Land					
whereon they Stand			1000	0	0.
A Pasture 11 1/2 Acres 3 5 23 per acre			258	15	0.
A Lot of land by Jeremiah Libbey			100	0	0.

Samuel Waterhouse died in Portsmouth, Jan. 1, 1744/5 and his will was proved Jan. 30, following. He was buried in the old Point of Graves cemetery in that town. The slate stones at the head of his grave and that of his first wife are now (1918) in a fine state of preservation and the following inscriptions on them are perfectly legible.

Here Lyes y ^o Body OF	Also M ^{rs} Eliz th Waterhouse
M ^r Samuel Waterhouse	the wife of M ^r Samuel
who Dyed January	Waterhouse Aged 29
the 1st 1744/5	Years Dyed 1736
Aged 38 years	

Samuel Waterhouse's widow married John Ayer of Portsmouth. In a deed dated the 19th day of May 1758 "John Ayer of Portsmouth Gent

& Deborah his wife in her own right" sell to John Titcomb, of Dover, N.H., the lot of land that Samuel Waterhouse received from his father, Richard, with the buildings thereon standing, "which Premises were the Estate of Samuel Waterhouse late of sd Portsmouth Mariner Decd & of which he died seized the said Deborah being the Relict widow of the sd Samuel by means whereof she became & is untill the Unsealing & Delivery hereof seized of one third part of the said Premises as Dower or thirds during her Natural life."

We have no knowledge of Samuel Waterhouse's children except such as is furnished by his will and we find no further mention of the two there named.

CHILDREN:-

Probably born in Portsmouth.

1. Elizabeth Waterhouse.
11. Sarah

6

ARTHUR³ WATERHOUSE, (Richard² Richard¹) baptized in Portsmouth, N.H., Aug. 16, 1711 or 1713, married first ----- He married second Mrs. Deborah Collins, widow of William Collins, of Portsmouth, on whose estate she was granted administration Jan. 30, 1738. She became Deborah Waterhouse sometime previous to Aug. 30, 1744, which is the date of a bond in which certain parties bind themselves unto "Arthur Waterhouse of Portsmouth aforesaid Mariner & Deborah his wife as Trustees for Sarah Collins, a Minor Daughter of the sd Deborah."

Her identity is further shown by the following abstract from a deed. "Thomas Beck of Portsmouth, was Shipwright for Seven pounds and Ten Shillings to me in hand paid by Deborah Waterhouse of Portsmouth, widow, heretofore Deborah Collins wife of William Collins late of Ports-

mouth, Mariner, deceased, intestate, as she is Administratrix of all goods ~~****~~ of Tilliam Collins aforesaid. The deed was dated Sept. 18, 1747.

It is a singular fact that both Arthur Waterhouse and his brother Samuel married wives by the name of Deborah, each of whom was a widow, and each of whose former husbands died within a year or so of each other.

Arthur Waterhouse was a sea captain and resided in Portsmouth. He was first taxed in 1733, his name appearing on the list on the "South side Graffords Lane." His name is continuously on the lists from 1735 to 1744, as captain. The tax lists for the next few years are missing. Administration on his estate was granted his widow, Deborah, July 30, 1746. The Inventory of the same, dated Nov. 22, 1746, amounted to £ 1177 - 18 - 6. The following are some of the principal items,-

To the House Garden & out Houses wherein he Dwelt	£ 550 - 0 - 0.
Silver watch -----	15 - 0 - 0.
13 Pewter Dishes £13 - 0. 3 Dozen Plates £15 ---	33 - 0 - 0.
16½ ounces Wrot silver -----	29 - 14 - 0.
A Negro Boy -----	150 - 0 - 0.
4 Guineys in Gold -----	32 - 0 - 0.
Cash in Paper Money -----	40 - 0 - 0.
in a hhd 60 Gallons Rum -----	42 - 0 - 0.
9 Spackled Shirts -----	7 - 0 - 0.
Six fine white Shirts -----	18 - 0 - 0.

In 1747 Deborah Waterhouse petitioned for a division of the Estate in order that she might receive her thirds. The following is the order of the Court and the division which is rather interesting.

Province of) By the Hon^{ble} Andrew Wiggin Esq. Judge of the Probate of
)
 New Hamp) Wills & for the Prov. aforesd.

To Mark Langdon Gent Philip Read & John Griffith Shopkeepers George Walton Tanner & Thomas Pierce Cordwainer all of Portsmouth in said Province
 Greeting

Whereas Arthur Waterhouse Late of Portsmouth aforesd Mariner deceased Died Intestate administad of whose estate Was Granted unto Deborah Water-

house Widow Relict of the Said Deceased in whose Possession the Real Estate of the said Deceased Now is being Intituled to her Dower or third Part thereof according to Law has moved to have the Same Set off to her to hold in Severalty.

These are therefore to Authorize & Impower you or any three of you to set off to the Said Deborah Waterhouse her Dower of the Said Estate (to be Shewn unto you by her) by meter & bounds according to the Quality & quantity of the said Estate in as Just & Equal a Manner as May be & the Remaining part of the Said Estate to the heir of the Deceased & Make Return under your hands or the hands of any three of you upon oath unto the Judge of Probate for Said Province for the time being at or before at or before the last Wednesday of September next of your doings herein dated at Portsmouth aforesaid the 22nd Day of Aug. 1747.

By order of the Judge

William Parker Reg.

Pursuant to a Warrant Directed to us the Subscribers by the order of the Honbl Andrew Wiggin Esq. Judge of the Probate of Wills &c for the Province of New Hamp dated Aug. 22, 1747 To set off to Deborah Waterhouse Widow Relict of Arthur Waterhouse late of Portsmouth in Said Province Deceased to the said widow Now these may Certify all Concerned that we have Set off to the said Widow Part of the cellar beginning at the North East Corner from the inside of the Northernmost Sill running from thence Seven foot & ten inches to the Southward Carrying that same breadth to the West end of the cellar & also set off to the abovesaid Widow Eastermost most Lower Room & closet also part of the Eastermost Chamber beginning at the South east Corner of said Chamber running from thence to the Northward Eleven foot to the North side of the Eastermost Window Running from thence between the Door & chimney thirteen foot & seven inches to a mark in the floor & from thence towards the Door twenty one inches to a mark in the floor from thence to the South side of the house or chamber Six foot & five inches Also set off to the above said Widow Nine foot of the Westernmost Garrett that is to say beginning at the West end of said Garrett Carrying the whole breadth of the Garrett Nine foot to the Eastward with a Vacancy behind the Garrett Door Also set off to the said Widow the Land at the East End of the House & the Land at the North side of said House all to the Eastward of within two foot Nine Inches to the Eastward of the *(Londtwo)(Lentey)

It is also agreed by us that the said Widow Shall have the Liberty to transport anything yt she may have occasion to Transport at the Cellar Great Doors at the south Side of the house & also the Liberty of passing & repassing in the yard the Entry way & stairs from the Lower floor to the Garrett also a way to pass & repass from the southwest corner of the House to a Little House at the Westernmost end of the garden with the use of said Little house as near the fence as can be conveniently

It is also agreed by us that the Said Cellar Great Door & the yard the Entry way Stairs and way to the said Little house all be in Common for the use of all that may live in the said house at any time hereafter & what Partitions is made shall be the Cost for the Widow to Pay one third thereof & the other Party two third Parts thereof the Remainder of the abovesaid Real Estate to be to the Heir Witness our hands the 25th Day of August Anno Dom 1747

Mark Langdon

Philip Reed

George Walton Jr.

It will be noted that at the close of this document it says that the remainder of the estate is to go the heir which would indicate that at that time Arthur Waterhouse had only one child living.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Portsmouth.

17. I Samuel Waterhouse bap. in Portsmouth, Feb.18,1738.

II Richard " " in " Dec.19,1741 or 1742 d. inf.

III Deborah " " in " Mar.24,1744 or 1745 d.inf.

7

MARGARET⁵ WATERHOUSE (Timothy², Richard¹), baptised in Portsmouth; July 25, 1706 or 1708, married about 1715 Samuel, son of John and Mary (Cloper) Brewster, born Apr.30,1692,

He was a housewright and they lived at Portsmouth Plains. Adm. papers were granted his widow Margaret, July 28,1752.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Portsmouth.

I Margaret Brewster m. ----- Forbush, of Boston, Mass. and d.in young womanhood.

II Samuel Brewster moved to Barrington,N.H., and m. Jan.30,1738, Sarah Herwood.

III Moses Brewster b. 1739, m. Jane ---- and d. Dec.1807, aged 78. He inherited the old homestead at the Plains.

IV Timothy Brewster d. at twenty-one years of age.

V John " went to sea and was never heard from.

VI Abigail " bap. in Portsmouth, Feb.13,1731/2, m. Sept. 2,1750, Leader Nelson,b. in Portsmouth, Aug.30,1724. He was the son of Joseph Nelson. Leader and his wife removed to Barrington, N.H., but in a few years returned to Portsmouth where they lived until about 1760 when they removed to West Newfield,Me.,and resided there until their death. He d. Sept.16,1820. She d. Jan. 28,1806.

Children:-

I. Samuel Nelson b. July 5,1732, prob. in Barrington,N.H., m. Jan. 16,1777, Abigail, dau. of John and Mary (Young) Caskor, bap. Sept. 20,1754.

He was a cooper and lived in Portsmouth N.H., and Newbury, Mass. Later he settled in Barnstead, N.H., where he lived until his death in 1802. He was one of the leading citizens and left a great estate in land. His widow d. about 1830, in Wheelock, Vt.

Children:-

1. Jonathan Nelson. Was a Free Baptist minister in Wheelock.
2. Mary Nelson, m. Moses Chesley, of Barnstead.
3. Abigail Nelson, m. Reuben Willard and removed to Boston, Vt.
4. Samuel Nelson, m. Abigail Tasker, his cousin, dau. of Joseph.

Children:-

1. Sally Nelson, m. John Tilton.
11. Abigail " m. Robey Towle.
5. Richard Nelson, removed to Salem, Mass. and d. before 1832.
6. John Nelson, m. Olive Kaime and lived in Barnstead where he d. before 1826.
2. Joseph Nelson b. Dec. 28, 1753.
3. Mary " b. June 5, 1756, m. John Taylor.
4. Ann " b. Mar. 23, 1758, m. Samuel Dam of West Newfields or vicinity.
5. Richard Nelson b. Jan. 9, 1760, m. Elizabeth Pulkinghoon. He was a schoolmaster in Portsmouth and d. before 1790.
6. Daniel Nelson b. Jan. 15, 1760.
7. Margaret " b. Feb. 17, 1764, m. Joseph Dam, bro. to Samuel above.
8. Abigail Nelson b. 1768, m. William Campernell.
9. Lydia " b. Oct. 10, 1770.

- VII Mary Brewster m. Samuel Winkley, of Barrington, N.H.
- VIII Daniel " m. Lived in Portsmouth previous to the Revolution but in 1775 removed to Rochester, N.H. In 1795 he located in Wolfboro in the same state.
- IX David Brewster b. 1739, m. Mary, dau. of John Gains. David was a joiner and lived on Deer St. Portsmouth, in 1766. He had a son Samuel who had a son Charles Warren Brewster, who was the author of "Rambles about Portsmouth," from which we have frequently quoted.
- X William Brewster, (Colonel) b. 1741, m. Ruth, dau. of Zachariah Foss and d. May 3, 1818.
- XI Paul Brewster moved to Barrington, N.H.
- XII Margaret Brewster (2nd) m. Jan. 3, 1770, Joseph Hayes, of Barrington, N.H.
- XIII Lydia Brewster m. Joseph Hicks of Madbury, N.H. He was the owner of Hick's Hill in that town.

43-4

8

MARY³ WATERHOUSE (Timothy,² Richard¹,) bap. in Portsmouth, N.H., July 25, 1706, married John Spinney of Kittery, Me., July 10, 1729.

He was a ship carpenter. It is said they had three sons and a daughter, all of whom died young, but in due time their family was restored having again three sons and a daughter. The following are all the names we have found.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Spinney b. 1733. m. ----

Children:-

1. Samuel Spinney.
2. Jeremiah "
3. George "
4. William "
5. John "

He was a fisherman and settled in Elliott, Me. Brewster in his Rambles about Portsmouth gives the following graphic account of him. "He was portly in person, upright in posture, of dark skin, long beard, and was invariably clad in petticoat trousers and a pea-jacket so covered with patches of every color that it was a matter of doubt which was the original.

A blue knit cap was drawn close to his head, and red edging and ear pieces turned up around. His adhesion to this cap gave him the name of "Cap Spinney." He was also commonly known as "Old Neptune." He was a man of system and independence and his routine of business was strictly adhered to. He would leave his house in Elliott at any time between midnight and daylight, and alone in his canoe proceed to the mouth of the river. When the tide required him to leave before he had finished his sleep on reaching the fishing ground he would bait his hooks, giving one turn of his line around the thole pins, and then another around his wrists, and compose himself to sleep. When the fish bit the check at the thole pin would secure it, and the slight pull at his wrists would notify him to take it in. He would then rebait, redrink, and continue his nap. In due time he might be seen coming up the river and rowing into the market landing. To the calls "Have you any fish?" no reply would be made. As soon as his painter was fastened he would raise his caddy cover take out his cocoanut

shell, visit a particular shop near the market, get it filled with "O be joyful," then return to his boat, take his seat, raise the cocoanut to his mouth and take two or three swigs, resting each with a smack of his lips, then depositing it safely in the cuddy, he would uncover his fish and give notice, "Now, gentlemen, I am ready for business." By the time his fish were sold his shell would need replenishing, and then with another swig he would push off into the stream, and in his boat proceed almost intuitively to his home. Thus year after year he went through the same routine, until in 1832, on the 4th day of July,- a day which he regarded as worthy of a particular observance in his way,- his boat struck against Portsmouth bridge, and at the age of seventy-three he closed his life in that river on which he had almost lived for three score and ten years. He left about fifteen hundred dollars as the result of his labors, and the reputation of a friendly disposition to man and beast. His like we have never since looked upon."

6. Davis Spinney. We quote from Brewster the following facts concerning his life. "He was probably the last survivor of the workmen on the U.S. Frigate "Congress", built at Badger's Island, Portsmouth Harbor, in 1799. His name appears on the pay roll for that year as receiving 58 and 1/3 cents per day. He was then twenty-eight years old. The highest pay on the roll of eighty nine men was two dollars per day, and but two master workmen received that. The average pay of the whole was about 83 cents. A remarkable incident marked his old age. For many years his hair had been very white but during the last part of his life it all came off and a new growth of fine silken black hair grew out, covering his head (excepting a part which had been previously bald) and so continued until his death.

9

JOSEPH³ WATERHOUSE (Timothy²; Richard¹) born in Portsmouth, N.H., April 11, 1711, married first, June 12, 1735, Mary Libby, born in Scarborough, Me., April 12, 1712. She was the dau. of Samuel and Mary Libby. Was adm. to the church in Scarborough Jan. 3, 1742. Her father's will proved July 8, 1754, contained the following bequest, viz.- "To my daughter Mary Waterhouse ye Thatch Bed, adjoining to her husband's Marsh and likewise thirty four pounds Six Shillings & eight pence lawful Money to be paid in

Household Goods or in Cattle by my Son Enoch Libbee within two years after my Decease, to be paid her in either of the above Species as She shall chuse." Mary Waterhouse died in Scarboro, Nov.27,1756, and Joseph married second, Feb.10,1757, Mrs. Rachel Norman Smith.

Joseph Waterhouse's name appears on the Portsmouth tax list for the years 1733-4 but previous to June 1735 he removed to Scarboro and the next year bought the following property upon which he settled and which has remained in possession of the family to the present time, (1918.)

To all Christian People to whom these Presents Shall come Greeting Know ye that I Nathaniel Dresser of Scarborough in y^e County of York in y^e Province of the Massachusetts Bay in New England yeoman do for and in Consideration of the Sum of forty Shillings to me in hand before y^e Ensealing hear of well & truly paid by Joseph Waterhouse of y^e Town & County afore said Tanner the Receipt whereof I do hereby Acknowledged and my Self thare with fully Satisfied & Contented and thare of & of every part & parcel thareof do Exonerate acquit & Discharge y^e sd Joseph Waterhouse his heirs Executors and administrators for ever by these Presents have Given Granted bargained Sold alined Conveyed & Confirmed and by these presents do freely fully & absolutely give grant bargain Sell aline Convey and Confirm unto him y^e sd Joseph Waterhouse his heirs & assigns forever one Messuage or tract of Land Situate lying and being in Scarborough in y^e County above sd Containing one forth part of an Acre or thareabouts butted & bounded as fowloweth viz. begining at willmoths brook below the Bridg that Goeth over sd brook and on ye Easterly Side of sd brook & then running Six poles South East then Running Six poles East North East then Running north north west to the highway then Running by sd high way to y^e brook afore sd To Have & to Hold said granted & bargained premises with all the appurtenances priviledges & Commodities to the Same belonging or in any wise appertaining to him the said Joseph Waterhouse his heirs and Assigns forever to his and their only proper use benefit & behoofe forever and I the said Nath^l Dresser for my Self my heirs Executors & admis do Covenant promase and Grant to and with the sd Joseph Waterhouse his heirs and Assigns that before y^e Ensealing hereof I am y^e true Sole & Lawfull owner of the above bargained premises and am lawfully Seised & possst of y^e Same in my own proper Right of Inheritance in fee Simple & have in my Self Good Right full power and Lawful authority to grant bargain Sell Convey & Confirm sd bargained premises in manner as above sd and that y^e sd Joseph Waterhouse his heirs and assigns shall & may from time to time & at all times forever hear after by force and vertue of these Presents lawfully Peaceably and quiatly have hold use occupi posses & Enjoy y^e sd Demised and bargained premisses with the appurtenances free and Clear and freely and Clearly acquitted Exhonerated and Discharged of from all and all manner of former or other Gifts grants bargains Sales leases mortgages wills Entails Joyntures Doweries Judgments Executions Incumbrances or Extents Furthermore I the sd Nath^l Dresser for my Self my heirs Executors & admrs do Covenant and Engage the above Demised to him the sd Joseph Waterhouse his heirs and assigns a-

gainst the Lawfull Clames or demands of any person or persons whatsoever to warrant Secure and defend furthermore I Elizabeth Dresser the wife of ye aforsd Nath^l Dreser do by thes prezants frely & willingly Give yeald up and Surrender all my Right of dowry and power of thirds in and unto y^e above demised primises unto the sd Joseph Waterhouse his heirs & assigns In witness whereof we have hereunto Set our hands and Seals this thirteenth day of february one thousand Seven hundred and thirtie-six and in ninth year of our Soveran Lord George y^e Second & now the afore S^d Jos. Waterhouse is to make and mantain a Good Lawful & Suficant fonce between the above S^d Land and y^e sd Dressers other lands forever -- now before Ensealing and Delivery the words paid in the Sixth Line being Struck out and y^e words north in y^e twenty Second Line Enterlined.

Signed Sealed and

Nathaniel Dresser. (Seal)

Delivered in Presence of

John Norman

her
Elizabeth X Dresser (Seal)
mark

Martyn Joss

York ss Scarborough March 31st 1738.

Dresser Personally Appeared before me the Subscriber and acknowledged this Instrument to be his free act & Deed.

Roger Dearing Jus Peace.

Joseph Waterhouse was a tanner and shoemaker, which together with farming enabled him to gain quite a property. The following is one of his bills as printed in Southgate's "History of Scarboro."

Mar. 2, 1748. Jos. Waterhouse's Bill for Leather and Work done for the Country, vizt.

To leather straps and strings for Tomas Foss	---	0	-	14	-	0.
To a pr moksens for tomas Foss and strings	- -	1	-	16	-	0.
To a pr moksens for Mr Roberts	- - - - -	1	-	16	-	0.
To 2 leather strings & leather to mend snow shoes for tira-hanes	- - - - -	1	-	0	-	0.
To part making a pr snow shoes	- - - - -	1	-	0	-	0.
and leather &c by James Libby	- - - - -	0	-	10	-	0.
To leather for Walter Foss belt & two straps	-	0	-	10	-	0.
		6	-	6	-	0.

Nov. 3rd, 1741 he and Samuel Libby bought eighty acres of land in Scarboro "lying between John Bryant his Lot & Benja^a Johnson his Lot Bounded as follows beginning at an Apple Pine Tree marked J.W. & from thence runs One Hundred & Sixty Pole East North East & then runs Eighty Pole North North East & then runs One Hundred & Sixty Pole West South

West & thence runs Eighty Poles South South East to the beginning."
 This property was bought of James Springer of Falmouth, Me. Mar. 6,
 1742/3 he bought fifty acres of Joseph Moody. July 5, 1742 he bought
 thirty acres in Scarboro of James Jewell of Contoocook, N.H. Jan. 17,
 1747 he bought four acres of salt marsh of John Sawyer. Oct. 24 of the
 same year he bought sixty acres of Charles Frost. These purchases put
 him in possession of a good sized farm.

We find the following on record in the Registry of Deeds at
 Alfred, Me., regarding the property left Joseph Waterhouse by his fa-
 ther in Portsmouth, N.H.

"Know all men by these Presents That I Timothy Waterhouse of
 New Port Rhode Island Chairmaker Do by these Presents for me my heirs
 Exe and assigns forever do Quit Claim unto my Brother Joseph Waterhouse
 his heirs & assigns forever of or unto that Part of our Honred Father
 Deceased Estate that our said father by his Last Will & Testament Gave
 to ye said Joseph Waterhouse & his heirs it being his homestead or farm
 where our said Father Lived In Witness where of I have hereunto set my
 hand & Seal this Twenty ninth Day of May 1749."

This instrument was acknowledged by Timothy before a Justice
 of the Peace in Biddeford, Me., on the date above mentioned.

It will be remembered that the above property was left to Jo-
 seph "as a feirm Intailment forever" The writor has heard his grand-
 mother, who was a grand-daughter of Joseph, say that she had been told
 that the property was entailed and that the entailment was broken.
 Perhaps the following agreement was entered into for that purpose. It
 is headed thus,-

"Agreement in regard to land and buildings in Portsmouth -
 leading to common recovery."

"This Indenture Tripartite made & Executed by and Between Joseph Water-
 house of Scarborough in ye County of Cumberland in ye Province of ye
 Massachusetts Bay Tanner by George Gains of Portsmouth in ye Province
 of New Hampshire joiner his attorney of ye first part & Richard Fitz-
 gerald of said Portsmouth Taylor of ye second part and John Bennet of
 Portsmouth aforesaid Gent of the third part Witnesseth That ye Jos: Wa-
 terhouse For and in Consideration of ye matters & things herein after
 Expressed & for ye sum of five Shillings to him in hand paid by ye said
 Richard Fitzgerald the Receipt whereof is hereby Acknowledged Hath in
 manner & form aforesaid given & granted & by these Presents Doth in

form aforesaid give grant remise release & Convey unto him ye said Richard his heirs & Assigns All that thirteen acres of Land in Portsmouth aforesaid fronting on Piscataqua River near a Place called ye Pulpit bounded Southerly & Easterly by land of M^r Ham Northerly by land of Samuel Sherburne Esqr. being about thirty one rods in breadth laying between the land of ye said Ham & ye said Sherburne and on ye East is bounded with ye said river with all ye Buildings thereon being ye late Mansion house & land which was part of ye real Estate of Timothy Waterhouse ye same being now in ye Actual Seizin & Possession of him ye said Richard To Have & To hold the said granted & released premises unto him ye said Richard Fitzgerald his heirs & Assigns to ye use of ye said Joseph Waterhouse his heirs and Assigns forever & for ye better Corroboration of these Presents & for ye barring & Cutting off & wholly Extinquishing of all & all manner of Estates Tail & other Estates & remainders limited made & done or Executed of in & Concerning ye premises or any part thereof by ye said Timothy Waterhouse or any other person or Persons it is Covenanted Concluded & fully agreed by and between all ye Parties aforesaid that ye said Richard Fitzgerald and his heirs shall and will Permit & Suffer ye said John Bennet to bring & Pursue again to him ye said Richard Fitzgerald one or more Writ or Writs of Entry on Desseisin in le Post returnable before his Majesty Justices of ye Court of Common pleas to be holden at Portsmouth ye first Tuesday of December next by which he said John Bennet shall Demand against him ye said Richard ye said land and premises by such Names or Name Quantities Qualities & other Distinctions & Discriptions as to ye said John Bennet shall seem meet to which said Writ or Writs ye said Richard Fitzgerald shall appear Gratis and shall Enter into ye Warranty and vouch to Warranty ye said Joseph Waterhouse who shall also appear by himself or Attorney thereunto lawfully Authorized & Enter into ye Warranty of ye said Premises & shall Vouch over ye Common Vouches which Common Vouches shall also appear to ye Warranty of ye said Premises & after make Defaults so that a good & perfect Common Recovery with double Voucher may be Duly had & Executed of ye said lands & its Appurtenances According to ye Usual & Common order & form of Common Recoveries for Assuance of Lands in such cases used And Lastly it is agreed by all ye said Parties to these Presents and thereby Declared to be their true Intent & Meaning that ye said Common Recovery so or in any other manner to be had & suffered of said Premises or any Part thereof shall be & Enure & shall be Construed Deemed & taken to be & Enure to ye use Intent & Purpose herein before mentioned and Declared & to & for no other use Intent or Purposes Whatsoever In witness Whereof the said Parties to these Presents have hereunto Interchangeably set their hands & Seals ye Sixteenth Day of November Anno Domini One thousand Seven hundred & Sixty One.

Signed Sealed & Delivered

) Joseph Waterhouse

In presence of us the following words being)

) Richard Fitzgerald

first Interlined unto him ye said Richard

) John Bennet

his heirs and assigns their use and ye

) Province of New

Words the said Joseph Warranty

) Hampshire

Mary Parker)

Nov 30, 1761

William Parker)

Then ye above named George Gains

as Attorney to Joseph Waterhouse

appeared & acknowledged that he Signed & Sealed this Instrument for and in behalf of ye above named Jos: Waterhouse & by his direction and ye said Rich. Fitzgerald & John Darnet owned their Respective hands & seals to this Instrument Subscribers & Affixed and all of them Acknowledged ye said Instrument as they are Respectively Concerned to be their free act & Deed.

Before me William Parker Just Peace

Recorded 30, Nov. 1761.

June 2, 1762, Joseph Waterhouse, his wife Rachel consenting, sells the above property to William Ham of Portsmouth for 1550 pounds old tenor Bills of Credit, "with the Reversions or Reversion thereon Depending and the Remainders thereof more Especially the Reversion of the Dower of the Widow of the said Timothy Waterhouse if she should Claim & Possess the same."

Some of the political controversies of the time are shown by the following petition called the "Scarboro Petition" and taken from the Maine Historical Society's Collection. Joseph Waterhouse's name appears first followed by fifty-four others.

"To His Excellency Francis Barnard Esquire, Captain General and Governor in Chief in and over His Majestys Province of the Massachusetts Bay the Honourable his Majestys Council and House of Representatives in General Court assembled at Boston May 1761.-----

The Freeholders & other Inhabitants of the Town of Scarborough Qualified by Law to Vote agreeable to Charter Humbly Shews,--

That in the Month of February last past Enoch Freeman Esq^r Requested of your Petitioners (by Posting up Papers at the different Publick Places at said ---) That we would give him our Votes at our March meeting for being County Register When the time for putting up the Annual warning for March came the Selectmen put an Article in the warning to Chuse a Register, Mr Small Town Clerk said it had better be in the following words, vizt 'and also to Act on anything that may be found Necessary', a Practice which we have often used and never found it disputed before-- and at the time of the said March meeting last past Edward Milliken Esq^r Being Chosen Moderator (on purpose that we might Act wisely & Safely) he having the direction of the Meeting he Order'd all Persons Qualify'd by Law to Vote to bring in their Votes for a Register of Deeds which was then done agreeable to Law Custome as we then and do still Think at least with all Humble submission to your Excellency Your Honours & Gen-

tlomen we think was consistent with the Honest intent and meaning of the Law, Especially as Enoch Freeman Esq^r affd was at the meeting with a number of his Friends from Falmouth making Interest for him before and at the very Time of the Meeting Mr Nathaniel Green was also There So that The whole Town was as well Acquainted with the Choice of a Register and also of the Candidates as they Ever could be of any Vote Notwithstanding of which the Justices of -- Inferior Court held at Falmouth this Instant May has Sett our Votes aside. We have Much more to say if Occasion Require But wont intrude on your Excellency & Your Honour's Goodness hoping the Honesty of our Request will be sufficient Therefore your Petitioners Humbly Prays That Your Excellency Your Honours and Gentlemen would Take our Case into your wise Consideration and Grant us the Privilege of our Votes as they were Honestly and Truly Voted last March or otherwise the Privilege of Voting again Before the May Sessions at Falmouth are over Being Adjourned to next July and Your Petitioners as in Duty Bound Shall Ever Pray----".

Joseph Waterhouse was admitted into full communion in the First Church in Scarpore Apr.25,1742. Not long after this the inhabitants of the Dunstan end of the town became so numerous that on March 20,1744/5 several of them,including Joseph Waterhouse, asked to be dismissed from the old church to form a new one in that locality. As few, probably, are familiar with the old church forms we print the text of the Dismissal and the form of Covenant entered into in the formation of the new church, as taken from the church records.

"A Copy of a Dismission granted by the First Church in Scarborough to a Number of Brethren in order to their embodying into a Church under the Administration of a Pastor, by themselves at Dunstan in Scarborough, Octo.7,1744."

"A number of the Church inhabiting Dunstan End of the Town viz., Job Burnam, Jona Andrews, Job Burnam Junr., Joseph Fabyan, Solo. Stone, Edw. Milliken, Thomas Burnam, Nathl. Milliken, Samll. Milliken, Robt. Munson, Danll. Burnam, Samll. Harmon, Joseph Waterhouse, Samll. Hains, Samll. Boothby, setting forth that God in his Providence has opened a Prospect of their speedy Settlement of a Gospel Ministry among them and requesting a dismission from their particular relation to this Chh. in order to their Embodying into a Chh. under the Administration of a Pastor by themselves The Chh. thereupon on Mature consideration voted their dismission and the said Job Burnam, (and the other persons above named) "were accordingly dismissed from their said relation to this church and were recommended to the grace of God for the regular and stated enjoyment of all Gospel Ordinances in Chh. relation among themselves. Also Mr Job Burnam one of the aforesaid Brethren being a Deacon of this Chh. was voted to be dismissed and discharged from his said office among them."

The following letter of dismissal was given to the women of the First Church,-

"Rev. & Beloved"

"Inasmuch as our Sisters Mary Waterhouse," (wife of Joseph, and others) "are by their Situation most convenient to partake of Gospel Ordinances among you, and have desired a dismissal from their particular Relation to this Chh. in order thereto, accordingly our said Sisters are dismissed from their said Relation to us, and we do further recommend them to the Grace of God under your Pastoral care & brotherly watch, desiring they may be received in the Lord among you & admitted to partake with you in all Gospel ways, Ordinances & Privileges. We are

Your Brethren in the faith & order of ye Gospel

W^m Thompson Pastor.

In ye name & with consent of ye Chh. Scarborough Apr.1,1745.

"A Copy of the Copt. at the Church in Dunston embody into a Chh. State."

"We whose names are hereunto Subscribed desiring to Embody ourselves into a Chh. State in this place. Do solemnly enter into Copt. with the great & glorious God. We do first of all confess ourselves unworthy of so great a favor as to be taken into Copt. with God, & admire the grace that admits us, & with a humble reliance on the aids of grace therein promised we Thankfully lay hold on his Copt. We declare our Serious belief of the Christian Religion as contained in the Sacred Scriptures & with such a view thereof as our confession of faith in the Churches has exhibited; heartily resolving to Conform our lives to the rules of our holy Religion as long as we live in the world. We give up ourselves to the Ld Jehovah who is the Father & the Son & the holy Spirit & avouch him this Day to be our God, our Father, our Saviour, & our leader & receive him as our Portion for ever. We give up ourselves to the blessed Jesus who is the Ld Jehovah and adhere to him as the head of his people in the Copt. of his grace & rely on him as our Priest Prophet & King to bring us to everlasting blessedness. We acknowledge our indispensable & everlasting obligations to glorify God in all the duties of a Godly life & particular in the duties of a Chh. State, and a Body of people associated for an Obedience to him in all the Ordinances of the Gospel and we depend on his gracious influence and assistance for the faithful discharge of the duties incumbent on us. We promise with a dependence on Gods grace to walk together as a chh. of our Lord Jesus Cht. in faith & order of the Gospel; Conscientiously attending the publick Worship of God, the Sacrement of the new Testament, the Discipline of his Kingdom & all his Institutions in Communion one with another, and watchfully avoiding Sinful Stumbling blocks & Contentions as becomes a people whom the Lord has bound together in a bundle of life. At the time we do also present our offspring with us to the Lord, purposing by his help to bring them up in the Nurture and admonition of the Lord. And all this we do flying to the blood of the Copt. for the pardon of all our sins praying that our glorious Lord who is the great Shepherd would prepare & strengthen us for every good work, to do his will, working in us that which will be well pleasing in his sight to whom be glory forever & ever Amen."

Joseph Waterhouse was elected a Constable in 1743/4 and at one time was one of the Tythingmen of the town.

He was a Revolutionary soldier serving as private in Capt. Benj.

Larrabee's Co., Col. Mitchel's Reg. on the Penobscot Expedition. He marched July 9, 1779 and was discharged Sept. 12, 1779 having served 2 mos. and 3 days. This is referred to in the History of Scarborough as the disastrous expedition to Bagaduce, now Castine, and it is said that Joseph Waterhouse was the only soldier who brought back a trophy of victory. He had ventured down into the lower part of Bagaduce alone and coming suddenly upon an English soldier, as he turned the corner of a street, he took him prisoner and without ceremony marched him into the American camp. He claimed and received the soldier's gun as a reward for his services.

He died in Scarboro, July 6, 1796.

His widow died in Scarboro, Feb. 14, 1804.

Before giving the list of Joseph Waterhouse's children it may be well to refer to a record of the same which Mr. Moses Waterhouse, of Scarboro, compiled and had printed about 1885. The writer is indebted to this record for much information, but the statement therein made that Joseph was the son of a Joseph who came from England with two brothers is incorrect, as shown by the various documents on the foregoing pages, the existence of which were unknown to Mr. Waterhouse.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Scarboro.

By 1st wife.

10. I. Ruth Waterhouse b. June 21, bap. July 18, 1736.
11. Joseph " b. Feb. 12, bap. Mar. 5, 1738. bur. Feb. 15, 1754.
111. Olive " b. Sept. 14, bap. Oct. 14, 1739, mar. July 30, 1761, William Harmon. He was a farmer and they lived in Scarboro near Scottow's hill.

No children.

12. IV. Timothy " b. July 18, bap. Aug. 30, 1741.
- V. Mary (Molly) Waterhouse b. May 31, bap. July 3, 1743. mar.

Apr. 25, 1733 Ephraim Carter, and moved to the Eastern part of the State.

20. VI. Samuel Waterhouse b. Dec. 21, 1744. bap. April 30, (1745?)
21. VII. Enoch " b. Nov. 23, bap. Dec. 21, 1746.
22. VIII. John " b. Mar. 21, 1748. bap. Mar. 27, (1748?)
23. IX. George " b. Jan. 21, 1750. bap. Jan. 7, 1749.
24. X. Theophilus " b. Dec. 17, 1751. bap. Jan. 12, 1751.
25. XI. Joseph " b. Feb. 12, bap. Mar. 17, 1754.
26. XII. Nathaniel " b. Feb. 6, bap. Feb. 8, 1756.

By 2nd. wife.

XIII. Elizabeth " b. Feb. 13, 1758, bap. Aug. 24, 1760, mar. June 7, 1781, Richard Berry. He was a farmer and settled in Scarboro. His son Elias sold his farm to Richard Waterhouse and removed to Monmouth, Me., where he bought a large farm on which he lived many years.

XIV. Susannah " b. May 13, bap. Aug. 24, 1760. mar. June 20, 1782, Timothy Berry Jr. He was a farmer and they settled in Standish, Me.

27. XV. Sarah " b. July 29, 1762, bap. May 22, 1763.

The dates of birth of the above children were taken from the record of Moses Waterhouse and the dates of baptism were taken from a copy of the records of the Scarboro church. In some instances one or the other must be incorrect.

10

TIMOTHY³ WATERHOUSE (Timothy² Richard¹) baptised in Portsmouth, N.H., Aug. or Sept. 1715, married May 11, 1738, Hannah, dau. of John and Rebecca Proud. born in Yorkshire, Eng., 1712. The records of the Friends or Quakers of Newport, R.I., give the following, - "Timothy Waterhouse, son of Timothy & Ruth Waterhouse of Portsmouth, N.H., married to Hannah Proud, of Newport,

dau. of John & Rebecca, May 11, 1738." It is said the Prouds sailed for Philadelphia but were blown into Newport by an adverse wind and liking the place settled there.

In the proceedings of the General Assembly, held for the Colony of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, at Newport the 6th day of May 1740, it was voted that Timothy Waterhouse be admitted a free-man of this Colony from Newport. He is referred to in various papers as a chair-maker and probably lived in a house fronting Liberty Square in Newport. He evidently gained a position of some influence and prominence among his fellow-townsmen for in May 1781 he was elected a Deputy to the General Assembly from Newport. In the same year he was the fifth Justice of the Court of Common Pleas for Newport County. In May, 1782 he was fourth Justice and in May 1783-4 he was third Justice of the same Court. In his capacity as Justice of the Peace he performed numerous marriage ceremonies between the years 1784-1795 and in some notices is called "Reverend."

By a deed dated Oct. 16, 1751, Timothy Waterhouse, of Newport in the county of Newport, in the Colony of Rhode Island & Providence Plantation, chairmaker, sells Mark H'g Wentworth for 200 pounds sterling in Bills of Public Credit of the New Tenor, property in Portsmouth, N.H., on Pickering's neck, it being, probably, the premises left him by his father. By a deed dated Sept. 1, 1787, Timothy and his wife Hannah convey Lawrence Clarke, all of Newport, a lot of land in that place and by a deed dated Aug. 14, 1797, "Hannah Waterhouse widow, Benjamin Waterhouse, physician, and Rebecca Waterhouse spinster, all late of Newport, N.I., and now of Cambridge, Mass., convey to Matthew Barker, blacksmith, of Newport, "for 5 \$50 Spanish Silver Milled Dollars, a certain lot of land with the Dwelling House and other improvements thereon situate lying and being in Newport aforesaid butted and bounded Northerly on a Highway or Publick Square forty feet, Easterly on a Lane or Street forty three feet.

southerly partly by James Davis's land and partly on William Oman's land fifty three feet and Easterly on a highway or Publick Street forty six feet." This was probably Timothy's home.

Timothy is spoken of as a man of good nature, of fearless honesty and practical wisdom. His wife's family were Quakers and he became a follower of this sect, but the religious scruples of these people against fighting did not deter him from warmly espousing the cause of the patriots at the time of the Revolution. His son Benjamin, in referring to a time in his life when he was rather inclined to be a Tory, thus speaks of his father's feelings regarding the matter. "This was a great source of trouble to my father who would rise from the table when some of our military parties were marching by with fife and drum and would recount to us the taking of Louisburg by the New England troops and gave his decided opinion that we were the most fearless set of men in the world." His son says further, "his Quaker garb never disguised the fearless man."

Timothy Waterhouse died in Newport, probably in 1792. The United States Chronicle of Providence, R.I., in the issue of Apr. 12, 1792, has this death notice, - "Hon. Timothy Waterhouse, at Newport, at an advanced age." The same paper in its issue of June 10, 1802, has the following death notice of his widow, - "Hannah, widow of the late Timothy Waterhouse Esq. of Newport, in 90th year, at Cambridge, Mass. She was a native of Yorkshire, Eng. She died very suddenly." The Providence Gazette in its issue of Mar. 29, 1802, had a similar notice. She evidently died at the home of her son, Benjamin.

Timothy Waterhouse had eleven children all of whom, except Benjamin and Rebecca, died before 1775. The record in the family Bible of his brother John, gives the names of those mentioned below. The vital records of Rhode Island give the names of his children Samuel, Timothy, John and Rebecca and the dates of birth of the first three. In the case

of the sons Samuel and Timothy the Rhode Island record and the family disagree and we give both, the first date being the one in the family record.

CHILDREN.-

Probably all born in Newport.

- I. Sarah Waterhouse b. April 16, 1739. d. before 1775.
- II. Samuel " b. Sept. 7 or 10, 1740. d. before 1775.
- III. Timothy " b. June 5, or 11, 1742. d. " 1775.
- IV. John " b. April 10, 1744. d. Sept. 7, 1763 Newport.
- V. Ruth " b. Feb. 24, 1745.
- VI. Benjamin " b. April 11, 1748. d. in infancy.
28. VII. Benjamin " b. Mar. 4, 1754.
- VIII. Rebecca " b. ----- 1757, d. Feb. 9, or 13, 1822, at the residence of her brother, Benjamin, in Cambridge, Mass., at the age of 65 yrs. and unmarried. The Cambridge records give the date of death as Feb. 9, and the Newport records Feb. 13.



SARAH³ WATERHOUSE (Timothy² Richard¹) baptised in Portsmouth, N.H., June 9, 1719, married Aug. 22, 1734, Captain Zachariah Foss, of Newcastle, N.H., born in 1707. Mr. Brewster in his "Rambles about Portsmouth" gives the following romantic incident of their courtship and marriage.

"Sarah Waterhouse was one day visiting her sister Ruth, Mrs. Gains, when Capt. Foss in passing, saw her. He spoke to his companion of the beauty of Mrs. Gains, when he was informed that he mistook the person. 'If that is not Cain's wife she is mine,' was the reply. His suit was successful and they were married." It is said that Capt. Foss was so unfortunate at one time as to lose nearly all of his proper-

ty, when his wife disposed of enough fine linen to obtain the means to open a place of refreshment on a small scale. As their means increased, in after years, they built a large stage and tavern house on Fleet St. We are told that once during her husband's absence at sea Mrs. Foss sold a rich brocade dress pattern and purchased the frame of a house with the proceeds.

She died Feb. 18, 1785, and he died May 12, 1791, in his 84th year.

CHILDREN:-

1. Sarah Foss born in Portsmouth, N.H., mar. Capt. Cochrane. He was in command of Fort "William & Mary situated on Great Island, now Newcastle. At the time of the passage of an act in 1774 by England forbidding the exportation of gunpowder to America, the fort was garrisoned by the Capt. and five men and the ships-of-war "Scarborough" and "Canseau" were daily expected to arrive with several companies of British soldiers to reinforce the garrison. On receipt of the news a company of citizens from Portsmouth, determined upon seizing the arms and ammunition at the earliest moment. They procured a gondola at midnight, and anchoring a short distance from the fort, waded ashore and scaled the walls. Shortly after their arrival they encountered the captain, who delivered to them his sword. It was, however, immediately returned, for which favor he returned his thanks. Having taken 100 barrels of powder, they started on their return, and on leaving the fort were rewarded for the favor before shown to the commanding officer, by his giving them a lunge with his sword. They did not wait to avenge the insult, but hastened on board the gondola and rowed up the Piscataqua to Durham. On their arrival, the ammunition was taken to the cellar of the Congregational church, where it remained for sometime, when it was taken to Bunker Hill, where on the 17th of June it was used against the British. On the day after the powder was taken, the fort was again entered, and fifteen of the lighter cannon and all the small arms were taken away. The "Scarborough" and "Canseau" soon after arrived.

11. Mary Foss born in Portsmouth, N.H., Nov. 22, 1739, married 1764, Joseph, son of Thomas and Sarah (Folsom) Young, born Aug. 24, 1726. He came from Newmarket, N.H.

Children,-

1. Zachariah Young b. Feb. 9, 1765, mar. Nancy Burleigh. She d. Dec. 28, 1823, He lived in Wolfborough, N.H., and d. Jan. 31, 1851.

Children,-

1. James Young.
 - II. John C. " Lived at Ossipee, N.H., d.
Mar. 24, 1866.
 - III. Catherine H. Young
 - IV. Mary "
 - V. Nancy " d. at Wolfboro, N.H.,
Dec. 28, 1823.
2. Thomas Young b. May 18, 1787, mar. ---Foss. Lived in
Ossipee, N.H., and d. Oct. 24, 1837.

Children,-

1. John Young.
 - II. Katherine Young.
 - III. Joseph "
 - IV. Ruth "
3. Timothy Waterhouse Young b. Aug. 23, 1769, mar. ----
Libby and d. Mar. 28, 1834.

Children,-

1. Mary Young.
 - II. Sarah "
 - III. Hannah "
 - IV. Esther "
 - V. Levi "
4. Levi Young b. Dec. 7, 1771, d. May 17, 1772.
5. Henry " b. July 23, 1773, mar. Sallis Bennett, b.
Aug. 25, 1779. He d. Aug. 24, 1810, and she
d. Apr. 21, 1853.

Children,-

1. Lydia Young b. June 15, 1803, mar.
Dec. 17, 1818, Deacon Samuel Hayes
of Durham, N.H. She d. Oct. 21,
1892.

Children,-

1. Henry Hayes b. Sept. 16, 1819.
 2. John S. " b. July 31, 1823.
 3. Hannah D. " b. June 7, 1824.
 4. Sarah E. " b. July 9, 1833.
 5. Charles W. Hayes b. Jan. 2, 1838.
 6. James F. " b. Sept. 13, 1838.
 7. John S. " b. July 5, 1841.
6. William Young b. Sept. 11, 1777, mar. Martha Bennett
and d. Dec. 11, 1844. She d. Mar. 7, 1862.

Children,-

1. Joseph Young b. Mar. 22, 1810, mar.

Nov. 29, 1842, Martha Bassett, b.

Nov. 28, 1821. He d. Apr. 1, 1864.

Children,-

1. William H. Young b. Jan. 12, 1845,
drowned Aug. 24, 1862.

2. Mary E. Young b. Jan. 27, 1849,
mar. June 19, 1868, G. L. Clark.

3. Martha A. Young b. July 26, 1855
d. June 6, 1867.

4. Josephine Young b. Sept. 25, 1857
d. Oct. 1, 1865.

11. William Young b. June 27, 1813, d. Aug.
23, 1859.

111. John H. Young b. Feb. 7, 1816, d. Mar.
2, 1835.

1V. Sallie C. Young b. Dec. 17 or 27,
1818, mar. Mar. 6, 1857, Otis P.
Dudley b. Mar. 6, 1801. He d. July
5, 1878.

V. Thomas Young b. Sept. 28, 1821, drown-
ed July 30, 1845.

VI. Mary E. Young b. July 4, 1826, d. Oct.
19, 1846.

7. Mary Young b. Nov. 11, 1779, mar. 1828, Thomas B. Wiggin
of Wolfboro, N.H. He d. Feb. 24, 1839, and she
d. 1865.

8. George Gains Young b. Jan. 27, 1784, mar. 1st. Eleanor
Schegel or Schedgel, and 2nd. Abbie Seavey,
and had children. He d. at Epsom, N.H.,
Aug. 13, 1866.

111. Elizabeth Foss born in Portsmouth, N.H., mar. Thomas Flagg, of
Chester. It is said that after living together three
or four years he was detected coining money and eloped
with his own aunt to Virginia. He took his two young
children with him and the mother never saw them again
until they were married men.

1V. Ruth Foss born in Portsmouth, mar. Col. William Brewster.

V. Margaret Foss born in Portsmouth, N.H., mar. Capt. David Cullum.
He is said to have come to Portsmouth sometime previous
to 1773 at about which time he married a Miss. Currier.
By her he had two children, a son who died young, and a
daughter Amy. His wife died about 1777 and he broke up
housekeeping and went to board at the hotel kept by Capt.
Zachariah Foss. Here he met and finally married Marg-
aret. He was a lieutenant under Paul Jones during the
Revolution and the prize money that he won made him, in
1773, one of the twenty highest tax payers in Ports-
mouth.

There is an naval anecdote of Capt. Cullum which
one of the old citizens of Portsmouth is said to have
related as told by the Captain, himself. When sailing
with Jones they had on board a large number of green
hands. One day a fleet of vessels hove in sight and
the number was rather terrifying to the crew. "Have

we got to fight them?" "What are they?" were the general inquiries. "They are all seventy-fours," said Capt. Cullom; "we shall have to fight them, and they will kill you all so prepare for the worst." They did fight them, and take them,- valuable merchantmen,- and Capt. Cullom's share of the prize money was a fortune to him. It is also related of him that one Sunday after he became rich he was seen in his pew in the North Church. A few days later one of his friends spoke to him of the somewhat unusual occurrence when the Captain said, "O," "they sent me the devil of a tax bill for my pew, and I mean to get my money's worth."

After his marriage with Margaret, he still followed the sea but his prize money went as easy as it came and in 1784 he paid only a poll tax. They had several children all of whom died in childhood.

- VI. Joanna Poss, born in Portsmouth, N.H.
 VII. Olive " " " "
 VIII. Abigail " " " "

12

ELIZABETH³ WATERHOUSE (Timothy² Richard¹) bap. in Portsmouth, N.H., April 19, 1719, married William, son of Samuel and Elizabeth (Gilder) Ham, born in Portsmouth, N.H., about 1720.

The Ham family came to Portsmouth about 1636, the first of the name being William, who came from England in 1635. He settled in Portsmouth on what is known as Freeman's Point, which lies just above the bridge leading to Kittery. The locality was called Ham's Point until about 1833. Here, on the Piscataqua shore, rises the cliff so conspicuous from the water front, called the "Pulpit" before spoken of. The land granted William Ham and bought by him amounted to about 165 acres. The William of this sketch was in the fifth generation from the settler. He was a farmer and lived on the old Ham homestead being a part of the original grant. He also bought the Timothy Waterhouse homestead close by of Joseph Waterhouse to whom it had been left. All this property was included in a tract of land bought in 1902 by the White Mountain Paper Co.

for the erection of a large paper manufacturing plant.

Brewster in his "Rambles about Portsmouth" tells the following amusing incident of Elizabeth Ham's family. "It was a time when the hostile Indians were prowling in this neighborhood, just after Madam Usula Cutt had been murdered on an adjoining farm, that the Ham boys were left at home on Sunday while the family boat had borne a load to the old mill-dam meeting. In the midst of the services a powder explosion was heard. The meeting was closed instantly, and the worshipers, putting themselves in position to meet the Indians, proceeded to the Point. They were agreeably disappointed to find that the boys had affrighted themselves as well as the whole village, by the explosion of the great powder horn."

Elizabeth Ham died sometime previous to 1779 when William Ham married Anna Walker. He died in 1799, age 79.

CHILDREN:-

1. Colonel Samuel Ham born in Portsmouth, N.H., 1741 or 1742 married Sarah Garvin.
He inherited about 60 acres of the farm at Ham's Point in the original grant. He d. Aug. 23, 1825, age 84 yrs. His wife d. Jan. 21, 1842, age 92 yrs.

Children,-

1. James Ham, b. in Portsmouth, Aug. 7, 1772, mar. May 3, 1800, Sarah Hicks of Portsmouth.
He d. May 18, 1831, age 59, His widow d. Jan. 16, 1855, age 82.

Children,-

All born in Portsmouth.

1. Samuel Ham b. Aug. 7, 1800.
 - II. Mary " b. Feb. 7, 1803, mar. Ezra Kentworth of Wakefield, N.H.
 - III. Sarah Ham b. Mar. 17, 1805, mar. Daniel Hayes of Dover, N.H.
 - IV. Joseph Ham b. Apr. 17, 1807. He settled in Salem, Mass.
 - V. Elizabeth Ham, b. Dec. 31, 1810, d. in Portsmouth unm.
2. Lydia Ham, b. in Portsmouth, May 1773, d. unm.
 3. Dorcas Ham, b. in " July 16, 1775, mar. May 1,

1794, Capt. Ebenezer Nowe.

4. Samuel Ham, b. Aug. 1777. in Portsmouth.
5. Hall Jackson Ham, bap. in Portsmouth, Apr. 10, 1784, mar. Dorothy Bellamy.
He was a member of the Rockingham Guards of Portsmouth.

Children,-

1. Catherine Ham mar. Capt. Freeman, of Somerville, Mass.
- II. Alphonso Ham.
- III. Dorothy Ham, mar. Charles Ingalls.
6. Sarah Ham, b. in Portsmouth, Jan. 1, 1789, mar. Sept. 23, 1809, John S. Walker.
7. Joseph Ham, b. in Portsmouth, about 1791.

Children,-

1. Joseph Ham.
- II. Elizabeth Ham.
- III. Daniel Ham.
11. Timothy Ham, born in Portsmouth, 1742, mar. Mary Peverly, b. 1746.
He was a joiner and always lived in Portsmouth where he died June 5, 1821, age 79. His widow died Oct. 9, 1838, age 93.

Children,-

1. Elizabeth Ham, bap. in Portsmouth, May 1768, d. June 13, 1849, unm.
2. Mary Ham bap. in Portsmouth, July 21, 1764, mar. June 26, 1798, Samuel Brewster.
3. Anna Ham, bap. Aug. 15, 1773, d. May 11, 1825, unm.
4. Sarah Ham, bap. in Portsmouth, July 30, 1775, mar. Samuel Akerman.
5. Timothy Ham, Jr., bap. in Portsmouth, Sept. 7, 1777, mar. 1st. Annie Rogers; 2nd. Zora Hillard Ham, dau. of Capt. Ephriam Ham, of Dover, N.H., a Revolutionary soldier.

Children,-

1. Mary Jane Ham, mar. Oliver Hanscom, d. 1888.
- II. Alfred S. Ham, d. 1837, unm.
- III. Ann Emily Ham, mar. Rev. E.W. Allen, and d. in early life.
- IV. Caroline E. Ham,
- V. Elizabeth C. Ham, mar. John Knowlton.
- VI. Frances L. Ham, mar. John H. Bowles.
- VII. Irville E.)
VIII. T. Leander) twins, d. unm.
- IX. Martha A. Ham, mar. Ezra Stevens and settled in Malden, Mass.
- X. Clara I. Ham, d. unm.
- XI. Anpirine Ham, d. in California.
- XII. Harriet Putnam Ham,

6. Phoebe Ham, bap. in Portsmouth, Jan. 16, 1780, mar. Aug. 18, 1810, Charles Hedding.
 7. William Ham, bap. in Portsmouth, Aug. 1782, mar. Mary Holbrook.

Children,-

1. Alvina Ham, mar. Jonathan Dearborn.
 11. Martha A. Ham, mar. David P. Little.
 111. Harriet "
 1V. Mary Ham, mar. ----- Hills, of Franklin, Mass.
 V. Albert W. Ham, mar. Louise Hills.
 VI. Isabelle " d. June 14, 1830.
 VII. Edwin Ham
 VIII. Frank "

8. Jane Ham, bap. in Portsmouth, May 1, 1785, d. unm.
 9. Supply Ham, bap. in Portsmouth, Apr. 17, 1788, mar. 1st. E. W. Osborne; 2nd. ---- Manton; 3rd. -----

Children,-

1. Henry Horatio Ham, b. in Portsmouth, 1814, mar. Oct. 24, 1837, Eliza D. Moses.
 11. Joseph Walton Ham, b. in Portsmouth, 1816, mar. 1st. Polly Giles, of Portsmouth; 2nd. Annie P. Brown, of Philadelphia, Pa.
 111. Charles Frederick Ham, b. 1822, d. 1847, unm.
 1V. Edward Augustus " b. 1826, mar. --- Tripp.
 V. Francis William " b. 1828.
 VI. James Harris " b. 1830.
 VII. Elizabeth Ham d. in youth.

10. Henry Ham, bap. in Portsmouth, June 26, 1791, d. Feb. 7, 1802.

111. George Ham, born in Portsmouth, Oct. 30, 1748, mar. Jan. 12, 1775, Rachel Garvin. He died Mar. 15, 1828, age 80.

Children,-

1. Betsey Ham, b. Mar. 12, 1776, mar. David M^c Daniel.
 2. Sally " , b. Nov. 4, 1777, mar. David Page.
 3. John " , b. Aug. 20, 1779, in Portsmouth, mar. and settled in Bangor, Me. He had three daughters.
 4. Polly Ham, b. Mar. 30, 1782, mar. Benjamin Hill, of Bangor, Me.
 5. George Ham, b. in Portsmouth, Jan. 20, 1788, mar. Martha Loughton.
 He was a farmer and settled in the town of Strafford, N.H.

Children,-

1. Phoebe Ham, b. Oct. 28, 1812, mar. George Brewster.
 11. Leonora Ham b. June 23, 1814, mar. Darius Perkins.
 111. Mark " b. June 22, 1816, mar. Mary A.

Welch.

- IV. Albert Ham. b. Feb. 21, 1819, lived in Dresden, Me.
 V. Joseph " b. Mar. 4, 1821, lived in Roxbury, Mass.
 VI. James " b. Apr. 6, 1824, lived in Dresden, Me.
 VII. David " b. July 11, 1833, lived in Barrington, N.H.
 VIII. George " b. ---. Lived in Haverhill, Mass.
 IX. Nancy " b. Feb. 20, 1791, d. Mar. 6, 1817.

IV. Ephriam Ham, died unm.

V. William Ham, born in Portsmouth, 1759, mar. Mar. 11, 1784, Hannah Moses. She died 1835, age 73.

Children,-

1. Ann Ham, b. 1798, d. July 1891.
2. Samuel Ham, b. 1799, d. 1817, at Guardulupe.

VI. Benjamin Ham, born in Portsmouth, mar. Rebecca Hobbs, of Hollinsford, N.H.

He was a gondola master on the Piscataqua river. They owned and lived on Ham's Island in the river.

Children,-

1. George Ham, b. in Portsmouth, about 1787, mar. Apr. 30, 1822, Hannah Wormwood.
2. William Ham, b. in Portsmouth, about 1789, mar. Nancy Green, and d. Sept. 9, 1820.
3. Nathaniel Ham, b. in Portsmouth, June 26, 1790, mar. Betsey Prime, of Brunswick, Me. He d. Feb. 28, 1881.
4. Morris Ham, b. about 1792, d. unm.
5. Sarah Ham, b. about 1795, mar. 1st. --- Jones; 2nd. --- Emery.
6. Oliver Ham, b. about 1797, mar. Mary Wormwood, Apr. 30, 1822.
7. Thomas Ham, b. " 1800, d. unm.
8. Nancy Ham, b. " 1803.

VII. Nathaniel Ham, born in Portsmouth, 1758, mar. Dec. 20, 1790, Lucy or Susan Walker.

He was a gondola master and was drowned in the Piscataqua river, Nov. 8, 1816.

Children,-

1. Anna Walker Ham, bap. Mar. 9, 1795.
2. Ephriam " d. in infancy.
3. Lucy " bap. May 7, 1796.
4. Mark " " July 28, 1799.
5. Seth Walker " " Nov. 1, 1801.
6. Elizabeth " " May 20, 1804.

VIII. Elizabeth Ham, mar. Capt. John Tuckerman.

IX. Joseph Ham.

13

JOHN³ WATERHOUSE, (Timothy² Richard¹) born in Portsmouth, N.H.. May 15, 1721, married Alice Babb, born Feb. 22, 1728. The old family record says that each was born on a Thursday. John Waterhouse was a tanner, shoemaker and farmer, and settled in Barrington, N.H.. on land which was allotted to his father as one of the original proprietors of the town, and which is said to have been near Castle Rock at the west end of Oak Ridge on the south side of which is the Congregational Meeting House. Near by was the Cate garrison house built before 1740, and torn down about 1870.

The town of Barrington was chartered May 10, 1722, and was named Barrington in honor of an English man-of-war which had been repaired at the expense of the town of Portsmouth, while lying in that port. The charter began as follows,-

"George, and by the Grace of God and of Great Britian, France & Ireland, King, Defender of the faith &c."

"To all people to whom these presents shall come Greeting: Know ye that we of our Especial Knowledge & mere Motion for the Due Encouragement of settling a New Plantation by & with the advice and consent of our Council have given & Granted and by these Presents (as far as in us lyes) do give and grant unto all our Loving Subjects as are present Inhabitants of our Town of Portsmouth within our Province of New Hampshire and have paid Rates in the Said Town for four years last past to be divided among them in proportion to their Respective Town Rates which they paid the last year past and the record of which is to be found in their Town Book and is agreeable to their Petition preferred for that purpose."

Then followed a description of the boundaries, The grant consisted of two tracts of land. One was called the "two-mile-slip" or "two-mile-streak," being a strip of land at the head of the Dover line, two miles in breadth and six miles long, originally granted to the proprietors of some proposed iron works at Lamprey River. The other tract was situated west of the Dover line and was six miles wide and thirteen miles long. The charter was granted under these conditions, viz.

"1st. That they build fifty dwelling houses and settle a family in each within seven years and break up three Acres of Ground for each Settlement & plant or sow the Same within seven years.

2dly. That a Meeting-House be built for the Publick Worship of God within the term of Seven Years.

3rdly. That two hundred Acres of Land be reserved for a Parsonage, two hundred Acres for the Minister of the Gospel & one hundred Acres for the Benefit of a School."

In case of an Indian war the time was to be extended for a period of seven years after its close.

The first meeting of the Proprietors was held in Portsmouth, May 28, 1722, at which time they drew lots as to the location of their respective portions.

Richard Waterhouse drew lot No. 63, containing 180 acres.

Timothy " " " " 91, " 150 " .

Samuel " " " " 185, " 24 " ..

These three were sons of Richard Waterhouse Senior. Much difficulty was found to get settlers and it was not until 1741 that the required number was obtained and the Proprietors came into possession of the town. In the year 1759 a report of a Committee on the Settlement of the first 42 families in Barrington, states that Timothy Waterhouse fulfilled his undertaking to settle a family "by sun John." The following is a copy of the deed by which Timothy conveyed the property to John.

To All People to whom these Presents Shall Come Timothy Waterhouse of Portsmouth in New Hampshire in New England, Cordwainer Sendeth Greeting & know ye That the said Timothy Waterhouse for & in Consideration of the Natural Love & Affection he hath & Doth Bear unto his Well Beloved Son John Waterhouse of Barrington in New Hampshire aforesd Cordwainer Hath given Granted Enfeoffed Conveyd & Confirmed & by These Presents Doth give Grant Enfeoff convey & Confirm unto the Said John Waterhouse & The Male Heirs of his Body Lawfully Begotten & for want of Male heir the Female Issue of his Body Lawfully Begotten & Their heirs forever & for want of such heirs to the Lawful heirs of the said Timothy Waterhouse & their heirs forever (Always so that the

Wife of the said John Waterhouse to Have her dower out of the Same) all That Lot or Share of Land in the Town of Barrington aforesaid which is the Right of the said Tim. Waterhouse as an originall Proprietor being ye Number Winty one in the Second Range of Lot in Sd Town and Containing one hundred and fifty acres Together with all the Houses & Edifices thereon The Privileges & Appurtenances Thereto Belonging or in any wise appur-
taining. To Have & to Hold all the above Given & Granted Prem-
ises with all & Singular the Privileges & Appurtenances thereof
unto Him the sd John Waterhouse & The heirs Male of his Body
Lawfully Begotten & for want of Male Heirs to the Female Issue
of his body Lawfully Begotten & their heirs forever & for want
of such heirs to the Right heirs of the s'd Timothy Waterhouse
& their heirs forever to the only use & uses Benefit & Behoof
of the said John & the heirs male of his Body Lawfully Begotten
& for want of such heirs to use of the Female Issue of the sd
John Lawfully Begotten & Their heirs forever & for want of such
issue Lawfully Begotten to be to the use & Behoof of The Right
heirs of the sd Timothy & their heirs forever. In Witness
whereof the sd Timothy Waterhouse hath hereunto set his hand
& seal the fifteenth Day of March in the year of our Lord
Christ 1743/4.

Signed Sealed Delivered)	Timothy Waterhouse.
In presence of us)	
witness)	Prov. of New Hampshire at his Maj ^s Court of
Tho ^s Babb.)	Gen Sessions for the Pease held at Portsm.
Lydia Waterhouse)	ye 6 th of June 1749 Thomas Babb & Lydia Col-
	bey heretofore Lydia Waterhouse appeared Be-

fore th Court & Made oath that They saw Timothy Waterhouse Sign Seal &
Deliver the above written Instrument & that he Delivered the same as his
Voluntary act & Deed & That we Signed as Witnesses at the same Time & it
Reported the sd Timothy Waterhouse is Dead.

Att. H. Wentworth Clark

Read & Recorded

13 Octo 1756.

This land was also given to John by his father in his will. In
1742 there were forty-three names on the Barrington tax list. John Wa-
terhouse paid a tax of four shillings, the highest being eleven shillings
paid by a few persons. The history of Strafford County says he was a-
mong those who settled in the "Two-mile-streak" on or near Green Hill.

In 1757 he was one of the Selectmen and on July 10, 1775, was chosen one of the Committee of Safety. He also signed the Association Test, so called, which we give below together with the action of the various official bodies relating to the same.

In Congress, Mar. 14, 1776.

Resolved, that it be recommended to the several Assemblies, Conventions, and Councils, or Committees of Safety of the United Colonies, immediately to cause all Persons to be disarmed, within their respective Colonies, who are notoriously disaffected to the cause of AMERICA, or who have not associated, and refuse to associate, to defend by Arms, the United Colonies, against the Hostile attempts of the British Fleets and Armies.

Extract from the Minutes

Charles Thompson Sec'y.

COLONY OF NEW HAMPSHIRE

IN COMMITTEE OF SAFETY.

APRIL 12th 1776.

In order to carry the unwritten RESOLVE of the Hon'ble Continental Congress into Execution, you are requested to require all Males above Twenty-one years of age (Lunaticks, Idiots, and Negroes excepted) to sign the DECLARATION on this paper; and when so done, to make Return thereof, together with the Name or Names of all who shall refuse to sign the same, to the GENERAL ASSEMBLY or Committee of Safety of this Colony.

M. Keare Chairman.

The following pledge was sent to the Selectmen of each town who were required to present it to the citizens for signature:-

"In Consequence of the above Resolution of the Hon. Continental Congress, and to show our Determination in joining our American Brethren in defending the Lives, Liberties, and Properties of the inhabitants of the United Colonies:
WE, THE SUBSCRIBERS, DO HEREBY SOLEMNLY ENGAGE, AND PROMISE, THAT WE WILL TO THE UTMOST OF OUR POWER, AT THE RISK OF OUR LIVES AND FORTUNES, WITH ARMS, OPPOSE THE HOSTILE PROCEEDINGS OF THE BRITISH FLEETS AND ARMIES AGAINST THE UNITED AMERICAN COLONIES."

John Farmer Esq. has the following to say concerning this action:- "The preceding Text was the Declaration of Independence by the People of New Hampshire. It was a similar act to that of the Patriots who signed the National Declaration on the 4th of July 1776. It preceded-

ed that event, and seems to have been a sanction or an encouragement to those who contemplated it. It was a bold and hazardous step in subjects thus to resist the authority of one of the most powerful Sovereigns in the world. Had the Cause in which these men pledged their Lives and Fortunes failed, it would have subjected every individual who signed it to the pains and penalties of treason; to a cruel and ignominious death."

John Waterhouse lived in Barrington all his life and died there Aug.19,1797. His wife died Nov.26,1795.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Barrington.

- | | | | | |
|-----|-------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------|
| 29. | 1. | George Waterhouse | born Mar.15,1746. | |
| 30. | II. | Timothy | " " Dec.3,1747. | |
| 31. | III. | Dolla | " " Jan.17,1750. | |
| 32. | IV. | Lydia | " " Apr.5,1752. | |
| | V. | John | " " June 24,1754. | Died in infancy. |
| | VI. | Joseph | " " Aug.14,1756. | Died in infancy. |
| 33. | VII. | Benjamin | " " Aug.10,1758. | |
| | VIII. | John | " " June 1762. | Died in infancy. |
| 34. | IX. | Elizabeth | " " Mar.13,1765. | |
| | X. | John | " " Dec.11,1767, married Nov.8,1810, Mary, | |

dau. of Nathaniel Hart. She was born Apr.6,1769.

An old record book kept by him says that he was born on Friday, his wife on Monday, that they were married on Thursday by the Rev. Benj. Balch, and that they went to house-keeping Nov.12,1810, on a Monday.

He was a school master and lived in Barrington until 1825 when he removed to Rochester, N.H., and went to live with John Swain. Perhaps his wife had died previ-

ous to this time. The following items are taken from the record book above referred to.

"John Waterhouse' Soul was delivered from sin Feb^r 25th 1820. And may I ever be a humble follower of Jesus Christ."

"October 7th 1824.

John Waterhouse was Baptized by Elder Enoch Place, and taken into the free will Baptist Church in Barrington the Same day. O may I ever be faithful to my blessed Lord & Master."

"Moved from Barrington to Rochester, April 18, 1825. Seperated me from the said Church."

"Augt. 12th 1837, Joined myself to the second free-will Baptist Church in Strafford. By the right hand of fellowship of Eld. Enoch Place, and recd. by the members."

"Cyrus Drew left living with me April 18, 1825."

"Cyrus Drew was born Aug. 13, 1811, on a tuesday, 10 o'clock A.M."

"Avaline Came was born Oct^r 19, 1814, on Wednesday, 8 o'clock A.M."

"Avaline Came finished living with me Aug^t 17, 1821, After living with me 5 years 8 months & 11 days."

"Begun to live with John Swain April 18th 1825 on Monday."

"Parted with Brother George Waterhouse, & Brother Richard Garland, Oct^r 23rd 1826."

"John Waterhouse 4th son of T. Cate was born April 4th 1800 on a friday."

We have no record of the death of John Waterhouse

or of his wife. They had no children.

35. XI. Daniel Waterhouse, born July 23, 1770.

14

CAPTAIN SAMUEL³ WATERHOUSE, (Samuel² Richard¹) born in Portsmouth, N.H., probably about 1700, married first, Oct. 7, 1724, Rachel Young, born 1704. She died Jan. 23, 1726/7, "in ye 22^d Year of her age" probably in Boston, Mass., and is buried in the old Copps Hill burying ground in that city. The following is a copy of the inscription on the stone.

Here Lyes y^e Body of

Mrs. Rachel Waterhous wife

to Mr. Samuel Waterhous

Dec^d Jan^{ry} y^e 23^d 1726/7

in y^e 22^d Year of Her Age.

Captain Waterhouse married second May 7, 1728, Mary, dau. of Daniel and Mary (Mayer) Berry, born in Boston, Mass., Feb. 23, 1707. He married third Int. pub. Oct. 20, 1741, Elizabeth, dau. of Rev. Samson and Elizabeth (Davis) Stoddard, born Dec. 14, 1710.

We think this must be the Samuel Waterhouse mentioned by Bourne in his History of Wells, Me., as being a soldier from that town in the fight with the Indians at Norridgewalk, in August 1724. He must soon after have gone to Boston where his first marriage is recorded in the latter part of the same year. Nothing more is heard of him until by deed dated Aug. 28, 1733, Samuel Waterhouse, Marriner, Daniel Berry, Shipwright & William Robber, Marriner, all of Boston, Mass., buy of Elizabeth George, widow, of Boston, and Nathaniel Holmes, of Dorchester, Administrators of Nicholas George, Marriner, late of Boston, for 450 pounds

"All that Certain Dwelling house & Land thereto belonging situate lying and being at the Northerly end of the Town of Boston & is butted & bounded South-Easterly on Middle street and there measures Thirty one feet Southwesterly on land of the heirs of Capt. John Stevens & there measures Ninety Seven feet Northwest-erly on land of the said Steven's heirs & there measures Twenty one feet Northeasterly on the Land & kitchen of James Clark & there measures Fifty one feet & thence thro' the House as it now stands to that part of Division in the front of it." ~~pass~~

June 11, 1737, Berry and Webber sell their interest in the above to Capt. Samuel Waterhouse. Sept. 24, 1740, the latter was made guardian of his son, Samuel, aged about eleven years, to take charge of some property left him by his grandfather, Daniel Berry, late of Boston, shipwright.

May 2, 1747, Samuel Waterhouse of Boston, mariner, and Elizabeth his wife sell the above property on Middle street to Michael Malcom, of Georgetown, York Co. Me., for 1100 pounds old tenor.

During all this time he appears to have followed the sea and in all probability is the one referred to in the town records of Boston in the statement that the ship "Sarah Galley" Capt. Samuel Waterhouse arrived at the Port Apr. 15, 1737. The following action and method of procedure taken by the Selectmen of Boston, as shown by their records,, to prevent the spread of small pox will doubtless be read with interest.

"At a Meeting of the Select Men, April 15, 1737, Mr. Christopher Kilby being present, offer'd a Letter from Capt. Samuel Waterhouse, directed to William Clark Esq^r. dated at Nantasket, April 15th Informing That he had been Twelve Weeks from London, and Seven from Cork. That they had been Visited with the Small Pox, Four of his Company having had it. One of whom he put on Shore in the Downes, Another Died at Sea, and Two recovered, And that they have all been well for Four Weeks past, Since which he had taken all Possible care to Cleanse his Ship, throwing overboard all the Bedding and Cloathes which belonged to the Persons that had been Sick; That he had Three Passengers and his Loading was of English Goods and Hemp.

Voted, That the Ship be brought up from Nantasket to Spectacle Island, and come to Anchor as near the Hospital there as they can, That the Select Men will visit the Ship Tomorrow and make further Enquiry relating to the Affair. And Gave order for the Master in the meantime througly to Smoke his Letters, in Order to their being bro't up.

April 16, 1737.

Upon Information of the arrival of Capt. Waterhouse, as Entred

Yesterday, The Select Men this Day Visited the Ship in Company with Joshua Winslow Esq^r. Who Administered the Oath to Capt. Waterhouse in Order to his Examination. Which is as follows, Viz^t.

Off Spectacle Island, Apr. 16, 1737.

Capt. Samuel Waterhouse of the Ship Sarah Galley from London Declares That he left the Downes the 29th of January last. That two or Three Days before he Sail'd he Sent a Man ashore at Deal who was Sick of the Small Pox, and about the 10th February, his Boy was taken Sick, and about Three Days afterwards, the Small Pox came out upon him; And on the 17th Another Person was taken ill of the same Distemper, both which Recovered in about Three Weeks, and are now very well, That about the 14th February, George Sherburn was taken ill, and died the 11th of March, and the next Day the Ship was thoroughly Clean'd, And all the Cloathes belonging to the Sick Persons that were Used by them in their Sickness were thrown overboard; And further, That the Lower Hatches of the Ship are well Caulk'd and had not been opened since they came out. That there is Stow'd between Decks, Nine Bags of White oakham, about Twenty Chests of Lemmons, and one Case of Goods. Left Directions with the Captain to get his Cables on Deck and Cleanse them very well; And ordered him and his Company to Continue here till further Orders and Suffer no Person to come on Board.

At a Meeting of the Select Men April 20, 1737, Mr. Christopher Kilby Appeared on behalf of Capt. Mulbury, Capt. Barlow, and Mr. Lawrence, Three Passengers in the Ship Sarah Galley, Capt. Waterhouse Commander from London (now detained at Spectacle Island, on Account of the Small Pox having been on Board her, in the Passage) Praying they may have Liberty Granted them to come up to Town. The Select Men having Consider'd the said Motion, Are of Opinion that they the said Mulbury, Barlow and Lawrence may be permitted to come up to Town without danger of Communicating that Distemper; Provided They have fresh Apparel both Linen and Woollen Sent from hence to Shift them, and that they in no wise bring up any of their Clothing or Bedding from said Ship, or any other thing likely to retain Infection.

At a Meeting of the Select Men April 22, 1737, Upon a motion of Mr. Christopher Kilby, Praying the Ship Sarah Galley, Capt. Samuel Waterhouse Commander may be permitted to come up to Town from Spectacle Island, where she has been detain'd for some time past. Voted, That Capt. Armitage, Capt. Forsyth, Capt. Lyman and M^r Clarke be a Committee to go on board the said Ship, to Enquire into her present Circumstances & to give such Directions as They Shall think further Necessary; and to report their Opinion to the Select Men, as soon as Conveniently they May.

At a Meeting of the Select Men Apr. 25, 1737, Capt. Armitage from the Committee appointed the 22^d Current, to repair on board the Sarah Galley, riding off Spectacle Island, to Examine into the Circumstances of said Ship, Report as follows, Viz^t. That they attended that Service this Day, and find that Capt. Waterhouse has taken all prudent Care in Cleaning his Ship, that he had carried the Oakum he had there, on Shore, and had Spread it, as likewise the Lemmons, But that there remains still on board Two large Cases of Merchandise that have been between Decks during the Voyage; And that it is their opinion, the Ship may be permitted to come up to Town with Safety. Provided the said Two Cases are put on Shore at Spectacle Island, .

there to remain with the Oakum. And also That the Two Persons who have lately had the Small Pox Continue at the Hospital on said Island until further Order.

Voted, to take the above Report under Consideration, at the Meeting on Wednesday next.

According to Order as Entred the 25th Instant. Having taken into Consideration the Committees Report relating to the Ship Sarah Galley, Capt. Waterhouse Commander, now at Spectacle Island Voted, That upon Condition the said Captain put on Shoar and leave at said Island the Oakum and Five Cases which he brought between Decks with the Two Persons lately Visited with the Small Pox, namely Sylvanus Dogget and Charles Ward, there to remain till further order. That the Ship and rest of the Company may come up to Town without danger to the Inhabitants from the said Distemper; And that a Certificate of Our Opinion, be given to Capt. Waterhouse Accordingly. Which was done, and is as follows, Vizt.

Boston &c. These may Certify, That We the Subscribers are of Opinion, That the Ship Sarah Galley, Capt. Waterhouse Commander lately from London, now riding off Spectacle Island may be permitted to come up to Town without danger of Communicating the Small Pox to the Inhabitants. Provided, the Two Persons, Namely Sylvanus Dogget and Charles Ward, who were Visited with the Small Pox in their Voyage hither, together with the Five Cases, and the Oakum, which were brought between Decks, be left to remain at the Hospital on Spectacle Island, and not Suffered to be brought up to Town until further Order.

April 27, 1737.

John Fayerweather } Justices of
Joshua Winslow } the Peace

John Jeffries }

David Collson }

Alexander Forsyth } Select Men

Caleb Lyman } of Boston

Jonas Clarke }

Tho^s Hutchinson Jun^r. }

At a Meeting of the Select Men, May, 6, 1737, Capt. Jonathan Clarke Appearing desired Leave to bring up from Spectacle Island Two Cases of Hats, and one Case of Small Arms belonging to him and lately Imported from London in the Sarah Galley Capt. Samuel Waterhouse Commander.

The Consideration whereof is refer'd to Wednesday next.

At a Meeting of the Select Men, May 11, 1737, Upon the Motion made by Capt. Jonathan Clarke Entred the 6th of May Current and Consideration thereon.

Voted, m^r Savell wait upon Capt. Clark and other Gentlemen the Owners of Goods left at the Hospital on Spectacle Island by Capt. Water-

house, and Inform them he is ready to go down to the said Island with them in Order to See the said Goods taken out of the Cases &c. and the Cakum out of the Bags, and to See them all aired if they see Cause without which the Select Men can't permit them to be brought up to Town for fear of Infection from them. m^r Savell to Report to the Select Men his Doings therein, as soon as may be.

At a Meeting of the Select Men, May 13, 1737, Mr Savell having Attended the Service Ordered as Entred the 11th instant Reported as follows, Viz^t.

Pursuant to the above Order, Informed Capt. Clarke and Waterhouse of the Select Mens directions respecting the Goods left at Spectacle. The said Capt. Clarke and Waterhouse accordingly sent down Two men with me in the Light house boat to Spectacle Island, where we opened Two Cases of Hatts, which we spread and aired on the Ground in the Sun, and afterwards pack'd them up in the Cases again, and left them at the Hospital.

May 13, 1737.

John Savell.

Upon the Report of m^r Savell, that he had been at Spectacle Island According to Order, and had aired Two Cases of Hatts which were Imported in the Sarah Galley Capt. Waterhouse from London, belonging to Capt. Jonathan Clarke.

Voted, That we do not Apprehend any danger of Infection from the said Cases of Hatts, and therefore that they may be permitted to brought up to Town.

There was a rather humorous sequel to this case for in the proceedings of the Selectmen at a meeting held May 11, 1737 we read, - "Upon Information that Sylvanus Egget and Charles Ward, were gone off, from Spectacle Island Contrary to the Order of the Select Men, as Entred the 27th April last

Ordered, That m^r Savell be directed to make Strict Enquiry after the said Persons, and that he Report his doings therein to the Select Men."

There is nothing in the records to show that the men were ever found.

Captain Samuel Waterhouse died previous to May 22, 1751, and June 6, following, Administration was granted to Elizabeth Waterhouse, widow of Samuel Waterhouse, late of Boston, Mariner.

The Inventory of his estate amounted to £ 232 - 2 - 11 and was dated July 1751. It included a half pew at the Rev. Mr. Welsteeds

church E5 - 2 - 8. This was the New Brick Church, so called, situated on what is now Hanover Street near the corner of Richmond Street. Mr. Welsted became pastor in 1728 and served for some twenty-five years.

Elizabeth Waterhouse, widow of Samuel, died in Chelmsford, Mass., and was buried there Aug. 25, 1775.

CHILDREN:-

Probably all born in Boston.

By 1st wife.

1. Rachel Waterhouse, born Jan. 1, 1726/7. Died Jan. 3, 1726/7 and is buried in the Copps Hill burying ground, Boston. The following is the inscription on the stone.

Rachel Dau^r to Mr Samuel

& M^{rs} Rachel Waterhouse Aged

2 D^s. Died Jan^y y^e 3^d 1726/7.

By 2nd wife.

36. 11. Samuel Waterhouse, born Jan. 27, 1728, Boston, Mass.

III. Daniel " " Oct. 3, 1730, " " . Died in infancy.

IV. Daniel " " Mar. 3, 1732, " " .

V. Mary " " July 30, 1735, " " .

VI. Richard " " ----- In a deed dated Dec. 30, 1761, Richard Waterhouse, son of Elizabeth Waterhouse, of Boston, widow, has conveyed to him a tract of eighty acres of land in a place called Monadnock in the Province of New Hampshire, which he bought of Samson Stoddard, of Chelmsford, Mass. This may have been the Richard Waterhouse who died in the Boston Almshouse Sept. 24, 1801.

WILLIAM³ WATERHOUSE, (Samuel² Richard¹) born in Portsmouth, N.H., about 1707, married first, July 4, 1726, Sarah Walker, of Newington, N.H. He married second Mary -----.

At the time of his first marriage he was "of Newington," and his wife was admitted to full communion in the church in that town Apr. 17, 1727 or 1728. Newington adjoins Portsmouth and at one time was a part of the latter town. His name appears on the Portsmouth tax list for the years 1728-30 and the last year he was abated ten shillings. After this we hear no more of him in that town, or in Newington but he undoubtedly removed to Arundel, now Kennebunkport, Me., where Apr. 1, 1742, he bought property as appears by the following deed.

"Know men by These presents that I John Saxter of Arundel in the County of York in his majesties province of the Massachusetts bay in New England House right for & in Consideration of thirty pounds in good & Lawfull money or passable of Cridit of New England have Sold Settover & Conveyed unto William Waterhouse of sd town the Eighth part of a Saw mill on Kennebunk River ***** & by these presents ~~xxx~~ freely & fully & absolute Give Grant bargain sell & confirm unto him y^e s^d William Waterhouse his heirs & assigns fore-ever one half of Quarter of an Acre of land adjoining to Kennebunk River on Wells Side the Quarter of an Acre I bought of Samuel Litolfeld of Wells for a Convenance of building a saw mill To have & to hold the sd bargained premises with all priveledges that I have on any side of the River or the other side of the sd Kennebunk River as fur forth as my Liberty will a low tis to be understood free liberty to Cut Timber on either side of sd river as I have myself which appears by my deed which I have from Samuel Litolfeld of Wells with all the priviledges & Commodities to the same belonging or in any wise appurtaining to him the s^d William Waterhouse his heirs and assigns forever***** by force and Vertue of these presents lawfully peaceably & quietly have hold use ocupie possess & enjoy y^e s^d demised & bargained premises with the appurtanances free & Clear & freely and Clearly Acquitted Exonerated & Discharged of from all manner of former & other Gifts grants bargains sales Leases Mortgages wills Entails Joyntors Powers Judgments Executions Incumbrances & Extents ***** In Witness Whereof we have hereunto Set our hands and Seals this first day of April one thousand Seven Hundred & forty two and In the fifteenth year of the Reign of our Soverain Lord King George."

Our reasons for believing that this William Waterhouse is the same one who was born in Portsmouth and and who lived there and in Newington are as follows,- No other William Waterhouse appears in the descendants of Richard Waterhouse up to this time. William's mother was undoubtedly Sarah Wells, of Wells, Me., which town adjoined Arundel which fact might furnish some reason for his removing to that vicinity. William Waterhouse, of Portsmouth, married Sarah Walker and the signatures on the

first deeds that William gave in Arundel show that his wife's name was Sarah. Again, the Church Records of Kennebunk, then a part of the town of Wells show a connection between Newington and Wells so far as the family name is concerned, viz.-

"May 7, 1758, Sarah the wife of Samuel Waterhouse dismissed from the Church in Newington rec'd to full communion in this Church."
We think this must have been William's mother.

The most convincing evidence of all regarding the identity of William Waterhouse, however, is found in a deed (see page 113) by which Samuel Waterhouse of Boston, for himself and as attorney for John Waterhouse and Robert Hart of Boston, and William Waterhouse of Arundel, Me., conveys the property in Portsmouth bought by Samuel Waterhouse, undoubtedly their father, and upon which he lived until his death.

April 2, 1744, William Waterhouse, of Arundel, Cordwainer, bought of Philip Pike, of Arundel, for the sum of "One Hundred & Eight Pounds in Publick Bills Credit of the old Tannor," one half of eighty acres of land in Arundel bounded as follows, and which probably became the homestead.

"beginning at a white ash tree which is y^e northwest Corner bound of the hundred acres that was laid out to John pirkins & Thomas pirkins sons of Thomas Pirkins Senr. then running South East one hundred and Sixty poles from y^e ash Tree to a white pine Tree marked upon four sides and with the letters T.P. then running from the two aforesd bounds Northeast Eighty rods keeping the same breadth which makes ye Eighty acres of Land of which I have sold the one half."

November 14, 1752, William Waterhouse buys of John Sinkler, of Arundel, "half of one hundred acres of land granted to John Turbit by the proprietors of Arundel June y^e 23^d 1631 which land lyeth in the Township of Arundel which fully appears by the Records of Arundel which grant I the sd John Sinkler purchased of Philip Turbit of Manchester in the County of Essex marener." The following is a copy of the survey of the same taken from the records of Arundel.

"I whose Name is under Briton have Laid out unto William Waterhouse fifty Acres of Land by vertue of a grant granted to John Tirbet at a General

Town Meeting by y^e Town of Cape porpus June y^e 23^d 1631"(or 1631?)
 "viz. 'Begining at a burch Tree Markt W. by Moses Spencers N.E. Corner on y^e East Side of the Desart Roade on y^e North Side Line so Runing East 80 Rods by s^d Spencers Land to a burch Tree markt on four Sides with y^e Letters W then Runing Due North one 100 rods to a White ash Tree markt on four Sides with y^e Letters W and then runing west 80 rods to a hemlocke tree markt on 4 sides with y^e Letters W is Timothy Davises N.E. Corner of His Land by y^e Desart road Then Runing Due South by y^e Desart Road one 100 Rods to burch Tree by moses Spencers N. West corner first mentioned.'

Arundel Decem^r y^e 4th 1752."

In 1753 he bought fifty acres of land in Wells as shown by the following survey, viz.

"I have this Day surveyed and Laid out fifty acres of said land unto and for Mr William Waterhouse of Arundel Butted & Bounded Viz. Beginning of the Northeasterly side of Elwife Brook att Mr Benjamin Days westerly corner bounds and from the Runing on a N.E. and by W. course sixty Rods and then N.E. by E. to s^d Days North westerly Line. Wells June 30, 1753.

Samuel Wheelwright

Surveyer of Land."

William Waterhouse was a farmer and cordwainer or shoemaker. His name appears frequently in the town records. The Town of Arundel was complained of for not having a school and in the records of that town we find that "at a Lawfull Town Meeting April y^e 2nd 1744 the town chose Mr. William Waterhouse School-master for the Town for one year if the Selectmen and he can agree." Evidently they did agree for he was allowed forty shillings, old tenor, and taught for one year.

He was one of eighteen signers of the following petition.

"To the Selectmen of the Town of Arundel,

Gentlemen, Inasmuch as a Considerable number of the Inhabitants of our Town; Labours under a great Diffeculty in attending the Public Worship; by Reason that the Meeting house (as we Conceive) Does not Stand so Convenient for the Bigest Part of us as we Could wish; The Diffeculty Being so great That Women and Children Cannot attend y^e Publick worship so often nor so Seasonable as they might Do In Case the Meeting house stood more Convenient for us -- This Is Therefore to Desire you Gentlemen that you will In your Notification for our Annual Meeting Signifie to y^e town our Difficulties and that We the Subscribers Desire that the Town will agree upon some Measures To Redress the same; Either by Removing the meeting house or by Building another meeting house More Convenient for us; in our Town where y^e meeting house may be set that may Better accomodate y^e Inhabitants of y^e same than , where It now Stands;

Gentlemen. We Subscribe ourselves

the 17th 1743/4.

Yours &c.

The matter evidently was not settled for many years for at a town meeting held Mar.30,1734, to see if the town would reconsider and revoke all the votes that had been passed relative to building a meeting house on Burbank's Hill, so called, the question was decided in the affirmative. William Waterhouse and about twenty-five others dissented, claiming the Moderator declared it a vote when it was not and that he refused to consider a proposition to "try it fairly" by taking the names of the voters present.

In 1748 Mr. Waterhouse was chosen one of the Tythingmen and again in 1759. Mar.6,1751 he was chosen a Grand Juror and Mar.15,1757 he was elected Constable. His name appears on the Alarm list dated Apr.1, 1757, being a list of men in Capt. John Fairfield's (Arundel) Co.

In 1764 he bought a tract of land in Topsham, Me., described in the following survey.-

"Topsham October ye 15th AD1764.

Then Surveyed this Lot of Land for Mr. William Waterhouse of Arundel in the County of York Scituate Laying & being in Topsham in the County of Lincoln Bounded as followeth viz. beginning at a Small white pine tree Standing on the bank of Androscoggin River near the place Called the Indian Burying place which tree is the Corner Bounds of Captain Thomas willsons Land and Running by the S^d willsons Land N. 22 Degrees E 267 poles then Running N. 68 Degrees W. 60 poles then S. 22 Degrees W to the River & then Easterly Down the Said River to the first mentioned bounds. the whole of this plan Contains one Hundred Acres plotted by the Scale of 40 poles to one Inch by me.

John Merrill Surv^r of Land."

April 2,1766 Mr. Waterhouse sold fifty acres of land in Wells. At that time his wife's name was Mary and he was still "of Arundel." He must have removed to Lincoln County soon after this, however, and probably had a small house built on the above described land where he died early in 1768. In the papers relating to his estate he is referred to as "of Georgetown", so that he may have sold the land in Topsham and remov-

ed to Georgetown, but the County records do not give any information regarding the matter. The following facts in reference to the administration of his Estate will doubtless be of interest to his descendants.

"At the Probate Court held at York, Jan.5,1768, administration on the Estate of William Waterhouse, late of Georgetown, Co. of Lincoln, yeoman deceased, Intestate, was granted to his son Samuel Waterhouse of Wells, Co. York, yeoman who gave bonds."

The following is the appraisal of the Estate in Georgetown.-

"Bill of Appraisment of part of the estate of William Waterhouse late of Georgetown, deceased taken by his son Samuel Waterhouse Administrator Samuel Blethen, Joseph McIntire, Nathaniel Wyman, appraisers to the foll. sacred articles hereafter mentioned:-

To one pr Oxen 8-13-4.	To one Cow 3-13-4.	one Calf 6.8	El12	-	13	-	4.
To one Chain 6/10	one Sheep 9/6 0 - 16 - 4.					
To one hog 32/8 & one sheat 9/4	To one hog 30/ 3 - 12 - 0.					
To thre pr Sheep and Lambs @ 12/	To 3 Stays for						
Weaving Cloth 72 Bars 7/2	To one Linen Wheat 4/	one					
fishing lead 1/0 2 - 8 - 2.						
To 14 Spools for spooling yarn 1/	one hog 9/4 0 - 10 - 4.					
To one pr Tongs and agridiron 2/8	To one Tramett 5/4 0 - 8 - 0.					
To one Warming Pan 1/4	one Pine						
Table 6/8 0 - 8 - 0.						
To one small Chest 1/4	To 4 Chairs 8/0	five					
Pewter Plates 2/0 0 - 11 - 4.						
To 2 Pewter Platters 5/4	Three Pewter						
Barons one Pewter Poringer 4/8	To						
one chain 5/4 & Pin 2/8	1 Dung						
fork 4/ 1 - 2 - 0.						
To 1 Staple and Ring 2/8	To one						
Dwelling House 6 6 - 2 - 8.						
Dated at Georgetown June 27,1768.							

The following is the Inventory of the Estate of William Waterhouse in Arundel.-

"We the subscribers being appointed by the Hon. John Hill Esq. Judge of Probate &c for the County of York to appraise the Estate of William Waterhouse late of Georgetown in the County of Lincoln dec.

We subscribers have attended that Business & have appraised all the estate of the deceased in Arundell shown to us by Samuel Waterhouse of Wells adm. to said estate viz,-

The Homestead 40 acres by administration with the
 Dwelling Home & Barn £80 -
 viz,- Ten acres of Land by or adjoining
 Joseph Mitter 9 -
 viz,- One acre of Wild Meadow in Wells 0 - 18 - 0.
 To one old Light Bed & Furniture 24. To one
 Suit of Cloath 60/ 4 - 4 - 0.
 To one Coat 26/8 To one Hat 9/ & one Wig 9/ To
 one old Gun 8/0 2 - 12 - 8.
 To one old Chest 8/ To one old
 Light Bed 18/ 1 - 16 - 0.
 To one old Pot 1/6 & 1 barrell 1/6 & 1
 Hammer 0/3 To one small Chart 1/6 0 - 4 - 8.
 98 - 5 - 5.

Arundell July 11, 1768.

Inventoried by us

Thomas Wiswell.

John Merrill.

Miles Rhodes.

The following is a list of the claims of the Creditors to the
 Estate of William Waterhouse late of Georgetown.

Miles Roads Acct.	£3 - 4 - 2.
Thom's Wiswell.	2 - 9 - 2.
Jacob Waterhouse.	6 - 14 - 0.
Hannah Murphy.	0 - 15 - 3.
John Whitten.	4 - 16 - 5.
Robert Cleaves.	0 - 12 - 8.
John Cleaves.	1 - 6 - 8.
Joshua Carrs.	2 - 11 - 6.
David Hutchings Jr.	1 - 0 - 2.
Joseph Tailors.	1 - 1 - 4.
Mathew Lapell.	0 - 18 - 6.
Richard Kimballs.	0 - 16 - 1.
Wm. Waterhouse.	30 - 6 - 2.
Samuel Waterhouse.	22 - 14 - 5.
Rishworth Jordan Esq. (note)	8 - 9 - 5.

Signed by Benj. Durrell.

James Hubbard.

Gideon Walker.

York 53 Wells Apr. 8, 1769.

The following account of the Administrator is somewhat lengthy
 but it gives the details so fully that we print it complete.

"Administration Account of Samuel Waterhouse on his Fathers William

Waterhouse Estate.

To taking Admin ^r Time and expences two days and Expence of two Bondsmen at that time 12/0 Paid for Adm ^r 10/8	1 - 2 - 8.
Paid for the Order for the necessarys & Commission for Insoly and Commission to set off the Widows thirds	0 - 6 - 8.
To one Journey to Falmouth 3 days to take care of some of the Estate of the deceased 16/ Paid to Nathaniel Wiman of Georgetown for appraising the Estate that was there 5/4	1 - 1 - 4.
Paid to Samuel Blathen & Jos. McIntire for apprais at Georgetown	6 - 10 - 8.
To expence on the appraisers and to the Justice for Swear'g them	0 - 11 - 0.
To my Journey to Georgetown 13 days to take care of the Estate and to get appraised and to drive up some Cattle & Expence	3 - 15 - 4.
To one day & half with myself & Team to Arundell to bring home the Household Goods & Some Sheep that was brought up by Water from Georgetown 18/ To appraising of the Estate that is in Arundell paid the three appraisers 12/	1 - 10 - 0.
To the Expence upon the app ^{rs} and their swearing to the Inv ^y	0 - 5 - 0.
To my time to Warn the appraisers and attendance upon them in appraising 2 days 8/ To a Journey to Prob ^t Court to carry in y ^e In'y 2 days 10/8 two days at Arundell to take Care of the Estate 8/	1 - 6 - 8.
To probate Court at Biddeford one day	0 - 5 - 4.
To posting of Notification for the Creditors to bring in their Claims ag ^t the Estate & for putting it in public Prints	0 - 10 - 0.
To a Journey to Falmouth for a cow belonging to the Estate 2½ days	0 - 14 - 4.
To one day to Settle with the Widow, to pay her what the Judge allow ^d her	0 - 4 - 0.
To the freight of the Goods from Georgetown to Arundell Paid to three Commis ^{rs} for their Time in receiving in the Claims upon said Estate Paid to Benjamin Durrell by a	1 - 18 - 0.
Paid for receiving in Claims & in sitting off the Widows thirds 36/ Paid to Gideon Walker for receiv'g in Claims 28/ To 8 days to attend upon the Commis ⁿ in sitting to receive ye Claims	1 - 4 - 0.
To the expence upon the Comm ^{rs} in setting and to the Justice for swearing the Commis ^{rs} 17/	3 - 4 - 0.
To one day to notify the men to set off the thirds	1 - 12 - 0.
To one day attendance in setting off the Thirds & Expences at that Time	0 - 17 - 0.
paid to Surveyor with his Compass in seting off thirds	0 - 4 - 0.
pd to the Justice for swearing of the men that set off the widows thirds	0 - 9 - 8.
pd to Francis Wiman for Wintering of cattle that belong to ye Estate	0 - 1 - 2.
To so much allowed the Widow as necessary for upholding Life	0 - 1 - 0.
To one Journey to Berwick to Probate Court and to York 3 days	4 - 0 - 8.
To 1 Journey to York after an order for the Sale of Land	10 - 0 - 0.
	0 - 16 - 0.

2 days and p ^d for fees at that Time 28/8 To writing & posting of Notific ^s 6/8	1 - 15 - 6.
To a Journey to York after papers two days	0 - 10 - 8.
To 1 days attendance upon a Vendue and expence	0 - 10 - 0.
To 1 days attendance to a Vendue 4/ Expence at the same Time 3/4	0 - 7 - 4.
For the Vendue Master 5/ To 1 day to notify the Surveyor and chain men and the men Adjoining 5/	0 - 10 - 0.
To one days attendance upon the Survey ^r and chainmen	0 - 5 - 0.
To the Surveyor for his Time 6/ Paid to the chainmen 8/	0 - 14 - 0.
To the expence at the same Time 2/ To 1 Journey to Arundell to the Records for a return & pd for the same 4/	0 - 6 - 0.
To 1 day to arundell with chainmen & a Surveyor a running of a line to settle bounds between Abner Perkins & Miles Rhodes and the Lands of William Waterhouse deed	0 - 10 - 0.
To expence at that Time 4/ To 1 day of a Survey ^r to run out land 3/ To 2 chainmen at the same Time 5/	0 - 12 - 0.
To one day of myself attending of the Surveyor and chainmen	0 - 5 - 0.
To the expence at the same Time	0 - 3 - 0.
To 2 days to Arundell to get a Deed acknowledged & to pay for Writing and acknowledging the Deed	0 - 12 - 0.
To 1 day to get a Deed Wrote & acknowledged for Perkins pd acknowledging and to tender a deed of the same	0 - 10 - 0.
To Writing of the Deed 1/6 To Writing 2 deeds 1 for Huff & 1 for myself 3/	0 - 4 - 6.
To pd Jacob Waterhouse for 24 days for taking care of things belonging to the Estate at small point & 3 days Journey & loss of Time from Falmouth to Wells	4 - 4 - 0.
Paid to the Reg ^r for recording of 4 deeds belong'g to the Estate	0 - 10 - 8.
Paid to Dixey Stone Town Treasurer for Arundell the sum of £ 2 - 16 - 0. which was due from him to sd Dixie Town Treas, by Tax, He being Constable the year 1757.	2 - 16 - 0.
A Journey to Yorke 2 days for Advice and a Writ for Stone	0 - 10 - 8.
Pd for the Writ 7/ Service of said Writ 5/ for entering the action 13/	1 - 5 - 0.
To tending Court at Bideford 3 days 16/	0 - 16 - 0.
To York at January Court 2 days 10/8 Pd for entering Mr. Sewall my Attorney on the Clerks Books 1/ To tending Court at York at April 4 days 21/4 Pd. for an appeal from April to June 2/8	1 - 15 - 8.
To tending Court at June Yorke Sup. Court 5 days	1 - 6 - 8.
Pd. for entering the Action 18/ Pd to Mr. Sewall at Jany Court he being Attorney 12/ Pd. to Mr. Lowell at April for speaking to the Cou. 12/	2 - 2 - 0.
Paid to Mr. Sewall at the Sup. Court 18/ Paid to Mr. Lowell at D. 18/	1 - 16 - 0.
To a Journey to Yorke 2 days for orders to sell the widows thirds	0 - 10 - 8.
To Writing and posting Notifications 6/8 for Time & Expence attenj. the Vendue 4/ To the Vendue mater 3/4	0 - 14 - 0.
To 2 days running out the Widows thirds when Sold &	

ratifying the men adjoining and the expense of the same	0 - 10 - 8.
Paid the Surveyor 3/ for his Time	0 - 3 - 0.
To one day tendering the Deed and Acknowledging the same	0 - 4 - 8.
Paid for Writing the Deed	0 - 2 - 0.
To a Ballance due James Hubbard's estate for his assistance respectg. the Business of said estate not before charged	1 - 5 - 4.
To a Journey to York to returne the Claims	0 - 10 - 8.
To Recording the list of Claims with the Warrant	0 - 3 - 6.
To a Journey to render this Account	0 - 12 - 0 ¹ / ₂ .
To Probate fees examining allowing & recording this Account	0 - 8 - 0.
To an order of distribution and recording ditto	0 - 4 - 0.
To Copy of the Claims to annex to the order	0 - 1 - 3.
To proper timing the Ballance of this Account among the Cr.	0 - 2 - 3.
To pd. Thomas Wiswell for setting off Dower	0 - 4 - 0.
Ballance to be proportioned among the Creditors	£ 50 - 15 - 7.
	<u>£117 - 18 - 11¹/₂.</u>

Said Administrator credits the said estate as follows, viz.

By personal estate inventoried at Georgetown	22 - 12 - 67.
By ditto at Arundell	8 - 7 - 8.
By Cash of Charles Huff for ten acres of land sold him £ 16/	8 - 0 - 0.
By one acre of Wild land to James Lord	0 - 8 - 0.
By Cash of Abner Perkins for Lands sold him	30 - 3 - 0.
By Cash of James Perkins for land he purchased at Vendue	0 - 0 - 0.
By a Judgment of Sup. Court agt. Israel Stone dobt 25 h.h. Costs 5 h.h.	30 - 8 - 8.
By a Ballance of the Incom 2/3 R Estate before sale	0 - 0 - 4.
Errors Excepted	<u>£117 - 18 - 11¹/₂</u>

By Samuel Waterhouse.

York, ss. July 18th. 1777. The Account aforesaid being examined Vouched and Sworn to by the said Samuel is allowed and thereupon ordered that the Ballance hereof being £50 - 15 - 7. be distributed among the Creditors in proportion to their claims allowed by the Commissioners.

John Bradbury. Judge of Probate

Recorded from the Original By David Sewall Regr.

No list of the children of William Waterhouse has been found but the following belonged to him and he may have had others who died young and also other daughters.

CHILDREN:-

1. Sarah Waterhouse, bapt. in Newington, N.H. Sept. 21 or 23, 1729,
married, Int. Mar. 18, 1759, Israel Webber of Wells.
37. 11. Samuel Waterhouse, born probably in Portsmouth or Newington, N.H.
38. 111. William Waterhouse, born 1736, prob. in Arundel, Me.
39. 1V. Jacob Waterhouse, born 1743, prob. in Arundel, Me.

16

JOHN³ WATERHOUSE, (Samuel,² Richard,¹) born probably in Portsmouth, N.H., undoubtedly the one who married Ann Gee in Boston, Mass., Oct. 16, 1733. She may have been the one who was born in Boston, Mar. 4, 1711/12, probably the daughter of Joshua and Elizabeth Gee.

John Waterhouse lived in Boston and was a barber and is also referred to as a peruke-maker or chairmaker. He died in Boston, Jan. 1, 1746/7, and is buried in the old Copp's Hill cemetery. The following is the inscription on the gravestone.

Here lyes buried

the Body of Mr John Waterhouse

Aged 37 Years

Died Jan^y y^e 1st

1746/7.

Administration on his Estate was granted his widow, Ann Waterhouse, Feb. 24, 1746. The following is the Inventory, taken Mar. 3, 1746/7.

The Shop Windows with the Shutters									
10 Blocks 7. 10/	24 Razors	& 2 Bones	3. 12/	:	:	:	:	£63	- 10 - 0.
10 Cross Pipes 4. 0/0	1 Water Pot	1 dry boyler						11	- 8 - 0.
1 Goose 1-5-6								5	- 5 - 6.
2 pairs Scales and waights								0	- 16 - 0.
2 Sconces 1 Vice	1 Fire Kettle							2	- 5 - 0.
4 Cards & 2 Brushes								6	- 0 - 0.
4 Chairs in the Shop	1 Looking Glass							2	- 0 - 0.
1 Case Draws	1 Table							0	- 12 - 0.

2 Hour Glasses 6 Bottles	0-- 9 - 0.
1 Copper Pott & Shop Cloths	6 - 10 - 0.

Thus far is the Things in the Shop.

18 Plates pewter	5 - 10 - 0.
6 Dishes, 3 Basons, 1 pint Can	6 - 0 - 0.
Tin Ware 1.10/ Copper 1.0/0	2 - 10 - 0.
2 Brass Kettles 1 Skillet	16 - 0 - 0.
1 Box Iron & Heaters 1 Jack	3 - 0 - 0.
1 warm Pan, 1 Bellows, 3.0/0 Candlesticks 5.	8 - 0 - 0.
2 pair Andirons, 1p ^r Tongs & Shovel	2 - 0 - 0.
2 Trivetts 1 Dripping Pan 1 Fender	0 - 15 - 0.
2 Iron Potts, 1 Kettle 2.0/0 1 Desk 3 Tables 11.13	0 - 0 - 0.
1 Bowfett & six Chairs	7 - 0 - 0.
China & Earthen in Bowfett	5 - 10 - 0.
1 Timepiece 1 Lanthorn	4 - 0 - 0.
Looking Glass & Pictures	14 - 0 - 0.
Silver 9oz. 16 pwt 12 Grains at 47/ pr oz.	23 - 1 - 3.
1 pair Buttons	1 - 0 - 0.
Bed Bolster & Pillows Coverlid & Blanketts & Curtains	22 - 0 - 0.
Shetts 5 pair £15. 0/ Pillow beers 5 pair 1.5/	16 - 5 - 0.
Table Cloths 5	2 - 10 - 0.
1 Desk 1 p ^r Draws	20 - 0 - 0.
1 Case, 1 Table, 1 Close stool	2 - 10 - 0.
6 Chairs in Chamber	1 - 6 - 0.
15ct Hair at £4.0/ pr ct	60 - 0 - 0.
1 Chest £2 0/ two Guns £8 0/	10 - 0 - 0.
1 Hanger 1 Baggonet 1 Cartouch Box	1 - 0 - 0.
10 pair Hose 1 Matt 11. 0/ wearing Cloaths 16.0/	27 - 0 - 0.
Books 3. 0/ Bed & Bedding in upper Chamber 15. 0/	18 - 0 - 0.
old Tenor	390 - 7 - 3.

John Bennett.
Simeon Skilling.
Thomas Lawlor.

Ann Waterhouse, John's widow, married Uriel Rea, of Boston, Sept,
1,1747.

CHILDREN:-

1. John Waterhouse, born in Boston, July 21,1734, He was a Boat-
builder and lived in Boston. The records of Suffolk Coun-
ty show that Administration was granted to Uriel Rea "for
Estate of his late son-in-law John Waterhouse, of Boston,
Boatbuilder." The papers were dated Feb.2,1759.
11. Preston Waterhouse, born Feb.7,1735, in Boston. Nothing more is
known of him.

17

SAMUEL⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Arthur,³ Richard,² Richard,¹) baptized in Portsmouth, N.H., married Oct. 16, 1769, Hannah Bickford, baptized in Portsmouth, 1738 or 1739, and daughter of Thomas and Elizabeth (Furber) Bickford.

Samuel Waterhouse was a sailmaker and resided in Portsmouth, He signed the "Association Test" and was one of the signers of the following petition.

"The Humble Petition of us the Subscribers part of the late Matross Company stationed at Fort Washington in Said State under the command of Capt. Titus Salter." The subscribers set forth in the petition that their share of the prize money, proceeds of a ship called the "Prince George," which they had captured, had been converted to the use of the State, and the petition concludes thus, the date of same being Dec. 20, 1776.

"Wherefore your Petitioners humbly & importunately pray that your Honors would order the account of their Shares to be paid them as soon as conveniently may be that your Petitioners may have something to subsist themselves & families upon, in these times of General Distress."

He also was one of the signers of the following petition which was dated at Portsmouth, May 5, 1777.

"To the Honorable Committee of Safety for the State of New Hampshire, -"

"The Petition of sundry inhabitants of the Town of Portsmouth who are Zealous in the Grand Cause now in Contest with Great Britain-Cheweth, That your Petitioners have for a long time waited with the greatest patience the result of the Honble General Court of this State-- in full expectation of their adopting some mode of procedure against those abandoned wretches well known by the name of Tories-- who have too long infested this Town & State; but they taking the advantage of the Lenity shown them, have continued repeatedly to add Insult to Injury, till at length they have by the farther instigation of the Devil been prompt to Counterfeit & pass large Sums of Money, for which Enormity some have been apprehend-

ed and Committed to Goal; and it is with great anxiety your Petitioners find as Notorious a Villian as either of them, (if not more so) permitted to go at large with full liberty to Carry on his Business as usual, and in order to blind the Eyes of the Weak & Credulous, he has the impudence to publish a piece in vindication of his character, altho' proved one of the worst of Villians by his own Confession; adding to this his chief accomplice has been permitted to escape from his Confinement & the hands of Justice through Bribery, Corruption & the assistance of the abettors-- These evils, together with the Intelligence which is given & received to & from our open & avowed Enemies at New York &c are Grievances of the highest Magnitude, which if not speedily remedied will prove more fatal to our cause than can perhaps be at present conceived of, and in to effect which remedy-- your Petitioners with due submission would observe, cannot be better accomplished than in following the example of our Sister State (South Carolina in particular) by executing all vile Traitors-- on being sufficiently proved as such, and bannishing all those persons who are well known to be disaffected to our Cause by providing them with a Vessel & shipping them off, with liberty to proceed to any port in the possessing of the Enemy & no other. As the baseness of their Conduct latterly is such-- that unless your Honors interpose in the matter by prosecuting them with the utmost Rigour, it will be impossible to stay the hands of the well affected populace from putting the same propo'd punishment (if not worse) into Execution. Your Petitioners not in the least doubting of the prayer of their Petition being granted do subscribe our names hereto, as being free subjects of a free State."

On June 1, 1785 Samuel Waterhouse signed a petition addressed to the General Court at Portsmouth, asking to have the bridge repaired between the towns of Stratham and New Market, the same being called the New Market bridge.

When the United States Census of 1790 was taken, which mentioned only heads of families he was the only Waterhouse in Portsmouth. The members of his family were as follows,-

"Free white males of 16 yrs and upwards including heads of families	2.
Free white males under 16	1.
Free white females including heads of families	3."

Samuel Waterhouse's name appears on the Portsmouth tax list un-1820 when the property formerly taxed to him was taxed to his son, so that Samuel probably died about that year. His widow died in Portsmouth Feb. 1821, aged 82 years. Her funeral was attended Feb. 23, of that year.

The following are probably his children and he may have had oth-

ers but no record of them has been found and if there were any others they were not living in 1844.

CHILDREN:-

1. Arthur Waterhouse, born in Portsmouth, probably about 1772, His name appears on the Portsmouth tax list for many years. In 1843 the property was taxed to his heirs. He was probably a sailmaker. May 30, 1844 he was "late of Portsmouth". The inventory of his Estate dated Aug. 6, 1844, mentioned a house at 22 Washington St., with the land belonging thereto valued at \$450. This was sold by the Administrator to Leonard Cotton. Arthur's sister was his only heir.
11. Hannah Waterhouse, born in Portsmouth, married William Ramsdell, a yeoman, and at the time of her brother's death she and her husband were "of Lubec, Me."

Children,-

1. Arthur W. Ramsdell.

18

RUTH⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarborough, Me., June 21, 1736, and baptized July 18 of the same year, married July 25, 1754, Seth Fogg, born probably in Kittery, Me., and son of Seth and Mary (Pickernale) Fogg.

Seth Fogg was a farmer and shoemaker, and lived on Scottow's Hill in Scarborough.

CHILDREN:-

1. Seth Fogg, born Mar. 22, 1755, may have married Leah Blake, Dec. 12, 1776.
11. Mary Fogg, born Oct. 10, 1757, may have married William Libby, Sept. 29, 1785.

- 111. Olive Fogg, born Nov.13,1759, may have married Peltiah Harmon, 1781.
- IV. Ruth Fogg, born Nov.8,1761.
- V. Elias Fogg, born Aug.17,1763.
- XI. Lydia Fogg, born Mar.20,1765, may have married Samuel Libby, June 10,1794.
- VII. Keziah Fogg, born Dec.7,1767.
- VIII. Enoch Fogg, born June 21,1769.
- IX. Dorothy Fogg, born Oct.30,1770.
- X. Paulina Fogg, born June 18,1772, may have married Timothy Harmon Jr., July 17,1794.
- XI. Dominicus Fogg, born Mar.16,1774, may have married Lydia Ann Chute.
- XII. Rufus Fogg, born Mar.22,1776, may have married Margaret Libby, Dec.15,1803.
- XIII. Joseph Fogg, born Oct.19,1779.

19

TIMOTHY⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarborough, Me., July 18, 1741, and baptized Aug. 30, of the same year, married Dec. 4, 1764, Sarah Small, daughter of Deacon Samuel and Dorothy (Hubbard) Small, born in Scarborough, Aug. 25, 1746.

He was a tanner, shoemaker and farmer and lived all his life on Beech Ridge, Scarborough. By a deed dated Oct. 21, 1762, Joseph Waterhouse, of Scarborough, Gentleman, conveys to his son Timothy, of the same town, laborer, for fifty pounds, "one certain tract of land in Scarborough containing 40 acres more or less being one half of my 80 acre lot on the Beech Ridge, so called, on the northerly end of said lot adjoining John Misarves Land & the said Timothy Waterhouse my son Exeps of said Forty acres of Land as so much of my Estate so that if I should Die without a will it shall be Construed as so much of his the said Timothy's Part or Proportion of my Estate." This was signed by Joseph and his wife Rachel who made her mark. Apr. 21, 1791, the above gift was made absolute.

Timothy and his wife owned the Covenant in the 2nd Church, at Dunston, (Scarboro,) Nov. 9, 1766. In 1782 and continuing to 1785 he was

a licensed Inholder. July 2, 1806 he sells land in Scarborough and is mentioned in the deed as a "yeoman." Mar. 11, 1812, His widow, "Sally," sells her estate in Scarborough.

The "History of Scarborough" says that " the first Methodist meeting held in Scarborough was at the house of Mr. Samuel Harmon Jan. 1802. The next *year Mr. Timothy Waterhouse and others petitioned the General Court for the incorporation of a Methodist Society, to be collected out of Scarborough, Euxton and Saco. The first house of worship was at that time erected at Dunstan, and the Rev. Asa Heath was appointed their minister. He had a congregation of about 200 and 40 members."

Timothy Waterhouse died sometime previous to Mar. 1812. He went out one morning to catch his horse and dropped dead in the pasture.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Scarborough.

40. I. Joseph Waterhouse, born Feb. 9, 1766, bapt. Nov. 9, 1766.
41. II. Samuel Waterhouse, born Jan. 19, 1768, bapt. July 3, 1768.
- III. Olive Waterhouse, born Aug. 5, 1770, bapt. Oct. 14, 1770, as "Ollie," died Nov. 7, 1788-9.
42. IV. Jane Waterhouse, born Feb. 20, 1773, bapt. Aug. 1, 1773,
43. V. Benjamin Waterhouse, born Dec. 19, 1775.
44. VI. Elias Waterhouse, born Jan. 10 or June 10, 1778, bapt. Aug. 9, 1778.
45. VII. James Waterhouse, born Apr. 14, 1781.
46. VIII. Zenas Waterhouse, born Apr. 12, 1785.

20

SAMUEL⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarborough, Me., Dec. 21, 1744, baptized, according to the Church records of Scarborough, Apr.

*Scarboro Town Records say 1804.

30,1744, married first, Sept. 28, 1769, Sarah Moses, daughter of George 174.
and Fransec (?) Moses, born in Scarboro. She died in Scarboro, Apr. 18,
1783, and he married second, Jan. 15, 1784 Mrs. Hannah McLaughlin. He mar-
ried third, June 9, 1805, Mrs. Lucy McKenney, widow of Moses McKenney and
daughter of Aaron and Elizabeth (Hedden) Plumer, baptized in Scarboro,
Mar. 17, 1734.

His father conveyed to him a tract of land, as shown by the fol-
lowing abstract from the deed, on which he settled and probably lived un-
til his death.

"I, Joseph Waterhouse, of Scarborough, in the County of Cumberland, &
Province of Massachusetts Bay in New England, Gentleman, Sells for
£13 - 6 - 8. Samuel Waterhouse, of Scarborough, Laborer, one Mes-
suage of Tract of Land situate in Scarborough containing 40 acres
& is bounded viz., beginning at a Beech Tree mark with the Letters
W.M.L. and J.W. and so running from thence due North Sixty four
Rods and a half; Thence running East Ninety Eight Rods & one half;
Thence South Sixty four Rods & a half; Thence West Ninety Eight
Rods & a half to the first mentioned bounds; including forty acres
as aforesaid; it being the half part of my Eighty Acre Lot (so
called) on Beech Ridge."

This deed was dated July 25, 1767, and was signed by Joseph and
his wife, Rachel, who made her mark.

Allen's "History of Methodism in Maine" says, "The first Meth-
odist sermon preached in Scarborough was by Asa Heath in 1800 in the
house of Samuel Waterhouse on Beech Ridge. Soon after a revival occurred."

Samuel Waterhouse held various town offices and died in Mar.
1820.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Scarboro and all by first wife.

47. I. Sarah Waterhouse,
48. II. Theophilus Waterhouse, born July 1772.
49. III. Moses Waterhouse, born Dec. 8, 1774.
50. IV. Daniel Waterhouse, born 1778.
- V. ----- Waterhouse, died Oct. 1778.

21

ENOCH⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarborough, Me., Nov. 23, 1746, baptized Dec. 21, 1746, married Abigail Test probably of Machias, Me.

In consequence of the drought which prevailed in the eastern part of Maine during the years 1761-2 the people living in the seaboard towns, in that vicinity, were accustomed to procure hay for their cattle from the salt marshes on the rivers east of the Penobscot. In the summer of 1762 the drought was particularly severe, resulting in disastrous forest fires in and about Scarborough and the destruction of several houses. In the autumn Isaiah Foster and a few others, of Scarborough, started in a whaleboat and went as far east as Machias, where, on the western branch of the Machias river, they found about 300 acres of marsh with an abundance of the grass of which they were in search, and also a fine water power at the head of tide water navigation, surrounded by unbroken forests of timber.

They determined to settle there and the next spring returned with a company of some fifteen or twenty persons. In 1769 a petition, signed by eighty of the inhabitants, was sent to the General Court, asking that they might be incorporated as a township. This request was granted and the inhabitants organized Sept. 11, 1770, making it the first incorporated town east of the Penobscot river.

June 30, 1769, Enoch Waterhouse was a laborer and bought land in Scarborough, but early in 1773 or before he must have removed to Machias, for on April 12, of that year he was "of Machias," a yeoman, and bought of Ezekiel Foster, of the same town, County of Lincoln, yeoman, for 75 pounds, the following property, viz., a certain piece of land situate in Machias,

with a dwelling house and barn thereon standing, containing one hundred and eighty acres upland and marsh, more or less, bounded as follows, viz., "Easterly by land of Joseph Sevey, Northerly by the Common, and undivided land, Westerly by land of Daniel Stone, Southerly by the middle River, so called."

July 9, 1782, he bought of James Lyons, of Machias, clerk, for 100 pounds, a certain lot of land containing "180 acres being part of the first division Lot laid out to Ezekiel Foster's right as a proprietor in the Township of Machias and bounded as followeth, viz beginning at a stake on the Northeasterly side of Middle River standing near the marsh thin running North ten degrees East four hundred and twenty-seven rods, then North eighty degrees West sixty rods and then south ten Degrees West to the salt Marsh, then along by the salt Marsh unto the bounds first mentioned; adjoining to the lot laid out to Isaiah Foster's Right on the Northwesterly side and to part of Joseph Sevey's first Division Lot on the southwesterly side."

In 1774 the first meeting house was built by sixteen men, one of whom was Enoch Waterhouse. It was one story high, 25x42 and had no pews, the people sitting on benches. It cost 220 dollars. In a list of some fifty persons, dated May 24, 1778, who subscribed toward the support of the Rev. James Lyon, who began to preach in 1771-2, Enoch contributed £2-10-0., about fourteen giving more than he.

In the winter of 1778-9 the people of this vicinity had to suffer great hardships and Enoch Waterhouse, among some sixty others, addressed the following petition to the General Court, under date of Jan. 22, 1779.

"To the Hon^{ble} The General Court of the State of Massachusetts Bay.

The address and Petition of the Inhabitants of Machias Deeply Impress'd with a Sense of the calamities hitherto happen'd in the United States, the unhappy & Deplorable Circumstances of many parts, Occasioned by the arbitrary & Despotic Designs of the British Ministry, pursued by a cruel & unnatural Prince & Venial Parliament, which with the present Pertrubation and Anxiety of mind of the Inhabitants of this Eastern Country on the Situation of these parts

wou'd with all humble Submission approach the Supreme Senate of this State as to an Indulgent and Affectionate Parent, Trusting and Relying that by their Candour, Humanity & Wisdom, will attend to our Requisition. We acknowledge with a sense of Gratitude the many favours hitherto received from your hands. The present Exigences of times this way compells us to Trouble you, as our Situation must appear truly Deploable shou'd we be necessitated with only our Own Strength to repell the storm we are threatened with from our Enemies.

Notwithstanding the Indigency of the Country we have hitherto exerted ourselves to the utmost of our Power and Ability being always readt & willing to attend every Summons, particularly when the Safety of our Country Depended and always hoping by our conduct to give such satisfaction as to merit the approbation of our Country--- But alas we Oblig'd to Declare our Poverty, and that our strength is Exhausted and a scene of Destruction appears before our Eyes, Shoud our Enemies make another attemp, our Dwellings which were always an Assilum for the Stranger and distressed, appears in another light. Families Ragged & Naked & but a bear Sufficiency of Food to preserve life, and that procured with Indefatigable pains and Difficulties. The Lumber Trade that we formerly benefitted by is now become as nothing, and the Trifle which we kept up was by the Excursions of the Enemies cruisers the past Fall intirely consumed & Destroyed, so that Destruction and Devastation is too Glaring to our view Lett us turn which way we will. We have still Hearts willing & Hands ready to oppose our common Enemy, to Defend the Interest to support the Liberty and Honour of our Country, but when we consider, should it only Depend on ourselves our Spirits Shrinks and we feel nothing but Anguish & Grief---

The Subscribers, Inhabitants of Machias aforesaid have met together and have (as agreed upon by a number of other settlements) maturely and Deliberately Examined into the situation of these eastern Settlements, and all but too well acquainted with their Difficulties which are but few to what might be mentioned--- Do now humbly request that your Honours would take the Promises under your wise consideration and Grant us Support & Relief--- That a sufficient number of Armed Vessels may be sent on the Coast for the protection of our Trade. That a sufficient Body of Troops with Fortifications and Necessaries conformable may be sent to prevent the Ruin of so valuable a Country, and that an hand of pity & compassion may extend in Aiding & Assisting with some supplies, those who by all human Appearances will Inevitable suffer for want---- For a more particular Dissatisfaction of our Affairs & Situation we Solicit That Colo John Allan, Col. Alexander Campbell & Major Gen Stillman be heard on our behalf and your Petitioners as in duty bound will ever pray &c."

Enoch Waterhouse, as one of the Grand Jurors, also signed the following petition which was before the House June 8, 1791.

"Petition & Resolve in favor of County of Washington.

The Petition of the Subscribers the Justices of the Court of Common Pleas and General sessions of the Peace in and for the County of Washington --- the Sheriff Clerk of the Court Attorney & Grand Jurors in and for said

County---

Humbly Sheweth,

That the Number of Inhabitants in Said County is very small, and that they are Extended more than One hundred miles upon the Sea Coast, and that in general the people are in Low Circumstances, and very unable to pay any heavy Taxes, That a Number of the Inhabitants Live on the borders of the British Province of New Brunswick, especially the Inhabitants of Moose Island, among whom every Artifice is used by some of the Executive officers of New Brunswick to make the people Believe that they are, or will fall within the Jurisdiction of that Province, and that they ought not to pay any Tax to this Country, by which means it will be very Difficult to Collect the Tax in that Quarter--- That a heavy Expence will arise in seaching & laying out a County Road thro such a long extent of Wilderness--- Also the Expence of Building a Goal & Court House beside the other necessary Expences of the County-- We therefore pray your Honors that for these Reasons you would Consider our Infant County and Grant that the Fees which are to be paid to the Commonwealth by the Civil Officers for their Appointment and the Excise now collected and what shall be due from said County may be appropriated for the Use & Benefit of Said County in building a Goal, Court House and laying out Roads--- as in Duty Bound shall ever pray."

Enoch Waterhouse was a Revolutionary soldier and according to the Massachusetts records saw service as follows,-

"He was a private in Capt. Joseph Libbie's (9th) co., Col. Benjamin Foster's (Lincoln Co.) regt; entered service June 23, 1777; discharged July 16, 1777; service 23 days; Company ordered on duty for defence of Machias and rivers adjacent when ship 'Ambuscade' lay in the harbor; also, Capt. Stephen Smith's co., Col. Foster's (Lincoln Co.) regt; service 2 mos. Company served at Machias from July 16, 1777, to Oct. 10, 1777, when British ships lay in the harbor; also, in same co. and regt. between Dec. 4, 1778 to Jan. 4, 1779, 3 days at Machias; also, Lieut. John Scott's detachment from 6th Lincoln Co. regt.; service between Aug. 31, 1779, and Nov. 20, 1779, 14 days at Machias and endorsed 'service at Penobscot.'"

One of Enoch Waterhouse's granddaughters, who had been in the old home, says that he lived on a large farm about two miles from the village of Machias in a part of the town called Middle River, now known as Marshfield. He had much timber and many cattle and sheep. He lived in

a large house, the first frame house built in the place. The doors had wooden latches which were operated with a little string. At night all they had to do was to pull in the string and the door was fastened for there was then no way of opening it from the outside. During the war of 1812 the Indians were friendly and were allowed to do about as they pleased. Occasionally they would kill one of his cattle or a sheep and he would sometimes allow them to have a dance in his house. He died July 30, 1817.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Machias.

51. I. Elias Waterhouse, born Nov. 10, 1774.
52. II. Enoch Waterhouse, born Mar. 1776.
53. III. Catherine Waterhouse, born Oct. 20, 1777.
54. IV. Mary Waterhouse, born May 21, 1778.
- V. Olive Waterhouse, born Mar. 27, 1781, married ----- Cristy.
- VI. Abigail Waterhouse, born 1782, married William Cilley. He was a shoemaker and probably lived in Machias.

Children,-

- I. Miria Cilley.
- II. Lucinda Cilley, mar. Otis Wilson.
- III. Alfred Cilley.
- IV. Leonard Cilley.
- V. Otis Cilley, died unm.
- VI. Peter Cilley, mar. Nancy Wildor.
- VII. Mary Ann Cilley, went West.
- VII. Charlotte Waterhouse, born 1784. Her name appears among the list of members of the Congregational Church in Machias, May 7, 1820 and also in 1840. She died in Machias, unm. Sept. 25, 1848.
55. VIII. Jane Waterhouse, born Dec. 6, 1784.
- IX. Ruth Waterhouse, born Sept. 4, 1791, died unm. at Machias, May 24, 1829.
- X. Stephen West Waterhouse, born 1794, died unm. at Machias, Mar. 1840.
56. XI. Rebecca Waterhouse, born Jan. 8, 1799.

2 2

JOHN⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarboro, Me., Mar. 21, 1748, was baptized, Mar. 27, 1747, married Feb. 2, 1775, Elizabeth Banks, daughter of Moses Banks, She was born in York, Me., Mar. 1756.

John Waterhouse was a sea Captain the greater part of his life, and resided in Scarboro, when on shore, all his life, except for a time about 1820, when he resided with his brother-in-law in Danville, Me..

He was a Revolutionary soldier, the Massachusetts records giving his service as follows,-

"Private, Capt. Abraham Tyler's co., Col. Phinney's (31st) regt.; billeting allowed from date of enlistment, May, 8, 1775, to date of marching to headquarters, July 6, 1775; credited with 58 days allowance; also, same co. and regt.; company return dated Sept. 29, 1775; also, Corporal, same co. and regt.; order for bounty coat dated Cambridge, Oct. 26, 1775."

In his application for a pension, dated Apr. 29, 1818, he states that he enlisted Jan. 1, 1776, for one year in the same company and regt. as above. At that time he was a resident of Scarboro and seventy years old. He is said to have been at Fort Independence, Ticonderoga and Boston, and was discharged at Fort George, New York. His claim for a pension was allowed.

While he was in the army his wife lived with her parents, and after his death, which occurred Mar. 15, 1833, in Scarboro, she lived for a time with her son, John, in Scarboro and then went to Newbury, Mass., where she lived with her son, Jeremiah, until her death which took place May 4, 1838. She had applied for a pension Sept. 27, 1836, which was granted her.

The following record of births and deaths of the children was taken from the old family record in the possession of Mr. Harry C. Waterhouse, of Cape Elizabeth, Me.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Scarboro.

- I. Mehitable Waterhouse, born Dec.6,1777, died Feb.17,1778.
- II. Mary (Polly) Waterhouse, born Mar.26,1779, baptized July 11, 1779, married Elias Waterhouse, her cousin, son of Timothy Waterhouse.
- III. Jeremiah Waterhouse, born Mar.28,1781, baptized June 3,1781, married (Int.) March 17,1820, Sarah, daughter of William and Sarah (Bagley) Barnard, born in Amesbury, Mass., 1791.
He was a blacksmith and lived in Portsmouth, N.H., Newburyport and Newbury, Mass.. He was living in Newbury in 1836, and died in Newburyport, Nov.7,1856. His wife died in the same place July 8,1856.

No children.

- IV. Richard Waterhouse, born May 28,1783. He was a sailor and died in the West Indies. Was not living in 1836 when his father's pension was granted. He never married.
57. V. Phoebe C. Waterhouse, born Oct.26,1786
- VI. Elizabeth ("Betsey") Banks Waterhouse, born Mar.28,1788, married Nov.26,1809, Dr. Moses Fisk of Portland. She was also of Portland when married. They lived in Portland, Me., for a time and then removed to Passaconkeag, Me., where he died. She died in Cape Elizabeth, Me.

Children,-

1. John Waterhouse Fisk, born in Portland, 1810, married 1st. 1837-8 Saphronia Littlefield. She died in Lowell, 1844-5 and he mar. 2nd. ---- Sinclair. She was a widow and was the dau. of ----- Stockbridge,
He went to Minnesota, then to St. Louis, Mo., and is supposed to have gone later to New Orleans, La.
By his first wife he had one son and two daughters. The older of the latter mar. ---- Hurd, of Corinth, Me. She and her husband died in that place, leaving one son.
The younger daughter mar. ----- Huntoon, of Lowell, Mass. They had a son who died in the army.

2. ----- Fisk.

- VII. Moses Waterhouse, born Dec.19,1789. He was a lumberman at Passaconkeag and died unmarried in Bangor, Me., Dec.26,1834.
58. VIII. John Waterhouse, born May 14,1793.

39. 1X. Elias B. Waterhouse, born Dec.25,1795.

X. Joseph Waterhouse, born Oct.5,1799. He was a nurseryman and was residing in Boston, Mass., in 1836. In 1838 he was "of Scarboro" and died in Boston, unmarried.

2 3

GEORGE⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarboro, Me., Jan.21,1750, married Nov.23,1775, Dorcas, daughter of Joseph and Mary (Huston) Libby, born in Falmouth, Me.

He is said to have gone to Machias with his brother Enoch, but in 1774 removed to Gorham, Me., where he lived until his death. Apr.5, 1775, he was a yeoman, or farmer, of Gorham and bought fifty acres of land, (being part of 100 acre lot number 20) of Stephen Sawyer, for £84.

In 1816 he deeded his property, with certain reservations, to his daughters "Polly, Betsey and Sally." Nov.5,1822, he and his wife, Dorcas, sold water privileges at "Horse beef falls" in Gorham.

He was a Revolutionary soldier, his service, according to the Massachusetts records, being as follows,- "Falmouth, Cumberland Co. (Also given Gorham) Private Capt. John Brackett's co. of Minute-men, which marched April 21, 1775, in response to the alarm of April 19,1775, to headquarters; service, 5 days; also, Capt. Hart William's co. Col. Edmund Phinney's regt.; billeting allowed from time of enlistment to date of marching to headquarters, July 5,1775; credited with 7 weeks 2 days allowance; also, company return dated Cambridge, Oct.7,1775, reported discharged Sept.30,1775; also, order for money in lieu of bounty coat dated Camp at Cambridge, Oct.27,1775." Sept.12,1832 he applied for a pension and his claim was allowed. In his application he stated that he enlisted or was appointed May 1,1775, for nine months, in company and regiment as above and again in the summer of 1779, for six months in Capt. Roger Lib-

by's co., Major James Johnson's regt. He also stated that his residence was "Gorham, Maine Dist. since 1774."

He died Nov.9,1835.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Gorham.

1. Mary (Polly) Waterhouse, born Mar.11,1776, married (Int. July 23) Sept.6,1825, Capt. Thomas Libby, born in Scarborough, Me., Nov.12,1754. She was his third wife.
He settled on a farm in Scarborough, now a part of Gorham.

Was a Sergeant in the Revolutionary war and a Captian in the militia.

He died June 26,1836 and his widow Jan.30,1869.

No children.

11. Joseph Waterhouse, born April 16,1778, died at sea, unmarried.
60. 111. George Waterhouse, born Nov.2,1780. Hallowell, Me. records say Nov.3.
61. 1V. Charlotte Waterhouse, born Oct.19,1783.
- V. Betsey Waterhouse, born Apr.9,1786, (Gorham rec. July 2) married (Int.) Nov.13,1817, Levi, son of Stephen and Sarah (Jenness) Harris, born in Gorham, May 27,1790.
Levi died in South Windham, Me., Aug. 22,1871 and his wife in the same place Apr.12,1853.

Children,-

1. Stephen Harris, born Dec.13,1817, married and lived in Deering, Me. He had a daughter who mar. Frank Larrabee, of Scarborough.
2. Francis Harris, born in Westbrook, Me., June 2,1819, mar. June 14,1854, Mary, dau. of David and Mary (Brackett) Barber, born in Westbrook, 1815.
He was a farmer and lived and died in Windham, Me.

Children,-

1. Alfreda Harris, born in So. Windham.
3. Mary Jane Harris, born Mar.19,1823, prob. died unm.
She was born in Westbrook.

62. VI. Isaac Waterhouse, born Nov.9,1789.
63. VII. David Waterhouse, born June 4,1791. Gorham rec.say 1793.
- VIII. Simon Waterhouse, born Aug.14,1795, He was a farmer and died, unmarried, Jan.22,1866.
64. IX. Sarah Waterhouse, born Jan.12,1799.
65. X. Sargent Waterhouse, born June 7,1800. Gorham rec. June 6,1801.

24

THEOPHILUS⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarboro, Me., Dec. 17, 1751, married Nov. 23, 1774, Hannah, daughter of Thomas and Susannah (Downing) Goodwin, born in Wells, Me., Oct. 18, 1754.

By deed dated Dec. 22, 1772, his father conveyed to him for £240 fifty nine acres of land in Scarboro, bounded as follows,- "southerly on land in Possion of Lemuel Libby- Northerly on Land in Possession of Paul Thompson - & Westerly upon a Road leading from the Country Road to Beech Ridge.- being the same Land I bought of Charles Frost late of Falmouth Esq. Deceas'd, by who's deed to me, the bounds thereof may more Particularly appear, which Land is not to come into Possession said Theophilus till at my Decease, as I now only sell him the Reversion of said Land." In this deed Joseph is called "Gentleman," and Theophilus "Husbandman."

By a deed dated "this Twenty Second day of Novem^r.", and in the Second Year of American Independency Anno Domini 1777," Tobias Staples, of Scarboro, convey's to Theophilus Waterhouse, Yeoman, for £100, "A Certain tract of land Scituato in Scarboroughe Containing Forty Acres & and a half And is bounded Viz.^t beginning at a White ash tree mark^d four sides and so Runing from thence south West adjoining the intervail on nonesuch River thirty three Rod & a half: Thence Northwest One hundred & ninty four Rod: Thence southwest thirty three Rod & a half Thence SouthEast Ninty Seven Rod Thence North East Sixty Seven Rod Thence East Nintey Seven Rod to the first bound, being Lott N^o 33 in the five thousand acre division or one half thereof."

Nov. 24, 1777, Theophilus bought forty and one half acres of land adjoining the above of Abraham Tyler, of Scarboro, for fifteen shillings.

Oct. 4, 1787, he bought of Moses Harmon, for five pounds, nine a-

185.

ores and a half of land bounded as follows, viz., "beginning at a pine stump being the Extreame westerly Corner bounds of the said Theophilus's land: and so runs from thence Northwest fifty rods: Thence North East thirty rod and a half: Thence South East fifty rod to the said Theophilus's Land: Thence by said Land South west thirty rod and a half to the first mentioned bounds."

March 21, 1800, he bought of his brother, Nathaniel, for fifty dollars, two acres of salt marsh lying on the easterly side of Dunstan r river.

Dec. 8, 1809, he bought of Wallis Fenderson, for twenty five dollars, a certain tract of land, being one fourth part of a sixty seven acre lot, and bounded as follows, viz., "Beginning at the Southwest corner of s^d Theophilus's other land at the intervale- thence running by s^d intervale Southwest to the Southeast corner of William Meserve's land - thence Northwest by s^d Meserve's land one half the length of said lot - thence Northeast, half the width of s^d lot - thence Southeast half the length of s^d lot to the first mentioned bounds; being the same lot of land which Daniel & John Moulton purchased of Benjamin Staples."

Theophilus Waterhouse was "of Biddeford". Me., when he married but he settled in Scarboro, on a hill near the Nonesuch river, and on that part of the farm which was afterwards called the "old field." The buildings were not far from Ephriam Libby's place and close by what was known to the later owners of the farm as the "flat top" apple tree, so called because of its even, flat top. Here he raised his family and when the boys grew up they built a new house, some half mile away on the main road, called the "Burnham" road, into which the family moved. The place remained in possession of the family until about 1880.

March 15, 1814, Theophilus, "in consideration of the love and good will which I bear my son Al Waterhouse of said Scarborough yeoman and in consideration of the sum of Fifteen hundred dollars", sells Al all

his real estate of every kind and description whatever with all the buildings thereon standing. At this time the real estate consisted of the property he purchased of Tobias Staples, Moses Harmon, Nathaniel Waterhouse, Daniel and John Moulton and Wallis Fenderson. The deed was given upon the condition that it should not take effect during the lifetime of either Theophilus or his wife, and was recorded April 8, 1826. On the same day the deed was drawn, Mar. 15, 1814, Al gave his father a mortgage for the same property in the same amount, \$1500, the deed closing as follows, viz.,

"Provided nevertheless, That if I the said Al Waterhouse my heirs executors, or administrators, shall never during the natural life of him the said Theophilus Waterhouse and Hannah his wife, or the longest liver of them, sell or dispose of any part of the foregoing estate without their free and voluntary consent.- and shall myself at all times carry on the aforesaid farm in a workmanlike manner, and deliver to the said Theophilus & Hannah yearly the produce of one half of said farm, and the one half of the income thereof, arising from the sale of any produce or stock raised upon said farm, or otherwise during their natural lives or the life of the longest liver of them - and shall pay all the taxes hereafter assessed - and all debts by them necessarily contracted for their support & comfort - and shall pay or cause to be paid to my sister Hannah Waterhouse one Cow, one bed, and six chairs - and shall permit her to live in the house so long as she remains unmarried - and shall at all times find & provide for my said Father & Mother both in sickness & in health such things as may be proper & convenient for them, and at all times & in all situations conduct and behave towards them as a faithful & dutiful son ought to do, during their natural lives & the life of the longest liver of them without any fraud or delay, according to the true intent & meaning of these presents - Then this deed to be void and of no effect, otherwise to abide by and remain in full force and virtue."

June 25, 1814, Theophilus, in consideration of the sum of \$400, paid him by his son, Al, conveys to the latter, a yeoman, of Scarborough, "all my stock of cattle of every kind and description, and also all my farming utensils of every kind, including my Gun & accoutrements - which I may own at my decease; provided however that the said Al Waterhouse or his heirs are not to come into possession of the above described articles so as to enable him to sell any part of them during my natural life without my consent." On the back of this Bill of Sale was the following enforcement, viz.,

"I am to keep this till after the death of T. Waterhouse & then deliver it to Al Waterhouse but T. Waterhouse is to have it when he pleases."

L. Lewis.

Theophilus Waterhouse died in Scarboro, Apr.2,1826, and his widow died in the same place Dec.7,1842.

Theophilus Waterhouse was the great grandfather of the writer. Although born in Boston, Mass., the latter removed with his parents to the old place and into the house on the "Burnham" road when he was about six months old and lived there until about eleven years of age. He remembers very well the old "flat top" apple tree, the sour apples which it bore and the cellar hole of the old house near by, besides other parts of the farm which were familiar to his boyhood days. At the lower end of the "old field", overlooking the meadow or intervale, was the old burying ground. When the family moved into the new house this burying ground, although then some three quarters of a mile from any house and in a most lonesome spot, was still used. At the time of his grandfather's death the writer well remembers the funeral procession wending its way through the pasture and then through the old field to this out of the way place where he was laid to rest. When the farm was sold a lot was purchased in the cemetery at Gorham Village or Corner and the bodies of Theophilus, his wife and their son, Al, were reinterred at that place. In going over the old place in the summer of 1913, or about that year, it was found that the fence had been moved between the pasture and the field so that the old burying ground was out in the pasture and almost covered with young pine trees. On one slate stone the letters D.G. were barely visible. This probably marked the grave of Daniel Goodwin who married Theophilus' daughter Hannah.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Scarboro.

1. Mary Waterhouse, born Oct.15,1775, died Apr.16,1776, Scarboro.

66. 11. Thomas Waterhouse, born Mar.23,1777, bapt. June 29,1777.
67. 111. William Waterhouse, born July 14, bapt. Sept.26,1779.
- 1V. Theophilus Waterhouse, born Jan.2,1782, died May 16,1788, in
Scarboro.
68. V. Asa Waterhouse, born Sept. 12, bapt. Oct.31,1784.
69. VI. Theophilus Waterhouse, born Aug.9, bapt. Oct.26,1788.
- VII. Susannah Waterhouse, born May 22,1791, died July 15,1791, in
Scarboro.
70. VIII. Al Waterhouse, born May 21,1792.
- IX. Hannah Waterhouse, born May 25,1796, married, Dec.10,1818, Dan
Page Goodwin, of Saco.
He was a sailor and was impressed on board an English
man-of-war and kept several years. He died May 31,1836,
and she married again.
- Children,-
1. Infant.

2 5

JOSEPH⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarboro, Me.,
Feb.12, and baptized Mar.17,1754, married Apr.4,1776, Lydia Harmon, born
April 24,1755.

He was a farmer and lived in Scarboro, near Scottow's hill, un-
til about 1782 when he removed to Standish Neck and settled on a farm.

He was a Revolutionary soldier and when the writer was in Stand-
ish, about 1890, he was shown a pitcher by a Mrs. Ward, a great granddaugh-
ter of Joseph Waterhouse, which the latter brought home from Boston, Mass.,
while on a furlough.

The Massachusetts records gives his service as follows,-
"Capt. John Rice's co.; billeting allowed from date of enlistment, May 18,
1775, to date of marching from Scarborough to headquarters, July 4,1775;
credited with 47 days allowance; also, Drummer, Capt. Rice's co., Col. Ed-
mund Phinney's (31st) regt; company return dated Sept.29,1775."

Private, Capt. John Hasting's co., Col. Henry Jackson's regt; Continental Army pay a/c., service July 1, 1777, to Sept. 22, 1780; Sergeant, Capt. Joshua Orne's co., Col. Jackson's regt. pay roll for Oct. 1778; In Capt. John Hasting's 6th co., Col. Jackson's regt., muster roll for Apr. 1779, dated at Pawtuxet, engaged July 1, 1777 for three years; Private, Capt. Hasting's (2nd) co., Col. Jackson's regt., pay roll Oct. 1779; also, same co. and regt. in regimental return made up to Dec. 31, 1779, dated Camp at Providence; also, return certified at Camp near Morristown, Apr. 30, 1780, of officers and men belonging to Mass. in Col. Henry Sherburne's regt., who were incorporated into a regt. under Com. of Col. Henry Jackson by arrangement of Apr. 9, 1779. Capt. Hasting's co., rank, Sergeant, residence, Scarborough, engaged for the town of Upton. Reported deserted June 16, 1779, returned or retaken Aug. 31, 1779, and reduced to private on that date.

He is also, probably, the one whose name appears in a "list of men raised to serve in the Continental Army, as returned by Capt. Benjamin Farrar to Col. Moses Wheelock, at Westborough, sworn to at Upton, Feb. 14, 1778; residence, Boston; engaged for town of Upton; joined Capt. Orne's co., Col. Lee's regt.; term, 3 years."

Joseph Waterhouse applied for a pension Apr. 14, 1818, and his claim was allowed. In his application he stated that he was appointed July 1, 1777, and served to Sept. 22, 1780, and was in Capt. Joshua Orne's co. and in Capt. John Hasting's co., under Col. Lee and in Col. Jackson's Continental regt. He was a Sergeant and was engaged in battles in Rhode Island and Springfield, N.J.

Referring to his desertion, as mentioned above, the following is a copy of a letter preserved in the archives at Washington, which was written by his father, praying that he be pardoned, sentence of death having been passed upon him.

Scarborough ye 27th Jany 1780.

May it Please your Excellency:

The Humble Petition of Joseph Waterhouse containing the Particulars of my son Joseph Waterhouse belonging to Colo. Jacksons Regiment in the Continental Army the unhappy circumstances of the said Joseph being as I understand under sentence of death by the martial law for the crime of disertion.

Your Petitioner prays That Your Excellency would take into Your Wise consideration the Unhappy circumstance of the said Joseph the criminal now under sentence of death by Your Excellencys compassion in granting the said Joseph your free and full Pardon: as also from your Excellencies feeling compassion for his fellow creature but also from Motives as follows -- The unhappy Joseph the criminal has here in Town a wife & Two Children under difficult Circumstances and chiefly Render^d so by the absence of her unhappy husband who - for the love of his Countrey & the firm attachment to Liberty has Sacrific^d all That was near and dear to him for the sake of himself and Posterity altho' his present conduct is not to be Justified and the seaming Reverse to what I have heretofore Related but Persons may be guilty of and Contract gross Errors but may yet mean Right at heart nevertheless. And also myself I have a free mind & love of my Countrey and would not be guilty of Countenancing or giving any Encouragement to so vile & Detrimental Injury to the common Cause but look upon the Martial Law to be wholesome good & Just to support Peace & good Order in the Camp: I have been for the Support of Liberty ever since this unhappy dispute began and have had three Sons engaged in the Service of their Countrey the most part of the Time &c.

And Your Petitioner Prays Your Excellencies Wise & benevolent Compassion for my Unhappy Son at the footstool of your Mercy by granting him your Excellencies full and free Parson. And Your Petitioner in duty bound,

Shall ever Pray

Joseph Waterhouse.

To His Excellency

Genl Washinton.

This letter was addressed to "His Excellency George Washinton Esq. General of The Continent^l Army at Head Quarters at New York," and on the back had this endorsement, viz., "Joseph Waterhouse 27 Jany 1780 petition in favor of son pardoned 10 Feby."

Joseph Waterhouse died Aug. 2, (Pention records say July 2,) 1837, in Standish, Me., and his widow died Mar. 28, 1836, in the same place.

CHILDREN:-

71. 1. Lydia Waterhouse, born Jan. 3, bapt. Aug. 3, 1777, in Scarboro, Me.
72. 11. William H. Waterhouse, born Oct. 14, 1779, in Scarboro, Me.

- 73. 111. Elizabeth Waterhouse, born Nov.20,1781, in Scarboro, Me.
- 74. 1V. Josiah Waterhouse, born Sept.23,1784, in Standish, Me.
- 75. V. Olive Waterhouse, born June 14,1787, in Standish, Me.
- 76. VI. Abigail Waterhouse, born Aug.16,1790, in Standish, Me.
- 77. VII. Joseph Waterhouse, born July 15,1793, in Standish, Me.
- 78. VIII. Martha Waterhouse, born July 16,1796, in Standish, Me.
- 79. IX. Mary Waterhouse, born Mar.3,1798 or 1800, in Standish, Me.

X. Montgomery Waterhouse, born Sept.9,1801, in Standish, Me., died Oct.9,1825, in Standish, unmarried. According to his father's pension papers he was seventeen years old in 1820.

26

NATHANIEL⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born Feb.6, baptized Feb.8,1756 in Scarboro, Me., married Elizabeth Cain born in Wells, Me., April 4,1758. They were married Nov.19,1778, and she was baptized in Scarboro, Oct.15,1780.

He was a farmer and resided on the homestead all his life. By deed dated Dec.22,1772, Joseph Waterhouse, of Scarboro, Gentleman, for 300 pounds conveys to Nathaniel Waterhouse of said Scarboro, "my youngest son, a minor, 40 Acres of Land in said Scarboro bounded Southerly upon Joseph Rices Land, Northerly upon Lemuel Libby's Land, and Westerly on a Road, leading from the Country Road to Beech Ridge being the same Land I bought of James Springer by who's Deed to me & Sam¹ Libby Deceased, the bounds thereof may more Particularly appear - together with the House, Mill and Privilege, and buildings thereon standing, which Land & Premises are not to come into the Possession of said Nathaniel till at my Decease, as I now only sell him the Reversion of the same." Apr.28,1791 this conveyance was made absolute and is described as the "Land on which I now live."

By deed dated Apr.23,1791, Joseph Waterhouse conveyed to Nathaniel Waterhouse, yeoman, for 240 pounds, a certain tract of land in Scarborough containing, by estimation, fifty nine acres, be same more or less, situate on the northeasterly side of the Road from Dunstan meeting house to the town of Gorham, and is the same land I bought of Charles Frost.

In a list of members of the church in Scarborough, dated Dec.1800, appear the names of Rachel and Nathaniel Waterhouse, and against the latter was written, "who joined the Methodists."

He is said to have been drafted for the army during the Revolutionary war and to have marched as far as Peekskill, N.Y., but soon after received his discharge. No mention is made of this service, however, in the Massachusetts records.

He died Mar.27,1845. His wife died May 24, or May 22 according to the Scarborough records, 1840.

CHILDREN:-

All born in Scarborough.

80. I. John Waterhouse, born June 28,1779, bapt. Oct.29,1780.
81. II. Rachel Waterhouse, born Dec.13, bapt. Dec.31,1780.
82. III. Richard Waterhouse, born Jan.20,1782.
83. IV. Nathaniel Waterhouse, born Oct.20,1783.
 V. Lydia Waterhouse, born Jan.10, bapt. Aug.21,1785, married Zachariah Harmon, of Saco, Me.
 He was a farmer. She died in Saco, Jan.3,1863.
 They had no children.
84. VI. Meribah Waterhouse, born Apr.24,1787.
 VII. Mary Libby Waterhouse, born June 28,1788, bapt. May 10,1789, married(Int.) July 15,1845, Samuel Sinnott, of Saco.
 He was a farmer. She Dec.31,1848, in Saco.
 No children.
85. VIII. Isaac Waterhouse, born Dec.14,1789, bapt, Jan.3,1790.
86. IX. Joseph Waterhouse, born Feb.4, bapt. May 20,1793.
87. X. Abram Waterhouse, born Apr.30,1794.

XI. Samuel Waterhouse, born Dec.9,1795, died about twelve years of age.

XII. Elizabeth Waterhouse, born June 24,1796, died in childhood.

88. XIII. Silas Waterhouse, born July 17,1801.

27

SARAH⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Joseph³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) born in Scarboro, Me., July 29,1762, bap. May 22,1763, married Dec.11,1783, Deacon Isaac Libby born in Scarboro, 1760.

He was a farmer and settled on Standish Neck soon after his marriage. About 1800 he removed to Freedom, Me., where he lived until his death Dec.1,1838. His widow died in Freedom, Apr.15,1839. Mr. Libby was for many years a Deacon of the Christian Church in Freedom.

CHILDREN:-

- I. Hannah Libby, bap. in Scarboro, Nov.20,1785, m. Abel Works, of Unity, Me.
- II. Isaac Libby, bap. June 29,1788, d. young.
- III. Joseph Libby, born in Standish, Me., July31,1788, married 1811, Lucy H. Grant, of Saco, Me., and dau. of Benjamin and Susan (Perkins)Grant.
Mr. Libby grew up in Freedom and cleared a farm in the north-east part of the town. After thirteen years he gave this farm to his brother, Isaac, for wild land in Albion, Me., which he cleared and on which he lived about twenty years. He then went, with his son, Robert, to Exeter, Me., and there they, together, cleared a third farm. He d. in Albion, Feb. 1864, and his widow d. in Garland, Me., Apr.10,1877.

Children:-

1. Harriet Libby, b. June 12,1812, m. Jan.1837, Joel Work.
2. Robert Libby, b. Feb.1,1814, m. 1st. Nov.15,1836, Betsey Work, of Albion, and dau. of his Aunt Hannah(Libby) Work. Betsey d. in Albion, Aug.21,1844, and he m. 2nd. Mar.25,1845, Julia Ann Rogers, of Troy, Me., and dau. of John and Lucy(Work)Rogers. She d. in Exeter, Me., Jan.15,1855, and he m. 3rd., Oct.10,1856, Catherine H. Pillsbury, of Garland, Me., and dau. of James and Content(Morrill)Pillsbury.

His third wife d. in Exeter, May 3, 1873.
He was a farmer and lived in various places.

Children:-

- I. Abel W. Libby, b. Mar. 14, 1838, in Albion, Me.,
m. Apr. 1875, Mary Goudy.
He was a farmer until he went west. He d.
in Lead City, Colo., July 23, 1878.
 - II. Hillman R. Libby, b. Oct. 16, 1839, d. Jan. 3, 1847.
 - III. Almada Libby, b. May 18, 1842, d. Oct. 1863.
 - IV. Elizabeth Libby, b. July 31, 1844, m. Oct. 1866,
Albion A. Soule.
By 2nd. wife.
 - V. Esther Libby, b. June 24, 1846, d. July 14, 1846.
 - VI. Louisa M. Libby, b. Sept. 3, 1847, m. Oct. 1873,
Samuel Banton.
 - VII. Lucy G. Libby, b. Mar. 14, 1849, d. Apr. 30, 1856.
 - VIII. John R. Libby, b. Mar. 15, 1853.
By 3rd. wife.
 - IX. Hattie Libby, b. June 1, 1857, Garland, Me., d.
May 1868.
 - X. Herbert J. Libby, b. Oct. 25, 1859, Exeter, Me.,
d. Apr. 1, 1877.
 - XI. Elmer G. Libby, b. Feb. 14, 1863.
 - XII. Mabel Julia Libby, b. July 31, 1865, Carmel, Me.
 - XIII. Willoba H. Libby, b. Dec. 3, 1867.
 - XIV. Charles A. Libby, b. Sept. 28, 1870. Exeter, Me.
3. Sally Libby, b. Dec. 16, 1815, d. Aug. 22, 1870, Carmel, Me.
 4. Mary Libby, b. May 29, 1818, m. Jeremiah Rowe, of St. Al-
bans, Me.
 5. Joseph Libby, b. Nov. 7, 1820, m. Angeline Casey, of Far-
mington, Me. He removed to Minnesota about 1854. Had
a son and daughter.
 6. Artemas Libby, b. Jan. 8, 1823, m. Louisa H. Snow.
 7. Louisa S. Libby, b. Nov. 11, 1825, m. June 11, 1843, B. G.
Murch.
 8. Elmyra Libby, b. Jan. 24, 1828, m. Jan. 24, 1856, James Pills-
bury.
 9. Maria Libby, b. July 1830, m. Rufus Downs.
- IV. David Libby, born in Standish, Me., about 1789, m. 1st., Mary
Powler, of Unity, Me. He m. 2nd., Abigail, dau. of Mark and
Anna Libby.

Children:-

1. Betsey Libby, b. Mar. 8, 1812, m. and had children, Sarah,
Mary, Nelson G., Elisha, Gilbert, Benjamin F., Samuel
C., Mark A., Marcia E.

2. Ann Libby, b. 1814, m. William Davis.

By 2nd. wife.

3. Daughter, m. William Paddock, of Fairfield, Me.

4. Charles Libby, lived in Bradford.

5. Daughter, m. Alden B. Strout.

V. Robert Libby born in Standish, Me., Sept. 6, 1790, m. Oct. 8, 1815, Anna Clark Hasty.

After his marriage he lived in Buxton, Me., and later removed to Freedom, Me. He d. in China, Me., Jan. 13, 1876. His wife d. in Freedom, Nov. 14, 1866.

Children:-

1. Margaret Libby, b. in Buxton, Aug. 9, 1816, m. Nov. 9, 1837, William Colley. She d. Jan. 22, 1874.

Children:-

I. Ann H. Colley, b. Aug. 31, 1838, in Albion, Me., d. Oct. 2, 1846.

II. Julia E. Colley, b. Apr. 14, 1845, m. Darius F. Gilman.

III. Josephine M. Colley, b. Aug. 23, 1850, m. George Jackson.

IV. William E. Colley, b. Feb. 2, 1855.

2. Sarah Libby, b. May 30, 1818, m. 1st., Oct. 15, 1867, Elijah Winslow. He d. Mar. 31, 1875, and she m. 2nd., Oct. 17, 1877, Thomas B. Lincoln.

3. Cyrus Libby, b. in Buxton, Me., Sept. 29, 1823, m. Dec. 1847, Frances Ellen Dyer, of Portland, Me., dau. of Henry and Sarah (Strout) Dyer. He was in the Civil War and d. on his return home, in Gorham, Me., Nov. 14, 1864. His widow m. Richard Sanborn, of Gorham and they removed to Aroostook County, Me.

Children:-

I. Charles A. Libby, b. June 2, 1852, Freedom, Me., d. Sept. 10, 1853, Portland, Me.

II. Anna C. Libby, b. Sept. 22, 1855, Portland, Me. --- Hillman.

VI. Sally Libby, b. 1792, d. aged 22 years.

VII. Betsey Libby, b. 1794, d. 1865, unm.

VIII. Josiah Libby, d. aged 14 years.

IX. Isaac Libby, b. in Standish, Me., Apr. 21, 1797, m. Oct. 10, 1826,

Hannah Abbott, dau. of Reuben and Mercia(Narr)Abbott.
 Mr. Libby was a farmer and lived in Freedom. He d. Mar. 10,
 1832. His widow d. Nov. 7, 1872.

Children:-

1. Rebecca Libby, b. Aug. 29, 1826, m. Dec. 25, 1850, Alfred Warren

Children:-

- I. Peace E. Warren, b. Feb. 19, 1852, m. Feb. 14, 1875, George W. Bridges.
- II. Moses A. Warren, b. Sept. 5, 1857.

2. Moses W. Libby, b. Jan. 16, 1830, d. July 11, 1856, unm.

X. Abram Libby, born Apr. 2, 1801, m. Sept. 13, 1840, Jane Bragdon, of Durham, Me., dau. of Ephriam and Abigail(Munnell)Bragdon. Mr. Libby was a farmer and lived on the homestead in Freedom. He d. very suddenly Dec. 13, 1862. His widow m. --- Hussey.

Children:-

Two sons, d. at birth.

28

BENJAMIN⁴ WATERHOUSE, (Timothy,³ Timothy,² Richard,¹) M.D., born in Newport, R.I., probably in a house fronting on Market Square, March 5, 1754, married first, June 1, 1788, Elizabeth Oliver, of Roxbury, Mass. She was the daughter of Andrew and Phoebe(Spooner)Oliver, and the granddaughter of Judge Peter Oliver, who was the last Chief Justice of the Superior Court of Judicature of the Province of Massachusetts Bay. He was a man of great wealth, high social and official position, great scholarship and of much ability. Elizabeth Oliver was born July 31, 1769, and died Nov. 21, 1815, in Cambridge, Mass.

Dr. Waterhouse married second, Sept. 19, 1819, Louisa, daughter of

Thomas Lee.

Benjamin Waterhouse was one of eleven children, only one of whom, besides himself, lived to be over twenty eight years old. Even he was of a delicate frame and "tender fibre," and gave little indication, in his youth, of the long and strenuous life which he was to lead. Indeed he tells us that before he was twenty years old his friend, Gilbert Stuart, who was about his own age, and who afterwards became celebrated as a painter, told him he would never live to see his thirtieth birthday.

From several sources we get some glimpses of his boyhood days. In a journal, kept during the later years of his life, we read,- "I was a child of a Quaker family, my parents kind, indulgent, and of a candid, liberal cast of mind which led me to educate myself." But although brought up a Quaker, he says his mind was more occupied with Julius Caesar

The next page is 194.

Hannibal and the heroes of the Illiad and of the Aeneid than with the great Quakers George Fox and William Penn. "It is remarkable," he writes, "that when I was a child my great desire was to see & hear large bells, and large cannon, and huge ships of war. I delighted in reading of battles from the siege of Jerusalem and of Troy to the wars of the Turks and Russians, and of the Duke of Marlborough, and I was far from being a rough, pugnacious boy myself, and perhaps more disposed to keep out of harms way than most others; but I had a strange wish to see and to hear large church bells, and large cannon; a 24 pounder was a delightful object, and I would gladly walk 20 miles to have seen one of 36, and would have gone farther to have seen a 42 pounder than an elephant. My dreams were of huge bells, of cannon of the largest calibre, and an inclination of that sort, has extended into old age. Even now, an octogenarian I delight in reading the battles of the King of Prussia and of Napoleon Bonaparte, and yet born and brought up in the bosom (of) remarkable family quiet and tranquil Quakerism. Yet it was and is my ruling passion, stronger even than Natural History."

In another place we read, "I never received a box on the ear or a shaking that I remember from my own father. At the age of scribbling & picture making I showed him my stars, trees and ships and when I used to equal and sometimes surpass my old friend Gilbert Stuart he took delight in showing my productions to Governor Wanton, and others of his friends, and I remember once when he showed an old sea Captain my chef-doevre a ship of the line with yellow Gumbouge sails, the old captain said on returning it 'that son of yours has something in his head besides nitts & lice' which I knew not how to construe, as I felt it such an odd mixture of encomium, and its contriary."

Again he writes, "To a sensible mother I owe more than I can express. She taught me to think and I began reading the bible with her in a

full and liberal manner. I was surrounded with *moral people who believed only in the old Testament, but I was taught to respect them equally with Christians. My thoughts were in the camps of the Israelites and among the Greeks and Romans, but it was England that finally engrossed my attention, for instead of play I was running over the Spectator which excited a desire to go to London. Milton's prose writings were congenial to me and my father. From him and them I imbibed steady principles, a love of truth and fearlessness of conduct, which never allowed my countenance to fall or my hand to waver in their support. In studying by myself while others slept, I acquired a better relish for the beauties of the Latin and English writers than if I had been driven through the forms of a college. Being alone I thought more and labored steadily *con amore*. (with love).

Although I was a great reader the love of books was not my engrossing passion. Drawing and painting also occupied my thoughts by day and my dreams by night. One of my companions, Gilbert Stuart, having the same turn of mind, we became intimate friends and from boyish amusement our drawing became a matter of serious emulation. I remember the period when he was ready to relinquish the contest. He confined himself to human heads, while I was more excursive. At length a sensible Scotch gentleman, named Alexander, took Stuart under his patronage and let him copy some of his pictures. One, a pointer dog, lying on a carpet, was so well done and so much admired, that I in my turn gave up the contest in despair. I was often to him what Rembrant's mother was to that wonderful Dutchman, an object at hand on which to exercise a ready pencil."

Later Stuart painted a portrait of Dr. Waterhouse which was placed in the Redwood library, in Newport.

*The Jews. The synagogue in Newport was the oldest in the country.

Young Waterhouse received the ground work of a good classical education chiefly in a school founded by the celebrated Dean Berkoley. The eminent and very learned Dr. Arthur Brown, L.L.D., who afterwards went to Dublin and became Senior Fellow of Trinity College, in that city, King's Professor of Greek and of Law, Vicar General of Kildare and Prime Sargent, Member of Parliament for the University, and author of many learned works; Gilbert Charles Stuart, already mentioned, were at the same school. All three are said to have had a great desire to visit Europe, and all obtained their wish in this regard, although under very different circumstances. In his journal Dr. Waterhouse writes, "I never was whipped at school but once, and that very slightly, but the indignity was lasting, and though it was only on the palm of my hands, my parents allowed me to quit the school to the astonishment of the British Instructor."

Here is another interesting entry under date of Nov. 5, 1838. "Gunpowder treason of Rh Island celebrity. A memorable celebration in my school boy days when the stolen tubs and barrels came to light at Newport which annual candle-light parade of the Pope and the Devil terminated the year after I went to London viz. 1775, the dawn of the morning of our glorious American Independence. Boston and Newport had kept up the parade of carrying through the streets, the well wrought and stuffed images of Pope of Rome, and his alleged patron the Devil, and after exhibiting them from a large stage drawn by horses and receiving a small contribution from every house they stopped at, they burnt them at 12 o'clock at night. The North end and the South end of Boston had each their Pope & Devil, when the two parties met, they generally had a battle when victory commonly favored the North end, who could muster more blackguards than the South. This annual frolic continued until 1776 when the Devil gave place to Lord North." In one of these affairs the Doctor says he was wounded in the

forehead.

When he was about fifteen years of age he entered the office of Doctor John Halliburton, a Scotch surgeon, who had settled in Newport some years previous to this time. It was the custom in those days for physicians to receive into their offices, for instruction and assistance, young men who were inclined to adopt the practice of medicine as a profession. Usually a fee was charged but Dr. Halliburton, we are told, ^{preferred} to choose more carefully those most desirable and take them without a fee. At this time he described the sort of youth he wanted to Mr. Abraham Redwood, one of the foremost citizens and founder of the Redwood Library in that city, who recommended young Waterhouse. At first his father objected to the arrangement but finally consented on condition that his son's school education should go on, that he pursue his Latin studies and that he reside with his parents.

"The social obligations of Dr. Halliburton," Dr. Waterhouse later wrote, "imposed on me an unreasonable weight of care, but as I never mixed with those of my own age in parties of pleasure, I was equal to the task. During this time, I never saw Boston or strayed from home so far as Providence. In the midst of pleasure, I had the reputation of being a retired, studious youth devoted to physic, and having attained the reputation I was proud to maintain it."

The Redwood Library in Newport contained a choice collection of books, which had been brought over from London, and during his pupilage Waterhouse, besides attending to his duties, found time to read all it contained on medicine and chemistry, including works by Boerhaave, Bacon and Newton which expanded his mind and gave him a glimpse of the universe of science. This was all done evenings at his father's quiet home.

After serving with Dr. Halliburton for seven years he became dissatisfied with his practice and longed to get away. "I saw," he says, "no chance of going to London. The times were turbulent, the tea had

been destroyed in Boston Harbor, and the sloop Liberty belonging to the Kings Commissions had been destroyed in Newport Harbor. I saw this transaction from beginning to end. As my acquaintances were almost entirely of the British party and my preceptor, a loyal Scotchman, under pay as hospital surgeon, no wonder that I imbibed at his table, a mere youth as I was then, what was then called Tory principles. The gentleman whose conversation tended to fix me in my anti-American notions was Robert Lightfoot, an Englishman. Being much with him, I became, in the language of the times, a Promising young Tory. This was a great source of trouble to my father who would rise from the table when some of our military parties were marching by with fife and drum and would recount to us the taking of Louisburg by the New England troops and always gave his decided opinion that we were the most fearless set of men in the world. While he talked, I thought so too, but, when I listened to some others and when left to myself, the mighty power of Great Britian, and especially her matchless Navy, created ideas which prevailed over all my father's good sense. In 1774, I went to Philadelphia to be inoculated for small pox, as it could not be done in Rhode Island or any New England state without violating a rigidly enforced law. My letters of introduction to that city and to New York threw me among the Tories and I returned home deeply entrenched in my Tory principles. Pressing seamen from our vessels just returning to their families after a long voyage, however, almost overcome my opinion of the mightiness of Britain. I was so deeply impressed with its cruelty, that I openly rejoiced when I saw my countrymen combat with success the British Press Gang. My intercourse with their frigates and officers never prevented my denouncing before them all this abominable practice.

Having finished my pupilage, I had nothing to do but read. I had exhausted the Newport library and longed to be where I could learn something more. Looking about doing nothing was to me hard work. This

tedium was relieved by my father's friend, Abram Redwood. He said to me, 'Benjamin, seven years ago I recommended you to Dr. Halliburton, and, having observed your devotion to study, I can now with increased confidence recommend you to your kinsman Dr. Fothergill. He is a rich man and at the head of his profession in London. I have founded a library in Newport and will now give them a physician. Hitherto we have had only Scotch or German physicians. I will give them an American one!' With that view he patronized me and preparation was made for my going to my kinsman, who readily consented to receive me."

He sailed for London in March 1775, in the ship Thomas which was the last vessel to escape from the Port of Boston before it was closed by Lord North as its punishment for destroying the tea and for other acts outrageous in the sight of the Parliament of England. He was the only passenger and the Captain was instructed to give him every accommodation. His father went with him as far as the lighthouse. On account of a light wind the ship soon returned to port but after three days again set sail. Of this delay Dr. Waterhouse later wrote, - "This interval was painful to us all, especially to my mother for whom, besides the usual portion of natural affection, I had the highest veneration. Of eleven children, she had only one son and one daughter left and that son she might never see again. My father, on taking leave a second time, lost his usual firmness. He would have fainted, but for assistance. To see such an alteration in his firm frame and intrepid eye alarmed me for his Quaker garb never disguised the fearless man. This second parting almost made me repent my enterprise, but hereditary resolution overcame the impression. During seventeen days we had little wind and that little was ahead. At length, when near the Channel, we met ships bound for America and transports of armed vessels going to Boston to enforce the acts of Parliament. It was then that I first felt a change in my political sentiments. I saw ship loads of soldiers going to fight my countrymen and,

without reasoning on the subject, I wished that my countrymen might overcome and send them back again. Before we arrived at the mouth of the Thames, I found all my Tory principles had evaporated and left such feelings as my wiser father was imbued with."

Upon his arrival in London young Waterhouse was much impressed with his surroundings, but all this magnificence, he tells us, did not drive from his mind the new but strong idea that England, if she drew the sword against her thirteen colonies, would never subjugate them. He had letters from Loyalists in Newport to deliver and one to John Wilkes, Lord Mayor of London, from whom he received attention. The first letter he wrote home, he says, gave his father great satisfaction, nor did he withhold any change of sentiment from his Tory friends.

His first six months in London were passed in the home of an elderly woman as a sort of probation, that "the wise and wary Fothergill might see what sort of a young man this young American might be." When the edge of his New England curiosity was somewhat abated he entered the hospitals and attended lectures accompanied by a strict Quaker who was also preparing for practice. Waterhouse soon acquired the reputation of being a very industrious student, which, in addition to his relationship to Dr. Fothergill, was of great advantage to him. After some months he was sent to Edinburgh, Scotland, having letters from Fothergill to the Medical Professors there. He also had letters from his old master Dr. Halliburton to a Jacobite Lady of quality, the venerable Lady Sutton, "and relished," he says, "the company of that overlaid party." At this time the celebrated Robertson was President of the University, Cullen and Munroe were professors, while Erskine, Blair and others were distinguished preachers.

During his stay in Edinburgh he made the most of his time and says he never missed a lecture or a days attendance in the Royal Infirmary. Monroe showed him little attention but Cullen was interested in him and invited him to stay over night at his house. After being there three

months he was elected Secretary of the Royal Medical Society, which he considered a compliment to Dr. Fothergill. He held this office during his stay at the University. While in the city, he says he was never treated uncivilly because of his American politics or Republican principles, or because he was not a Free Mason, which all the men seemed to be. When the course of lectures was finished he returned to London by water some wonder being expressed at the presence on board of a young Quaker physician.

It was now arranged that he should board at the home of a niece of Fothergill's. Here he met the celebrated James Ferguson, the astronomical and philosophical writer and also William Curtis author of "Flora Londonensis" and other botanical works, and during all his stay in London he had access to the finest botanical gardens in the world. For a time, he tells us, he spent his time agreeably enough about Grace and Church streets, and although he was near the hospitals he did not visit them as formerly. Later he writes of this period as follows,-

"Dissections, wounds and ulcers formed such contrast to the flowers of philosophy and the captivating pictures which I saw, that I was missed oftener than I was seen by the physicians and surgeons of the hospitals. This at times disturbed my conscience. Ferguson's lectures and botanical excursions with Curtis, together with the garulous philosophy of the ladies, seemingly overpowered the great object of my voyage to Europe. I, however, acquired a knowledge of the world and of domestic life, its concords and discords, yet I was soon convinced that my situation, however pleasant to a young man was not a profitable one. I ventured to mention my discontent to Fothergill. He had observed me and my situation and was glad I was not easy in it, saying that he should alter it."

The latter's practice was chiefly consulting and principally among the nobility and gentry. In summer he retired to his country seat where he spent three months. Upon leaving his city residence this season

he arranged that his nephew should occupy it until he returned. The latter was much surprised at this unusual mark of confidence especially as he was not yet twenty one years old. "When I found myself," he says, "with only two servants in the elegant mansion of Fothergill I devoted all my time and faculties to the study of my profession." He attended regularly the lectures of George Fordyce and John Hunter and gained gain-
ed a knowledge of minerals from De Costa. Having a fine library at hand he hardly allowed himself time to sleep. He was called on and noticed by Fothergill's personal and medical friends and he soon began to realize the advantage of his change of place. Once during this time he attended the theatre but as the next day's papers announced "A crowded audience last night and among them Dr. Fothergill's nephew," he did not go again.

When Fothergill returned in the fall he kept young Waterhouse at his home and the latter says "nearly every night during three years, I with my transcript lectures and commonplace book, sat at the same table with this industrious philosopher from eight o'clock to eleven, both of us exercising our pens in our own ways. On leaving the room on one of these evenings, the Doctor once said 'go on, kinsman, with your notes of what others think, but thou wilt never be a great man till thou hast forgotten them all', meaning, of course, that he must think for himself."

The study of Physic and Natural History, however, did not take all of his time for he found opportunity to write in the cause of America, as did his kinsman who, we are told, was as good and conscientious an advocate of the American cause as a wise, loyal and honest Englishman could or ought to be. Later Dr. Waterhouse wrote regarding this matter, "who can wonder that medicine and politics were mixed together in a young, ardent and anxious brain, far distant from his suffering country."

A circumstance which rendered Dr. Fothergill's home a peculiarly valuable one to a young student was the former's custom of holding public breakfasts. His house was a center of philosophical information.

His vast circle of practice, as a consulting physician; his multiplied engagements; his correct and sober habits as a strict Quaker; and above all his rigid economy of time precluded all dinner and supper parties. He therefore admitted his friends at breakfast. Here might be seen in the course of the season the first philosophical characters of the age, English, Scotch, Irish and also from the Continent. Some distinguished members of the House of Commons and once in a while members of the House of Lords met at this literary feast. But it was not rank or title that ensured the heartiest welcome. Men distinguished for philanthropy, learning, useful inventions and mental independence were sure of this good man's attention and patronage. Here young Waterhouse met such men as Sir Joseph Banks, Dr. Solander, Dr. Priestly and others. These associations and acquaintances could not fail to be of inestimable value to a young student and it is probable that these gatherings did much to foster and intensify the passion for those branches of science which Dr. Waterhouse afterwards introduced and labored so zealously to establish in his native land. At one of these breakfasts the news of Burgoyne's surrender was laid on the table and Dr. Waterhouse tells us that he well remembered the gloom which it caused, "but for myself," he says, "I could not veil my unqualified joy and I retired to give it vent."

During these years he arranged the code of the Society of Friends. Dr. Fothergill had found time to do it in part, but it was a large volume and he asked his pupil if he had the courage to undertake the task. The Articles of the Society had been accumulating from the time of George Fox and William Penn, so that the whole needed to be revised and reduced to system. "Having completed the work under the title, 'Order and Discipline of the Society of Friends,' I was so delighted with the beauty of the system," Dr. Waterhouse afterwards wrote, "that I then and ever after considered the task one of the most profitable in my life." Commenting on the doctrines and mode of worship of this sect he says,

"Much as I admire the sublime doctrine of Friends, I cannot admit that this mode of worship is suitable to young people. Some pious parents take their children to these silent places of worship to meditate on the past, present and future, to reflect on the snares of the world, the folly of gaiety and the wisdom of a sedate carriage, and to turn their hearts, eyes and thoughts from everything splendid, while the rising sun, the beauty of the fields, enchanting forest trees in full blossom, and the flower garden, striking their senses with rapture, kindle sensations that it would be wrong to smother. Adult men and women experienced in the ways of life may sit in silence, *** but to expect such worship from youth is to expect ripe fruit in early spring. There is a time for all things and we cannot, nor ought we, to check the current of a rapturous soul in the spring time of life."

An interesting sidelight of his home life at Dr. Fothergill's is revealed by an entry in Dr. Waterhouse's journal, when referring to his uncle he says, "I shall never forget his startling question to me when all had left as usual the parlor for their chamber of rest. 'Is it thy intention, kinsman to carry Sally Corbyn to America.' I answered promptly It is not; and yet I did wish it had I known it would have been practicable, and agreeable all around."

Dr. Fothergill graduated in Leyden and now proposed that his nephew should go there, not merely to be examined and take a diploma as most medical students did who went to the school, but to pursue a regular course of study. When that young Waterhouse was delighted with the idea he added, "and if you acquire a little Dutch phlegm it will be no disadvantage to you." Not having heard from his parents for over a year he left a letter to be sent to them, if possible, and departed for Holland. He spent a few days in Rotterdam and then went on to Leyden. He had letters from his uncle to individuals and also a general letter to the Pres-

fessors, written in Latin, which assured him a cordial reception and also enabled him to be admitted to the University at a much younger age than most pupils, who were usually adults twenty-five to thirty years old. He was the first native of the American Colonies to enter the University after they had declared themselves to be free and independent States and when he was requested to sign his name and nation in the matriculation book, as was customary, he says he considered it a matter of consequence to inscribe himself agreeably to the new ground which his country had taken. Accordingly he wrote after his name, "Liberæ Reipublicæ Americanæ Federatæ Civis," which he translates, "Free, Sovereign, and independent, Confederated American Republic." This excited different sensations among the professors and heads of the University. Some smiled and others frowned, "for," says Dr. Waterhouse, "they too had at that time their whigs and tories, their patriots and their British Party." It was asked if Anglo-Americanus would not be sufficient. To this he replied that that designation would not distinguish him from an inhabitant of Canada or Nova Scotia. It was then asked if Americanus would not answer still better. To which he remarked that a white man born at Alexandria or Grand Cairo in Egypt, would hardly be pleased to be called simply an African. "It was then petulantly observed by some of Sir Joseph Yorke's dependents," Waterhouse tells us, "that federata republica sufficiently expressed a free republic,— that it was their own title. Why then add libera as if the United States of America was the only free republic in the world?" And there the matter rested for the time, as it regarded the heads of the University, but it was the subject of much jocose conversation in Leyden, where its discussion was quite popular.

He attended this renowned school, the foremost in the world for medicine, four academic years. The students came from every country in Europe but he was the only one from America. "The lectures," he says, "were delivered in Latin. I knew that language pretty well, and spoke

it like the students of that University, but I took a tutor who was also a medical man and we read every day in Latin medical works. The only drawback on my quiet in Leyden was the war. I knew not how much misery it was causing my family, but a firm belief that everything was directed by a Superior Power taught me not to indulge in unavailing anxiety."

During his vacations he travelled and one summer he roamed the Dutch Provinces with John Howard, the noted philanthropist, inspecting prisons. He was better pleased with Holland than with any other country except England. On all occasions he extolled the Dutch as a wise people. "You cannot," he says, "turn your eyes anywhere in Holland but you see the traces of wisdom and astonishing industry." At the end of his third academic year he went to Paris and while in France met his illustrious countrymen Benjamin Franklin and John Adams, afterwards President of the United States, who were there in the interest of their country. Writing in his journal of this incident, many years later he says,- "My first acquaintance with John Adams was at the table of Dr. Franklin in Passy near Paris where I met for the first time that good man & great statesman. I at once saw his Yankee character, and when commenced a friendship which endured for years even to the last period of his honorable life - A real, not a nominal friendship existed between President Adams and myself to the last week of his very interesting & valuable life." At another time writing of this friendship he says,- "A friendship accompanied by many deep-felt consolations, inasmuch that it compensated, and more than compensated, for the contempt of those men, who, possessing strong wills and weak judgments, look not beyond the present moment, and who call knave and fool every man who does not think as they do, in political affairs."

Again referring to this subject in his journal he writes,- "The same sort of friendship has extended or been *re-illumed between me and his son, the Hon. John Quincy Adams, at this time a representative in Congress

*re-illumed?

for the 12th District.

Waterhouse graduated at Leyden in April 1780 taking his degree M.D. He wrote a dissertation in Latin, dedicated to Dr. Fothergill in the words, "To a man very learned, wise and pious," and entitled, "De sympathia partium corporis humani, ejusque in explicandis et curandis morbis necessaria consideratione." (

Dr. Fothergill had a great opinion of Rhode Island and encouraged his nephew to make the description and natural history of his native place the subject of his inaugural dissertation at Leyden, and sketched the outlines himself in six sections, but as the latter had not contemplated such a thing before leaving home he felt that a dissertation on this topic would consist more of guesswork than of well authenticated facts and "found the work too mighty for his hands." Dr. Fothergill saw the difficulty and said, - "Increasing years and strength may enable thee to bend the bow, too stubborn at present, for thy youthful arm."

The controversy over his signature in the matriculation book was now renewed. He attempted to subscribe himself on the title page of his inaugural dissertation as a "Civis" of the free, confederated American Republic, but the University forbade it and allowed him to put after his name only Americanus. The English party, however, that is, the Dutch who were inclined to sympathize with England, and influenced by the domineering spirit of Yorke, the British Ambassador at the Hague, insisted that Waterhouse should erase the words which he had added after his name in the matriculation book before he should be allowed to graduate. The patriotic young American declared positively, however, that he would sooner relinquish his degree than erase the proper title of his nation and so the words were allowed to remain. Some of his nominal friends, the doctor tells us, "some Scotch friends, relations of the booming Sir

Archer M^cSycophant, used this ever pitiful argument,- 'You had better relax your principles, lest you create enemies, and injure your interest.'"

"But," says Dr. Waterhouse, "that had no effect on that great and better rule of my whole life, viz. DO WHAT YOU KNOW TO BE RIGHT, AND TRUST TO THE CONSEQUENCES."

He now returned to London where he received a cordial welcome from his uncle who approved his conduct while abroad and told him his expenses were less than he expected. Many years later Dr. Waterhouse wrote in his journal that his uncle's satisfaction on finding that his nephew had dedicated his dissertation to him made this one of the pleasantest times of the doctor's life. A considerable time was now spent in travel in England with Dr. Fothergill and his sister. They visited the home of Shakespeare and Dr. Waterhouse says, "I was then on the ground once trod by that inimitable secretary of nature. I was not out of my wits but too deeply imbued with a wild poetical spirit to sleep." From there they went to Oxford and after about three months returned to their home in Harper St., London. The doctor then went to Windsor Castle and saw the King, George III., and his family as they walked to and from chapel. "But with all these pleasant privileges," he writes, "and everything that heart could wish, I yet hankered after America."

It appears that if he could have overcome his inclination to return home Dr. Fothergill would probably have eventually left him his practice. When the latter found that his nephew was determined to return he is said to have addressed him as follows,- "Your desire of returning to your native country is natural and laudable, therefore go. When you arrive there if you find the country likely to be retained and enjoyed by its lawful owners, stay, But if you find confusion and disorder, and that things have not reverted to their own channel; your schools and colleges broken up; come back to us, provided it be with the consent of your parents, and await some more favorable state of things, or, perhaps, resolve

to spend your days in England."

It was now arranged that he should return to Leyden to await an opportunity to take passage for America and he says "it was with inexpressible regret that I left my more than father." Upon leaving, Dr. Fothergill gave him two important letters, one to Dr. Franklin, in Paris, on the subject of wars, their general inefficacy and disgraceful anti-christian spirit and one to Dr. William Cordon of Massachusetts. He also gave him a third letter which read as follows,-

To whom it may concern.

"The Bearer Dr. Benjamin Waterhouse, of Newport, in Rhode Island, having been recommended, by his friends in America, to my notice,- these may certify, that he has steadily and diligently pursued his studies under the ablest Professors and Practitioners in Physick, at Edinburgh, in London and at Leyden, during the course of seven years; and with as much success, as to gain their esteem and approbation. Having been likewise a part of my family, for a considerable time, (about three years) I can, from my own observation, recommend him to his fellow-citizens in America, as one, who by the propriety of his moral conduct, his capacity, and proficiency in his studies, is likely to become highly useful in his station as a physician, an ornament to his profession, and a credit to his country."

John Fothergill.

London, Nov. 1780.

Dr. Waterhouse tells us that he also was given a certificate or letter, testimonial of his moral character, according to their strict notions, by the Society of Friends and signed by all the most distinguished characters of that respectable Society in London. He received a similar letter from a branch of that Society in Amsterdam, testifying to the character he bore at Leyden. In addition to these the University of Leyden gave him, under its seal, an open or general letter of recommendation in the French language, to secure him the friendship of similar institutions and to serve him in case of capture.

Upon the doctor's arrival in Leyden he learned from John Adams that the frigate South Carolina, Commodore Gillon, would sail for America as soon as she could be made ready. At this time Mr. Adams was in Hol-

land having gone there from Paris for the purpose of trying to induce the Dutch to make a commercial treaty with his country and to further the interests of the Colonies in any other way possible. He had been living in Amsterdam but now removed to Leyden and secured quarters in the same house in which his two sons and Dr. Waterhouse were living. The latter says, "we lived together the greater part of the year in that harmony and with that improvement to myself that I can never too highly value. This may account for my strong bias to politics without any wish of ever becoming an official actor in them, ardent as my attachment was to the holy cause of our struggling country." Continuing he says, "In Holland we were objects of attention. It was observed that we did not run to theatres and other places of amusement, but occupied ourselves in literary matters. We attended constantly public worship, and, when we made excursions, it was to celebrated places to see what was memorable. I visited with Mr. Adams several of their manufactories, one of which produced bunting. The more I saw of Belgium, the more I admired the industry of its former inhabitants. There, as everywhere else in Europe, among the lower classes it was thought that the Americans were an uncivilized race fit for nothing but to make sugar and molasses. I have reason to believe that the family of which John Adams was the head and I only a member left a good impression on the minds of the people in Holland, and particularly on the large refined society of Leyden."

Of Mr. Adams the doctor goes on to say, "In this literary retreat he was not idle. He there wrote some of his most memorable State papers. I can bear witness to his incessant industry. He would write six hours a day and sometimes all day. I knew that he had been preparing a memorial to the States General for a treaty with us as Independent States. He was entreated not to do this, but he was determined to make the attempt. One morning he came into my room with a flushed countenance and swollen eyes and an energetic tone that a stranger would have taken for signs of anger-

'Bear in mind this day' said he 'for it will be a memorable one in the history of your country, and in England, and in Russia also. This day seed will be put into the ground and grow up to something greater than the world has any idea of. Remember this day and write it down' and when he was gone off I did write it down. While he was speaking, his carriage came to the door, and he stepped into it with the air of a hero. He went against the strongest expostulations, but he was successful. He was treated with profound respect by all ranks in Holland."

The friendships formed in this temporary household lasted throughout the lives of its members. The journals of John Adams, his son John Quincy Adams and of Dr. Waterhouse, as well as their correspondence show the intimacy which existed between them after they returned to this country. The following is an abstract of a very interesting letter written to the Doctor by John Adams when the latter's son entered Harvard College.

Auteuil, 24 April, 1785.

"This letter will be delivered to you by an old acquaintance John Quincy Adams, whom I beg leave to recommend to your attention and favor. He is anxious to study some time at your university before he begins the study of law, which appears at present to be the profession of his choice. He must undergo an examination, in which I suspect he will not appear exactly what he is. In truth, there are few who take their degree at college, who have so much knowledge. But his studies having been pursued by himself, on his travels, without any steady tutor, he will be found awkward in speaking Latin, in prosody, in parsing, and even, perhaps, in that accuracy of pronunciation in reading orations or poems in that language, which is often chiefly attended to in such examinations. It seems to be necessary, therefore, that I make this apology for him to you, and request you to communicate it in confidence to the gentlemen who are to examine him, and such others as you think prudent. If you were to examine him in English and French poetry, I know not whom you would find anywhere his superior; in Roman and English history, few persons of his age. It is rare to find a youth possessed of so much knowledge.***. In mathematics I hope he will pass muster. In the course of the last year, instead of playing cards like the fashionable world, I have spent my evenings with him.*** He is studious enough, and emulous enough, and when he comes to mix with his new friends and young companions, he will make his way well enough. I hope he will be upon his guard against those airs of superiority among the scholars, which his larger acquaintance with the world, and his manifest superiority in the knowledge of some things, may but too naturally inspire into a young mind, and I beg of you, Sir, to be his friendly monitor in this respect and in all others."

In a letter dated at Quincy, Mass., Feb. 8, 1810, John Adams writes of the associations at Leyden as follows,-

"On or about the 10th of August 1781, the "South Carolina," Commodore Gillon, put to sea from the Texel, with Mr. Searle, Colonel Trumbull, Major Jackson, Mr. Bromfield, Dr. Waterhouse and Charles Adams on board as passengers. These had for some time composed a very pleasant American Society; but now I was left alone with Mr. Thaxter. He regretted the loss of so much good company and that of Dr. Waterhouse as much as any. He had resided for three or four years, and taken the degree of Dr. in medicine, in the University of Leyden, where I first became acquainted with him. During part of the time of my residence in Leyden, I found Waterhouse and my two sons boarded in the same house. I took apartments in it, and finding him, though a sprightly genius, very studious and inquisitive, as well as sociable. I had no inquiries to make, but whether his moral character was good, and whether he was a loyal American. As to his morals, I could hear of no reproach or suspicion; as to his politics, though he came over from England, he came from the guardianship and pupilage of Dr. Fothergill, who was as good a friend to America as any Englishman could be. He had inscribed himself on the records of matriculation, in the University of Leyden, *Liberae Reipublicae Americanae Federatae Civis*, and his conversation was in the style of a good American. I did not, therefore, hesitate to consider him, in some respects, as one of my family. This gentleman has been so long known in the philosophical, medical and literary world, that it would be impertinent in me to say anything more of him at present, than that I wish him as happy as his benevolence and services to his fellow-men have deserved."

When an old man Dr. Waterhouse wrote in his Journal under date of Aug. 30, 1838, as follows,- "Yesterday was Commencement." (At Harvard College.) "That great man, and what is still more honorable that good man John Quincy Adams, amidst his multiplied cares and duties, did not omit his accustomed visit to me this 30 August, the day after Commencement or P.B.K. day. I was not only pleased but delighted with the evidence of his steady friendship, which commenced as long ago as 1779." A few days later we find this entry, viz., "Yesterday I went to Quincy with my son-in-law the Rev. Henry Ware Jr. I dined as was expected with my old Leyden friend J. Q. Adams. Walked to and from church allowing the ladies to ride in the coach whilst we young men walked."

Just before the South Carolina sailed Dr. Waterhouse received news of the sudden death of Dr. Fothergill. This event ended all ideas of the former as to returning to England. All through his writings appear

"He was then eighty-four years old."

the most beautiful tributes of appreciation and gratitude for his benefactor. He speaks of him as, "my patron, my friend, my more than father; his name was a passport for me. There was no further inquiry of 'Who is he?' 'Where did he come from?'"

The Doctor now sailed for home. We are told the ship remained some two months at Teneriffe in the Canary Islands, belonging to Spain, and he describes the mode of religious education there as choking everything like science or free inquiry. On the passage ^{they hoisted} an English ensign made in Holland, to decoy an English vessel, but she would not come near them. Finally they chased and captured her. When the Captain was asked why he did not respond to the English colors, he said, "the true English ensign was not so deep a red as the one you hoisted, nor was the real blue so blue, and I have cruised long enough to know the difference."

They later passed a vessel which gave them the news of the surrender of Cornwallis and after being tossed by gales and chased by English men-of-war they finally made the port of Havana in Cuba. Here they were embargoed some three months. and singularly enough met the mate of the ship in which he went as passenger to Europe, but now in command of a vessel of his own also embargoed in the port. While here he came near being drowned. He says, - "I came as near losing my life by drowning yet without being wet as any one ever experienced, yet the accident turned out, as usual, to my great advantage. I am agitated whenever I call to it. My effects, cloathing, papers, valuable watch &c &c were drenched in the sea, and my person not in the least wet! I have several volumes which bear the marks of the drenching!" Writing of the island the Doctor continues, - "Cuba is a fine island, which intelligence might make equal to any in the world, but to be driven half round the globe, and then be put down in such a place as it was, seemed too much for common patience. I was never so bowed down in spirit in my life, but I was young, gaining

experience and knowledge which I could have had no other way, and which may be used for the benefit of others. While there I had some professional employment. One patient died and the heretic doctor was blamed. Another, whose life I saved, Santa Maria had all the credit for."

One vessel was allowed to go before the embargo was lifted, but rather than risk being chased about any more Dr. Waterhouse waited about six weeks longer before again sailing. He intended to land at Philadelphia but was captured and taken into New York. Here he communicated with his father, who petitioned the State Assembly of Rhode Island that his son might bring with him certain goods as appears by the records of a meeting of the Assembly of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations held at Newport on the second Monday in June 1782, viz.,

"Whereas representation hath been made to this Assembly by Timothy Waterhouse Esq. that his son, Dr. Benjamin Waterhouse, was captured on his passage from Havannah to Philadelphia, and carried into New York; and that by a letter from his son, he is informed that a case of Medicines, a few goods, (which he had purchased in Holland for the use of his friends,) with his baggage, had been restored to him by the enemy; and thereupon the said Timothy Waterhouse requested that permission might be given the said Benjamin Waterhouse to bring with him from New York, into this state, the said case of medicines, goods and baggage; which being duly considered,-- It is voted and resolved, that the said Benjamin Waterhouse be, and he hereby is, permitted to bring from New York, into this state, the said medicines, goods and baggage, in some cartel vessel, any law to the contrary hereof notwithstanding; and all persons commanding armed vessels, under commission from the United States of America, and others, are required to permit the articles above enumerated to pass as aforesaid, without any let or hindrance whatsoever."

When the Doctor finally arrived home he found his native place much dilapidated and that many of his friends had married and moved away, "but," says he, "My parents were well and I was at home" Dr. Halliburton, because of his Tory principles, had removed to Halifax and the whole field of his practice was thus left open to his former pupil, "who found himself immediately and at once in a lucrative circle of business." He had not been here long, however, before he received a letter from the Rev-Dr. Gordon, to whom Dr. Fothergill had written, giving him the first in-

timation of the wish of certain members of the Corporation of Harvard College that he should fill the chair of the Professorship of Physic, in the Medical School which they contemplated establishing. The first step towards the founding of this school had been taken at a meeting of the President and Fellows held May 16, 1782, when a committee was appointed to consider the matter and to report at a future meeting.

In the summer of this year Dr. Waterhouse went to Boston, it being the first time he was ever in that town he tells us. He had practically no written introduction to any one but met the members of the Corporation and one or two of the Overseers, as well as Thomas Russell Esq. and the Rev. Dr. Parker. During his short visit he conversed freely with Gov. Bowdoin, President Willard and the Rev. Dr. Wigglesworth on the proposed professorship. He learned from them that a practitioner of Boston had made dissections and given some private lectures on osteology and on the muscles and that he was fixed upon in their minds for the Professorship of Anatomy. It was suggested to Dr. Waterhouse that if he was elected to the position it would be desirable for him to reside in Boston in the autumn.

In the fall of this year, 1782, he was elected a Fellow of Rhode Island College, now known as Brown University. Later he and the Rev. Dr. Stillman, with President Manning were appointed to solicit aid for the college from His Most Christian Majesty, Louis XVI, of France, with the view of establishing a professorship of the French language, literature and history. Their memorial is said to have been very skillfully written, dwelling upon the friendly alliance between the two nations and the desire of cultivating a knowledge of French history and character without being dependent upon English authorities. But the French Government about that time had enough to occupy it at home and the project failed.

During this time the movement for the establishment of a Medical School at Harvard College was making progress. At a meeting of the Corporation held Sept. 19, 1782 the committee appointed at the meeting held the preceding May reported over twenty recommendations, among which were the following,-

"That as soon as ways and means can be devised for raising sufficient funds for the encouragement of Professors of Anatomy & Surgery, the Theory and Practice of Physic, the Materia Medica and Chemistry, Professorships of these branches be provided by the University.

That each Professor be a Master of Arts, or a graduated Bachelor or Doctor of Physic, of the Christian religion, as it is maintained in the Protestant communion, and of strict morals.

Finally, as the College has not sufficient funds to maintain Professorships of the foregoing branches in Cambridge, it is the opinion of the Committee that it would be expedient for the Corporation as far as may be, to elect into those Professorships some gentlemen of public spirit and distinguished ability, who would undertake the business, for the present, for the fees that may be obtained from those who would readily attend their lectures."

At a meeting of the Corporation held Nov. 22, 1782, it was voted that three professors for the above branches be chosen as soon as circumstances will permit. Dr. John Warren of Boston was chosen Professor of Anatomy and Surgery, and the other two Professorships were left for further consideration.

In the meantime the Professorship of the Theory and Practice of Physic had been offered to Dr. Waterhouse. He hesitated long before coming to a decision. "It was not," said he, "the choice of apparent disagreeables, but of proffered benefits." On the one hand the field of practice at Rhode Island was ample and flattering. Every one in Newport was disposed to employ him and to render his situation as pleasant as they could make it. "It is such an opening," said the old and prudent, "that seldom ever happens to one physician in a thousand cases. Why will you leave a certain good for an uncertain one?" "If such were the sentiments of the citizens," says Dr. Waterhouse, "what must have been the feelings of aged parents, whose greatest pleasure, and comfort, and happiness arose from the fond idea of having their long absent son, residing near them to

the end of their lives." "On the other hand," says the Doctor, "was a highly flattering offer. All the physicians of a large Commonwealth passed over, and the preference given to a young stranger, and son of a foreign University. Add to this the circle of business in Boston was larger, and the field for exertion wider, and the labour greater; and should an ambitious and industrious young man, shrink from such a prospect merely for the sake of ready money, and of being a pet of a little narrow circle of partial friends and relatives. To remain at Newport might be agreeable to a man of effeminate habit, fond of good and luxurious living; but such things had no charms for me." It is evident also, even at this early age, that he was not inclined to tie himself down to the drudgery of a practitioner. "Nevertheless," says he, "I would labour as hard as any man for the 'bobble reputation! To a character thus constituted, and to a man more engaged and delighted with cultivating and diffusing useful knowledge than with accumulating property, the feather held out by Cambridge college had more allurements than money. Finally, influenced by my friend and patron, Gov. Bowdoin, the scale was turned against the drawing cords of natural affection and I accepted." He was elected Dec. 24, 1782, and he and Dr. Warren were requested to deliver Lectures on Chemistry and Materia Medica until a Professor for that department should be chosen.

This election of Dr. Waterhouse met with some opposition, it is said, on the part of the College Legislature. He was an outsider, but the Corporation rejected with firmness the idea of a complimentary election of any of the sons of Harvard and persisted in the election of a physician whose preparatory studies, long acquaintance with lectures and thorough knowledge of the two most celebrated medical schools of the world, amply qualified him for the office, and which, in their opinion, gave him a preference over any others.

Harrington, in his "History of the Harvard Medical School," pub-

lishes a letter written by Ephriam Eliot, a graduate of 1780, which refers to Dr. Waterhouse's selection as follows,- "Dr. Waterhouse had recently arrived in Boston, or was expected in a short time. He had spent some years in London, and had completed his education in Leyden; was a relation and pupil of the excellent Dr. Fothergill of London, who, it was said, had contemplated such an establishment at this university; and, although he had died, it was also reported that Dr. Lettson had succeeded to much of his business, and meant to fulfill his benevolent intentions. So Dr. Waterhouse's selection was agreed upon."

These views are confirmed by the latter who says that his invitation grew out of a part of the letter which Dr. Fothergill wrote to Dr. Gordon. "Dr. Fothergill," writes Dr. Waterhouse, "was much attached to America since his brother Samuel's visit in 1754. He had been a considerable benefactor to the medical institutions in Pennsylvania and had often mentioned to me that he was inclined to do something for Harvard."

Dr. C.W. Parsons, in an article in the "Rhode Island Historical Collection," says,- "He was no doubt one of the most accomplished young men of his profession in New England."

Another "History of the Harvard Medical School" speaks of him as follows,- "Without doubt he was the young man of learning then available for the place, just the man to quicken students with the love of science and a desire of general knowledge."

Dr. Henry A. Martin, a later graduate of Harvard has this to say of the selection.- "So great was his acknowledged merit that, no sooner had he settled down in a large practice in Newport, than he was invited by the government of Massachusetts and of Harvard University, to accept the Professorship of the Theory and Practice in the Medical School of Harvard. Waterhouse, was, probably, the most thoroughly educated American physician of his time."

On May 22nd, 1783, Aaron Dexter, of Boston, was chosen to the va-

cant Professorship, and on Oct. 7, 1783 Doctors Warren and Waterhouse were publicly inducted into office. Each Professor, at his induction, made and subscribed to the following attestation:

"I - - - - - elected Professor of - - - - - in the University of Cambridge, declare myself to be of the Christian religion as maintained in the churches of the Protestant communion.

***** I promise to discharge the trust now reposed in me, with diligence and fidelity, and to the advantage of the students in my particular department. *****

I promise to promote the interests of virtue and piety by my own example and encouragement.***** I declare and promise that I will not only endeavor the advancement of Medical knowledge in the University, but consult its prosperity in every other respect.*****

I promise to demean myself as a good citizen of the United States of America, and to use every endeavor to perpetuate their union and promote their happiness. And in particular I promise according to my best abilities to support the present constitution of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, and to conduct myself in conformity to its wholesome laws."

The following account of this interesting ceremony is taken from the records of the meeting of the Corporation of that date.

"At about 11 o'clock A.M. the Governor, and Lieutenant Governor with several other gentlemen of the Board of Overseers and Corporation came to the University, and at the steps of Harvard Hall were received by the President, Professors and Tutors and conducted to the Philosophy Chamber. A little before twelve o'clock, upon the tolling of the bell all the undergraduates assembled in front of Harvard and formed in two ranks in inverted order; as soon as they were formed the President, the rest of the Corporation and the Professors and Tutors preceded the *Governor, the Lieutenant Governor and the other Members of the Board of Overseers, the Consul and Vice Consul of France, the officers of the Massachusetts Medical Society, and the Clergymen and other Gentlemen present down to the steps of Harvard from whence they were conducted by the Undergraduates to the Meeting House, who at the front door opened to the right and left and stood with their heads uncovered till the Governors of the University and the other Gentlemen of the procession had passed into the Meeting House."

*John Hancock.

After the company had all entered, the President opened the solemnity with prayer and delivered a short introductory oration, in Latin, in which he made mention of the Medical Institution and declared that the three Doctors, Warren, Waterhouse, and Dexter had been elected to Professorships of the three departments, had accepted the trusts and the "two first" of whom were present and ready to be inducted. We quote further from the records,-

"The Professors were called upon by the President to make their declarations and promises and the senior Professor, that of Divinity, was directed to deliver them the papers containing the declarations &c. which each read standing before the door of the Pew in which the Governor sat; and after reading each signed the particular paper which had been delivered to him.

The President asked leave of the Overseers and Corporation to declare Dr. John Warren Professor of Anatomy and Surgery, and Dr. Benjamin Waterhouse Professor of the Theory and Practice of Physic, and upon leave being granted he publicly declared them Professors of these Branches, and concluded with his good wishes for their usefulness.

The President called for the inaugural orations of the new Professors which was delivered by them from the Desk in the Latin Language. The Psalms according to Tate's & Brady's version were then sung. Immediately after the singing the company was invited to dine in the Hall and the Procession returned to Harvard in the same order it moved from thence."

Referring to his oration, which was afterwards published, Dr. Waterhouse tells us that the only person he showed it to before its delivery was Mr. Bowdoin, who succeeded John Hancock as Governor, who wrote the first three lines of it as he deemed it too abrupt without them. The Doctor further says "I was surprized that they were surprized at the style of my Latin. It was said by the learned that it was not 'American Latin.'" In another place, referring to his Latin on this occasion he

writes,- "I soon perceived that the manner of it, including the arrangement, the style and the pronunciation, was a novelty to the audience. Whether it was good, bad or indifferent, we shall barely remark that it circulated in manuscript among the learned in Boston, Salem and Newburyport; and that it wrought a change to say the least of it, in the arrangement of the Latin orations at the University; and the author had, for a series of years, full as many applications for advice and assistance from those under graduates who had Latin exercises assigned them, as perhaps, all the rest of the college officers put together."

One of the Histories of the Medical School speaks of the oration as follows,-

"Dr. Waterhouse in his address speaks of all the various branches which are to be brought together and made one by the Professor of Theory and Practice, enumerating anatomy, chemistry, botany, materia medica, and natural philosophy, and, in closing he makes an appeal for the scientific study of insanity. The good doctor, evidently, had an exalted idea of the task he was to undertake; and the standard he set was high, so that from that day to the present it has been the duty of the Department of Theory and Practice to sum up the labors of many diverse departments and to put upon them a practical interpretation."

Writing later of the event Dr. Waterhouse says,- "The day was brilliant and the night more so; for the college buildings were illuminated together with several others."

Thus was the second Medical School in this country founded. Before his induction into the Professorship Dr. Waterhouse had moved to Boston and took lodgings on Cornhill although for a time he says he was almost domesticated in the family of Gov. Bowdoin and that of his son, James. In going to Cambridge, he tells us, he generally went over Charlestown ferry.

Writing in his Journal of his early acquaintances he says,-

Reverend Storer of the Brattle St. Church was an early acquaintance, which led to my adding to my friends that agreeable family of Colonel Quincy, father of the now President of this College, at whose house I passed a night, soon after I saw for the first time the renowned Town of Boston, where I soon became acquainted with every one of its clergy from Dr. Byles to the Reverend Johnny Elliott.

The commencement of all new establishments requires pecuniary aid as well as great personal exertions. There was no salary attached to the Professorships and the fees from the pupils were small. In the words of President Quincy, "The whole department was based on the uncertain grounds of hope and expectation." At a meeting of the Corporation June 2, 1765, the possibility, under the conditions of the will, of using the income of the Persey fund for the benefit of the Medical Professors was considered and the matter was referred to a committee. At a meeting of the same body Nov. 17, of that year Dr. Waterhouse presented a memorial on the same subject which was referred to the committee which had been appointed the previous June. At a later meeting this committee reported that it thought the income of this fund might be used for the purpose desired but nothing seems to have been done in the matter.

In the meantime, hardly had the doctor assumed the duties of his professorship, in fact even before his election was concurred in by the Board of Overseers, there began to appear signs of opposition to him. This led to a controversy between him and certain other professors and various members of the College Legislature, much of the time acrimonious, which made his whole college career a stormy one and which, in a way, embittered his whole life. Referring to this matter and speaking of himself in the third person Dr. Waterhouse writes as follows,-

"In debating whether he should remain at Rhode Island or accept the professorship in Massachusetts he never once thought of opposition. But no sooner was the election by the Corporation known, and before it was

confirmed by the Board of Overseers, than he found his professional character attacked by anonymous writers in the Boston newspapers. The author of the pieces was discovered to be a distinguished member of the Massachusetts Medical Society. Among other idle stories, it was rumored that Dr. Waterhouse was ignorant of the Latin language: this so positively and repeatedly asserted, without his ever contradicting it, that some of his best friends were induced to believe it. President Willard seemed to be particularly uneasy on that score; and said, that although it was usual, and at all times desirable for a Professor to pronounce an oration in the latin language at his installation, yet if Dr. Waterhouse found that he had grown rusty in the latin, he would so arrange the ceremony of inauguration, that he might make his address in English. To this Dr. Waterhouse replied, that he did not wish any deviation from the established custom on his account; that if the Corporation wished him to make his address in English, he would do the best he could; if in Latin, he would do the best in his power, and trust to their indulgence. He thereupon made his oration in the Latin language."

In referring to this opposition in his Journal, he speaks of the "Massachusetts Medical Society, who aimed to demolish me when I came first to Boston and was appointed Prof. of the Theory and Practice of Physick in the University in this place. Their first step was that most infamous one of anonymous letters thrown into the entry of the house wherein I had taken my lodgings in Cornhill Boston, Mrs. Martha Leveretts, and then in the newspapers."

Another way in which this opposition showed itself and which was a cause of considerable mortification to the doctor is given in the course of a newspaper article, in which speaking of himself in the third person, he says,-

"After Dr. Waterhouse had been Professor a year or two he was

nominated a member of the Massachusetts Medical Society by Dr. Lloyd, but was *rejected. Two or three years later he was again nominated and again rejected. About the same time the President nominated him a member of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences and he was rejected. A year or two later Governor Bowdoin who was President of the Academy nominated him again and he was a second time rejected." We are told that the Governor was much displeased at this rejection of his nomination and ascribed it to medical jealousy. Continuing in the same article Dr. Waterhouse says,- "We do not believe there was ever an instance in Europe where the President of an Academy or any such society ever nominated a person that was rejected. A President seldom nominates; but when he does, it is always presumed that he has a thorough knowledge of the moral and literary character of the man he recommends."

Another incident occurred just about this time which was a cause of still further irritation to the doctor. June 8, 1790 the latter delivered a discourse on the "Principle of Vitality" in the First Church in Boston before the Humane Society of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, which was published some twenty years later. In the preface he gives the following interesting account of the origin of the society,-

"In the summer of 1782, a number of young persons of both sexes, were drowned in the harbor of Newport, Rhode Island, by the oversetting of a pleasure boat. Four or five of these young people were taken up when they had been not more than ten minutes in the water, and yet they all perished: for there was no means to resuscitate them. Thereupon the author published in the Newport Mercury some account of methods practiced by the humane societies of Europe, and exerted himself to form one at Rhode Island: but nothing was effected. Three years afterwards viz., in 1785, while sailing through the harbor of Newport with the celebrated blind philosopher, Dr. Henry Moyes of Edinburgh, he related to him the sad

*by secret ballot, probably "blackballed."

accident, and lamented that we had no humane society in America for resuscitating the drowned: and the ill success he experienced in attempting to establish one. 'Do not be discouraged,' said this extraordinary man, 'but let us set about it immediately: this very day.' We accordingly did so: and by the help of his intelligent serving man, who was a good amanuensis, we committed to paper a plan of our Humane Society, and took it with us to Boston: and communicated it to a small assemblage of philosophical gentlemen in School Street, whence arose The Humane Society of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, which was incorporated in 1791."

In organizing this Society later in the year 1785 the doctor tells us he discovered a mode of proceeding with which he had never been conversant, for at that time he was ignorant even of the meaning of the word "caucus." He was not invited to the preparatory meetings of organization, neither was he warned of the meeting to choose officers. He evidently expected to be chosen 2nd Vice President but when the time for the election came he found that everything had been "cut and dried" and Dr. Warren was chosen for that office while he was made one of the six Trustees. This office he declined and a "reputable mechanic" was put in his place. The result of this election, together with his previous treatment so filled him with "disgust" that he determined to have nothing to do with any of their associations or societies. In the year 1790, however, previous to its incorporation, he was urged by Gov. Bowdoin, Hon. Thomas Russell, Bishop Parker, the Rev. Dr. Lathrop and others to "rejoin" the Humane Society "and thereupon he was appointed to deliver an address before it," as before mentioned. He sent a copy of this discourse to President Washington and received the following letter in reply,-

Mount Vernon, Nov.19,1790.

Sir:-

I beg you to excuse the delay, which my avocations in the country have occasioned in answering your letter of the 28th of August.

I am persuaded of the happy influence, which the Discourse, that

accompanied it, must have in promoting the interests of humanity: and I request you to accept my thanks for your polite attention in favouring me with this mark of your regard.

I am, Sir,

Your most obedient servant,

Geo. Washington.

There being no apparent prospect of receiving any financial aid from the College and "being surrounded by many perplexities and difficulties, as well as discouraged by the slow progress the school was making," but, "chiefly owing to the monopolizing conduct of his brethren," Prof. Waterhouse published a Synopsis of a course of Lectures on the Theory and Practice of Medicine, part first, in forty-seven pages to show what he had wished to do had he been properly supported and resigned his professorship

Soon after this the Rhode Island College chose him Professor of Natural History, "without," he says, "any previous intimation of their design." "Without any other preparation than an introductory lecture he went to Providence, and there commenced a course which he gave in the court-house to the principal inhabitants of the town, of both sexes, and to the students in the college." This was in 1786. The following autumn he gave another course to a very respectable audience. Rhode Island is now known as Brown University and the above professorship was bestowed upon him, according to the records in 1784. This was the earliest professorship established in any New England College under this or any equivalent title, and this was the first course of lectures on Natural History ever given in the new world. It appears to have been his intention at this time to return to his native State.

In the meantime his resignation was presented at a meeting of the President and Fellows of the College Sept. 6, 1786, but no action was taken. At a meeting of the same body July 3, 1787 the following vote was passed, viz.,

"The Corporation not having acted upon Dr. Waterhouse's resignation of

the chair of Medicine in this University, which was communicated at a meeting Sept. 6, 1786 now took up the consideration of this letter: "There-upon

Voted, that as the Doctor had not left this Commonwealth, as he had purposed when he wrote his letter to the Corporation, his resignation be not accepted; and that he be desired to still appear in his Professorship."

In response to this vote the Doctor wrote the following letters which explain the situation at that time.

Boston Aug. 22, 1787.

"In consequence of the late vote of the Corporation expressing a wish that I would resume my office in the College, I have written them the enclosed answer, which I earnestly wish may be considered at their next meeting.- You will see that I have promised to do everything, on my part, if they would do something on theirs. I wish to explain to some member my reasons more particularly why I declined giving Lectures at Cambridge, while I was a candidate for the practice of physic in Boston, lest they should think it was only an inconvenience common to all three of the Professors, when in fact they are mostly peculiar to myself.--- I would wish them to consider that the other Professors were inhabitants of Boston, amid their powerful friends & connexions -- members & officers of the medical society long before I came, while I was a stranger, unconnected & alone, and rendered by my election to this office unpopular & obnoxious to those very people whose friendship I needed most,-- add to this, the only two literary societies among you testified by their votes an unwillingness that I should associate with them.-- Even to this day those Physicians who consult me & call me in their families when sick, make so far a distinction with me, that they never invite me to attend any operations, a thing so customary among Physicians, and I the only exception!-- The common answer given to enquiries on this subject is, that the Doctors disgusted with the College calling this young Dr. in, over their heads, were disposed to keep him at a distance and, there has been an opinion artfully spread among the people, that the College were endeavoring to introduce the English distinctions and modes of practice which would enormously increase the expence of sickness, and that Dr. Waterhouse was introduced with that view. So that connected with the College I have ^{not} stood an equal chance among the Practitioners in Boston,-- Having therefore found such peculiar inconveniences as disabled me from proceeding, will not my prudence be called in question, if by attending to this second call, I should place myself in exactly the same situation?

Some of the Gentlemen of the Corporation say 'we see the perplexities our appointment has brought upon you, yet as we wish you to continue your connexion with us, what shall we do to help you?' I answer, Let me change my ground from Boston to Cambridge, and assist me to perform the business you have again called me to execute, and which (from having exhausted what little I had to live on in fruitless expectation) I have declared I am totally unable to persist in,-- Respecting what might be said of partiality, which some are fearful of, I only observe that when some of the Professors, have needed apparatus it has been procured for them, whereas I have never put the College to a farthing expence since I have been connected with it, altho' it is well known that I have been at no small cost, in printing & the like, without ever receiving advantages equal to what I expended---

You will excuse I hope, my thus troubling you, when you reflect

that on the determination of the Corporation meeting my plans in life will probably depend. I wish them to take up the consideration of this matter once more, and if they will only put it in my power to proceed, I will serve them with pleasure; if not necessity will compel me to relinquish all thoughts of retaining the Professorship."

I am with great esteem & respect

The Hon. John Lowell Esq.

your humble servant

B. Waterhouse.

P.S. I remember once to have seen a Picture that moved me not a little, altho' I was then in affluence---- It represented a young man standing a tip-toe, with his right hand extended at its utmost reach towards the sky; to the wrist of this hand was a pair of extended wings; Ambition was above in the form of an Angel giving them air; while his left hand was tied to a heavy load that was chained to the earth; underneath was written this melancholly complaint: 'Ut me pluma levat, sic sarcina praegravat ingens.' (As wings lift me a great burden holds me down)

The following is a copy of the letter enclosed.-

"I received a vote of the Corporation dated the 3rd of last month expressing their non acceptance of my resignation of the chair of Medicine, and desiring me still to appear in my professional capacity.-- In answer to which I can only say, that it was my ambition to serve the University in the honorable station I was called to fill, but was unable to sustain it without assistance -- No man in my situation can do the duties of the office without some support. -- No man will attempt it with less assistance, nor perhaps with so little.--- Give me but ground to stand upon & I will come to Cambridge & resume my Lectures.-- but to pursue the practice of physic in Boston & lecture in Cambridge has too many inconveniences for me to attempt it a second time.

There are some favorable circumstances which would induce me at this time to take up my residence in Cambridge as a Practitioner, which will not exist three or four years hence; and therefore with a trifling assistance from the Corporation I will come on the spot, recommence my lectures, and do all in my power to promote the intention the Corporation had in view when they formed the Medical Institution."

B.W.

To The President & Corporation.

The Corporation urged him strongly to remain and, as it had taken action favorable to the use of the income of the "Hersey" fund for the benefit of the Medical Professorships, he finally withdrew his resignation. Year after year passed, however, until, at length, it was arranged that beginning Jan. 1, 1792 the income of this fund should be divided between the three professors and thus some nine years after his induction into the professorship Dr. Waterhouse became "Hersey" Professor of the

Theory and Practice of Physic with a permanent support. This, we are told, at no time exceeded four or five hundred dollars a year, and "for a man who had lived under the affluent patronage of a Fothergill such a novel situation must have been peculiarly embarrassing."

In the year 1788, April 29, at a meeting of the Corporation of Harvard it was voted "that Dr. Waterhouse deliver annually a course of lectures on natural history to such students as shall obtain permission under the hands of their parents or guardians to attend; for each of which students he shall receive one guinea, to be charged in their quarter bills." Natural History, however, was a new thing among the young men at college. Almost every child of the present day knows as much about Botany and Natural History as was then taught in our highest literary institutions, while public instruction in Mineralogy was entirely unknown. "In truth," the Doctor says, "the science of mineralogy was not then 30 years old in any country." He tells us that there was scarcely a good book on this subject to be found in the country and that he had to procure some from Europe, and also an apparatus for smelting and refining metals and all out of his own very scanty income. Under these circumstances it was necessary to excite a taste in his pupils for this branch of science before he could gratify it. The work progressed but slowly and it was some seven years before the number of hearers exceeded a dozen. At length, however, by his perseverance and unremitting toil he built up these sciences and established them on a very respectable footing. "Humble and lean as they were," he writes, referring to his lectures on Mineralogy, "I was nevertheless the first who broke ground, and exhorted and encouraged others to penetrate deeper and explore those dark regions of curiosity." "It should be remembered also," says one, "that in this task Dr. Waterhouse worked alone without the help of any congenial spirit this side the Atlantic. His labors in this department will secure to

him the honor of being the founder of these sciences in America."

For years he delivered these lectures in the Philosophy Hall, so called, but later the other Professors who used the room objected to the presence of stuffed birds and other paraphernalia of this department and desired him to use some other place. The following interesting letter, dated May 19, 1800, in reference to the matter is taken from the College papers.

Rev^d Sir,

Last autumn I received a line from you expressing the opinion of the Corporation respecting my continuing to lecture in the philosophy chamber, which induces me to address you on that subject.

I gave my lectures in that room for a series of years on the invitation of Mr. Smith, the then Librarian, and did not at that time know that it was necessary to ask leave of a higher authority. During the seven years I gave my lectures there, no complaint had ever been made of soiling, deranging, or in any way defacing the room; on the contrary the room has acquired an additional beauty in consequence of these lectures, for neither Birds, nor minerals would have been there had those lectures on Natural History never been given.

My application is for permission to continue my lectures in this room, and my reasons for it, are I presume strong enough to obtain it. In the course of my lecturing it is necessary to have displayed a great number of minerals, and many of the specimens are so delicate & fragile that they cannot be removed up and down stairs without risking their destruction. Besides these minerals, delicate drawings, & costly books as well as valuable productions of nature must be exhibited in a room where the lecturer can instantly turn the key and lock them up. should he be called suddenly out in the course of his practice. On no occasion do I ever leave the students in the room. For my rule has ever been to go in first & come out last. I have been so carefull to keep the carpet neat & clean, that I always turn it up round the seats, & never give a lecture in rainy weather. The bordering of the paper, that has been picked off in some places was certainly never done by any of my audience. Their quiet, orderly, & very proper behaviour are known & talked of --- and if it be found that my pupils never did injure the room the presumption is they never will, unless I should break my rule of leaving them in it without me.

As I confess I felt a little hurt in being turned out of that room without a hearing, I cannot avoid wishing to inform the Corporation that during the 18 years that I have been a Professor of the Theory & Practice in this University, I have never been accommodated with a lecturing-room, but have been obliged repeatedly to quit my chair & dismiss my pupils in the middle of a lecture to give place to the stated teachers. I gave one whole course in a Tutor's room. In one, or two instances, I have been compelled to the derogatory step of giving my Medical lectures in the room of an under-graduate: and for these three years past, I have been forced to give my medical lectures at my own house, altho' very inconvenient on account of the smallness of my rooms & the largeness of my family.

I will, however, cheerfully submit to this inconvenience, great

tho' it is, provided the Corporation will give me their permission to make use of the philosophy chamber, during eighteen hours in twelve months, pledging myself at the same time that everything shall be preserved free from dirt, destruction or defacement. It has been suggested that I could give my lectures on N. History in the Chapel, or dining hall, both are absolutely unfit, besides I wish to be indulged with a room, out of which I may not be turned by any Professor, Tutor, the Librarian or cook.

If you would be so good as to lay this request before the corporation, it would add to the kindnesses already conferred on

your very humble serv^t

Rev^d President Willard.

Benj^m Waterhouse.

When Dr. Waterhouse began his lectures on Natural History it seems he contemplated the establishment of a Botanical Garden at Cambridge and in 1787 wrote Sir Joseph Banks, President of the Royal Society of England and Dr. John C. Lettson regarding the matter but the latter suggested starting with minerals. He wrote, - "At a further period of wealth and luxury you may form hot-houses for tropical plants, but my advice is to commence your career with Minerals. I should be glad to hear that you have collected only a few flints to commence so important a branch of Natural History and Medicine. If you begin with a little, begin, and it will multiply. The greatest object was once in embryo. I would advise a few gentlemen among you to unite in a society to promote Natural History. If such a society were formed, I would subscribe ten guineas a year to it, and more if you wish it. You want, I fear, energy. Your treasures hid in the earth are invaluable. Your vegetable kingdom is ample and interesting. Let me know that you have boldly entered these recesses of curiosity, wealth and pleasure, and draw on me for my quota."

The Doctor took the advice given by his friend Lettson to begin a collection of minerals and the latter sent him a small box containing about fifty fossils. To this he added specimens until he had a collection of some consequence for years afterwards he wrote President Kirkland as follows, - "I had the honor of exhibiting to his Royal Highness

prince Edward Duke of Kent my collection of minerals, two or three years before they were placed in the Cabinet in the philosophy chamber which was in 1793."

In this year we find in the College records that the thanks of the University were voted to John Coakley Lettson, M.D., F.R.S., &c for presenting through Dr. Waterhouse, "a very valuable and extensive collection of minerals." A month later it was voted that a cabinet be procured for receiving and preserving the minerals and May 20, 1795 the following action was taken by the Corporation,-

"Voted, that Dr. Waterhouse be authorized and desired to take possession of the Cabinet of Minerals transmitted by Dr. Lettson of London to the College:- that he arrange the said Cabinet, and attend all persons, who may wish to visit it, and give every information in his power to the visitants thereto;- that he correspond with persons who may be engaged in opening any mines in the United States;- and that he be allowed compensation therefor."

The compensation allowed him was forty dollars a year and he tells us he sometimes spent more than this in postage and freight. He sent out "six quires of circulars" which brought him much correspondence. The nature of his duties, as keeper of the Cabinet, are described in the following letter to President Willard, dated Mar. 8, 1801.

Reverend Sir,

Agreeably to your suggestion that the Corporation wished for some general information respecting the time consumed, the attention exercised in fulfilling their directions as expressed in their vote dated May 20th 1795 and a subsequent one dated I take this method to acquaint them, that in consequence of a very general circulation of the printed letter which accompanies this, a pretty numerous & pretty constant application to view the cabinet ensued. By pretty constant I mean seldom a week without some visitants. These are people who are engaged in the study of minerals, or in some interested mineralogical pursuits, and who come to take a close & critical view of the specimens; and in this they differ from the ordinary visitants to the Library & Museum. They never stay less than 3, or 4 hours; very often all day, and in some instances three, and my house is most commonly their quarters. I have attended six visitants within these ten days. The person principally concerned in the Jodinhill mine used to call on me at least twice a week for two or three months often to view the specimens, but oftener to converse on the subject of mineralogy. When some of these visitants appeared embarrassed by the trouble they gave me, I have told them that the Governors of the University allowed me a compensation for it.

Agreeably to the wish of the Corporation I have kept up my cor-

correspondence abroad and extended it at home on the subject of minerals. Whenever I found in the course of my mineralogical studies, a deficiency in the collection, I have immediately written to some of my correspondents in England for them, and when received have placed them in the Cabinet, without saying a word to any one. This was the case with a collection of Salts from a friend at Chester, and of a box of minerals & petrefactions from Birmingham. It was two or three years before I could obtain a specimen of Platina. I have now sent for specimens of english Marbles, when they arrive, I shall place them in the cabinet without saying a word to anyone, because it is too much like my own donation to wish for either notice or thanks. Thus, I have, do, and shall continue to contribute to the increase of the collection.

Since I received an annual grant, I have never presented, nor mean to present any charge for any freight, custom-house fees or the like, altho' a week has not elapsed since I paid about three dollars for a book sent from England for the Library which had remained from the month of October in the Supervisor's office in New York, as well as a trifling sum for the portage of a box containing an artificial curiosity for the Museum. Ought I, or ought I not to add that the superb volumes containing specimens of the recently discovered Stamps, was sent by Pr. Lettson in consequence of my writing expressly to him to send a copy of that elegant work for our University library? He having sent me a similar copy the year before. May I add, that I wrote three or four years ago to the same gentleman for a prepared Quadruped and a Bird, by way of sample and he sent me eighteen. I then, wrote to him, that they were injured in the passage for want of being properly packed when he sent me twice that number finely preserved. Whether they were sent to me personally, or to the University was equivocal. I therefore construed it the safest way and presented them as from him.

Now every gentleman must suppose that I could not be the receiver, much less the solicitor of these valuable articles without exerting myself to make some return in the products of this country. I have never done so much as I could wish, but have done as much as I could, being convinced in this as in all other cases, 'he that will reap must sow.'

I have never nor ever shall keep an account of such expences. Indeed, my habits of life, & literary pursuits are adverse to anything like mercantile calculations. I can only say with precision, that for what I sent to an individual correspondent the last year I paid nearer 50, than 40 dollars. This I will venture to specify to some one of the corporation as a private gentleman, but delicacy would forbid me to do it to him, or them, in their official station, more especially when a proportion of the books are sent to me personally; and the corporation may be assured, that I mention these things with no small reluctance, and that I apprehend they come within, or rather among the objects of their inquiry.

Were I a Professor of Nat^l History, and had of course a salary, these articles committed to my charge as well as the exhibiting & explanation of them to strangers would be, like that of the Professor of Exp^l Philosophy, part of my duty. But the case is far otherwise with me. I have created this branch of instruction, and carried it on for more than twelve years at my own expence without attaching any charge to the University, and it is only within one year or two that the lectures have been profitable; for more than 8 years, they yielded not so much as the annual income of a college-sweeper, and nothing but the constant encouragement of that most excellent friend to the College the late Dr. Nigglesworth, and his prophetic assurances, that by perseverance, these lectures on Nat^l History would one day grow into a permanent establishment, have preserved them to this period of existence. If from this general view of

facts and circumstances the corporation should think it just, or generous to continue the annual grant for taking charge of the cabinet, corresponding, &c, I think I may assure them that it will be, as it always has been, quite, or nearly absorbed in the expences of a correspondence which they have encouraged and I hesitate not to assure them, that if from any accident, sickness or unusual occurrence my expences or attention, should be little or nothing, they will be informed of it, but I wish hereafter to be excused from giving in, from year to year anything like an estimate, because it is somehow or other, very repugnant to the current of my feelings, and what I do with extreme reluctance.

Benjamin Waterhouse.

Rev^d President Willard.

The college records for the years succeeding his appointment as keeper of the cabinet show that the thanks of the Corporation were frequently given Dr. Waterhouse, or others, for additions to the collection received through his efforts. "In the year 1796," he says, "the Cabinet was the richest and most extensive collection of minerals in the United States." and in 1811 he writes, "there is scarcely a single one in the collection but what has come through my own individual solicitation, or else the donation of myself and my son." From these beginnings have grown one of the great departments of the University Museum.

This branch of science, however, did not appear to grow in favor with some of the other professors who, naturally enough perhaps, still looked with much disfavor on the presence in the Philosophy chamber of the paraphernalia pertaining ^{to} the lectures on natural history and mineralogy. In the course of a newspaper article in the Boston Patriot in 1813, over ^{writes} the signature "An Independent Whig" Dr. Waterhouse, as follows regarding the opposition he encountered at this time in this part of his work.

"In the meantime mineralogy began to excite some attention through New England; and the lectures by degrees became very popular. But with their popularity among the under graduates grew up an unfriendly and opposing spirit among some of the professors. The Professor of Chemistry, undertook to find fault, and to ridicule before President Willard, and some of the other members of the Academy of Arts and Sciences, the titles and labels on the different articles in the Cabinet. He par-

ticularly ridiculed the absurdity of the term "Gold Ore," and had so often repeated it, that President Willard seriously proposed to Dr. W. to alter it. Whereupon he waited on the good President, and showed him from Magellen's edition of Cronstadt's mineralogy the propriety of the term. The hypercriticism was about equal to criticising one for saying "the sun is rising," when in fact, the sun is not moving, but the earth! The President was convinced, and ashamed of one of our learned professors; and we heard no more of the remarks of that gentleman, excepting a general expression of contempt for the collection of minerals."

"Professor Webber tried for more than a year to get the cabinet moved to the anatomical room where it would have been defaced if not entirely ruined. He was displeased with Dr. W.'s lectures generally. He remonstrated to him, and finally to the President, against Dr. W. treating in his lectures upon air, fire, and electricity, and upon the natural history of the atmosphere; and it was with great difficulty that President Willard convinced him of his error, by showing him the line between mechanics and the works of nature. At length he (Prof. Webber) applied to the Corporation and it was finally induced to pass a vote prohibiting him from giving his lectures in the Philosophy chamber, and ordering the Cabinet of Minerals to be forthwith removed from thence into the anatomical room."

Dr. Waterhouse then sent the following remonstrance to the Corporation.

To the Reverend and Honorable the President and Fellows of Harvard College.

The Memorial of Benjamin Waterhouse respectfully sheweth, that - In the course of the past year, the President (Willard) gave information to the undersigned, by a note, that the Corporation had prohibited him giving lectures in the Philosophy Chamber, so called, in which he had delivered lectures more than twenty years.

In the course of the same year the President, in like manner, informed your memorialist, that the Corporation had determined that the Cabinet of Minerals, presented chiefly by Dr. Lettson, of which your memorialist is the regularly constituted keeper, and which had been placed

in the Philosophy Chamber by the Corporation, should be removed thence, and placed in the Anatomical Dissecting Room.

The season being returned when these subjects will probably be revived, your memorialist had thought fit, by and with the advice of his friends, to address the Honorable and Reverend the Corporation, to entreat them to re-consider the votes before mentioned; and that, among other, for the following reasons.

First,-- that your memorialist has given lectures in the Philosophy Chamber ever since the present Professor of Mathematics and Experimental Philosophy (Webber) was an under graduate, without any complaint of hindrance, or inconvenience reaching his ears until lately. He has sedulously, uniformly and successfully avoided interrupting this Professor in his official duties. He therefore supposes there may be other reasons than those avowed for depriving him of a privilege so long and quietly enjoyed. This apprehension is strengthened by observing that the reasons or pretences for his relinquishing that room have not been uniform.

Secondly,-- the determination to remove the highly valuable and elegant CABINET OF MINERALS from the place it now ornaments, to the Anatomical Room, was received by your memorialist with surprise and sorrow; because he conceived such removal derogatory to the honor of the Donors, whose feelings it is calculated pointedly to wound; and because the whole affair has been judged of, and determined on without the privilege of a hearing, on the part of your memorialist.

Your memorialist can never feel perfectly easy in any society, political or literary, which, while legislating for him, shall deny him the privilege of a hearing, or the advantage of a representative. The secret manner, as it regards your memorialist, in which this business has been conducted, can never give rise to other than unpleasant ideas.

Your memorialist having been connected with this University as a Professor full two thirds of what is deemed "a literary life," must have made up his judgment of things around him. And he hopes the Corporation will excuse his expressing, for once, his opinion, that unless the Professors in this College be confined to their appropriate branches and restrained from interfering with that of others, a wide avenue will be opened for discord to enter this hitherto peaceable seminary.

Your memorialist aims at the most regular and respectful mode of soliciting the Corporation to take these several matters into close examination; to which end he particularly entreats, that a Committee may be appointed to examine into facts; because he is aware, that from the multiplicity of things generally laid before the Corporation at one sitting, time is too short to allow particular attention to extra business, that may possibly have several ramifications.

Your memorialist deems it needless to repeat what he has so often declared, and confirmed by his conduct, that he neither expects, or wishes to be accommodated to the injury, inconvenience, hinderance, or embarrassment of any Professor, Tutor or Librarian. He only wishes to revive the liberal spirit of mutual accommodation; which he hopes may be effected without another appeal to the Legislature of the University. All which, however, is submitted, with the utmost deference and respect, to the wisdom of the Reverend and Honorable the Corporation, by

Benjamin Waterhouse.

Cambridge, August 7, 1803.

We quote further from the newspaper article above referred to.

"This memorial or remonstrance, dominated which you will, excit-

ed no small sensation, and divided the opinion of the college gentlemen. After the Corporation had once made a decree, it was an unusual thing to move for "an arrest of judgment." But Dr. W. declared he would sooner return the keys of the Cabinet to the Corporation than assist in removing it to a place where it would be exposed to destruction. **** Dr. W.'s friends said it was not only unfeeling as it regarded him, but ungrateful, after he had taken such pains, and spent so much time in studying, arranging and displaying the minerals to the best advantage, to have them thus shoved out into a dirty place, liable, during the period of dissections, to every sort of injury. But President Tillards ill health, and frequent and long absences from Cambridge, laid this business asleep for nearly two years; when the Professor of Mathematics and Experimental Philosophy revived it by applying to the Corporation for a hearing before them. After a patient and candid hearing of the Professor of Physics and the Professor of Mathematics, they decreed unanimously that the Cabinet of Minerals should not be removed. This so offended Mr. Webber, that from the strictest intimacy he never after, save once, entered the doors of his brother Waterhouse. From this time forth the cabinet of minerals was a sore sight to this rigid man."

Referring to the progress which his lectures on Natural History were making he writes in the preface of one of his books: "After the Lectures on Natural History had been given in Cambridge four or five years, they began to excite some curiosity beyond the walls of the college; and, in a year or two more, several gentlemen of opulence and literary influence in the government of the University, came to the resolution of laying a foundation for a Professorship of Botany and Entomology; to which they determined to annex an extensive Botanical Garden. Rejoiced at the prospect of seeing accomplished, by a rich association, what he had long, anxiously, and alone, endeavored in vain to effect, the author of these essays, (Dr. Waterhouse) did everything in his power to forward the design.

The business began, and progressed with a zeal bordering on enthusiasm. Besides a subscription of between thirty and forty thousand dollars, the Legislature of the Commonwealth gave two townships of land towards maintaining a Professorship of Natural History and for a Botanical Garden at Cambridge. But the author saw, that amidst all this ardour, scarcely one in ten of the subscribers knew exactly what they were subscribing for. Very few of them knew what a Botanical Garden was, or rather what its objects and ends were; yet with a general and indistinct idea, that the knowledge of plants and insects would be of vast benefit to the community, they subscribed to the scheme with a generosity characteristic of New England merchants."

When, however, in 1805 it was proposed to establish a Professorship of Natural History and that the Professor of this branch should be elected by the subscribers to the foundation who had in mind a person other than Dr. Waterhouse the latter strongly objected. When we consider that he began this work with little or nothing to do with, and labored practically alone all these years with almost no financial support from the University, with the simple title of Lecturer, until he had developed an interest sufficient to lead to the establishment of a Professorship, we cannot wonder that the Doctor felt some resentment at the prospect of being superseded by another with the title of Professor, who would, in a sense, reap the reward of the Doctor's labors and carry on the work with the assurance of a comfortable salary. While mistaken, probably, in the motives which he assigned to the promoters of this department, yet we can sympathize with him when in writing of his early struggles and few pupils he says: "But when, at length, they amounted to sixty, and had become an object of considerable attention, and public notice, as well as profit, then he was put out of his place to make room for another."

The following letter, dated Feb. 15, 1805, written to Judge Davis,

a member of the Corporation, shows that he remonstrated against the proposition with characteristic energy

"I was very glad at hearing you express a wish to converse on the subject of the Botanic Garden, Natl History and will not fail calling on you for that purpose the next time I visit Boston.

I have not talked on the subject until very lately. Had either of the managers ever drop'd a word to me on the subject I should have been satisfied. That "Hard words, jealousies and fears" have been the consequence of the remarkable silence is not a surprising thing. Nothing but a free, frank and friendly conference with the agents of this business can obviate similar occurrences in the future. Such a conference I had yesterday with Dr. Pearson. I feel free to say that this affair is a very important one to me. 'Tis a crisis, or turning point in my life, influencing my domestic plans & future prospects; as on the termination of this design, the education of my four sons, or in other words my connexion with Harvard College depends; since I am determined if this hitherto concealed scheme, when developed, should be found to interfere with my reputation or interest, to publish in a pamphlet a narrative of all my exertions, in founding, maturing and bringing forward, Natural history in general, & Botany in particular, then to quit the ground, go into Boston there to give my lectures & to attempt practice, in which idea I have been encouraged by characters of no small influence in society.

I disavow any design or desire to mar or impede any beneficial plan. I explicitly declare that envy has no place in my composition; but I should be divested of the ordinary feelings of humanity, nay I should be 'worse than a heathen,' were I totally insensible to some past and present transactions, in which my character & interest are concerned. After laboring seventeen years in establishing a new branch of science in this place, and having ALONE, and UNASSISTED brought it to a degree of maturity, then to have another person brought forward to take the most conspicuous & captivating part of it, with the title of Professor, while I remain with the humble title of Lecturer, giving lectures to boys at 25 cents each lecture, is what a man of Judge Davis knowledge of men & things can never suppose I will submit to. My friends

I therefore make no hesitation to declare my opinion and feeling which is, would have despised me if I did, and they ought to.

I therefore make no hesitation to declare my opinion and feeling which is, that the College Legislature, in whose service I have done faithfully the duty of a Professor of Natl History & Botany 17 years should give stability to my course of lectures, and with it confer the title of Professor of Natural History in general: then let any other person come forward with the title & function of Prof. of Botany and with it the doctrine of Insects, and I shall not feel my reputation wounded.- I have been strongly urged to go to all the most distinguished subscribers, and explain to them the state of things as it regards myself. Instead of doing as I was urged I called only on Theophilus Parsons and Dr. Warren, and even to them I did not go so fully into the matter as I did yesterday to Prof. Pearson.

I am confident that I can stop the business where it now is, but I rely with full confidence on you, and on the other gentlemen of the Corporation to shield me, from injury & dishonor, and part of my confidence is from the reflection that it is your duty.

Had you not intimated a wish that I should not take up any of your time, which you foresaw would be fully occupied at this days meeting, I should have transmitted something on this subject for their consideration, but on your hint I forebore: I shall not do it the next

meeting. In the meantime should anything be said on that head I beg you to say as much, and express as much of my sentiments as you chuse. Dr. Pearson being on the wing, I have only time to add my respects & esteem

B. Waterhouse.

A little later the Doctor sent the following Memorial to the Corporation:-

"The Memorial of Benjamin Waterhouse, Teacher of Natural History in the University at Cambridge to the Hon^{ble} & Rev^d the Corporation, most respectfully sheweth.

That your memorialist was 17 years ago appointed to deliver annually a course of Lectures on Natural History in this college, as expressed by a vote of the corporation here annexed, which vote was confirmed by the board of Overseers the May following.

Thus constituted a teacher of Nat^l History your memorialist prepared a set of Lectures on that extensive subject. In executing this task he carefully selected such objects as would most forcibly impress the minds of youth with the harmony of the Universe, or unity of design throughout the great Temple of creation; the end & aim of the whole being to lead them 'to look through Nature up to Nature's God.'

During the greater part of the space above mentioned, your memorialist struggled with such difficulties, impediments, and discouragements as would have entirely checked anyone who was not animated with the ambitious sentiment of being considered hereafter the Founder of Nat^l History in the first University in America.

As Nat. History was an entirely new study in this College, your memorialist was compelled to exercise some address at its introduction. The College was nearly barren of books on this subject; and what few there were appeared never to have been perused. Your memorialist had first to excite a curiosity and then to gratify it. He had to prepare the ground, sow the seed & wait their produce. In this infantile state of things he had often to treat important subjects superficially, and to grow more particular as attention & taste increased.

Your memorialist commenced the business in the autumn of 1788 by giving his first course gratis. The 2d year he opened his course with five pupils at a guinea apiece. The 3d year he had seven. The 4th year he allowed each to subscribe whatever he chose; then he had some thirty, some subscribed three guineas, some two, some half a guinea; others clubbed together and divided the half guinea & the lectures between them, one attending one half the course, the other the remaining part. The President disapproving this mode, as deviating from the fee established by the Corporation, it never was again pursued. It was an effort in discouragement; for as yet your memorialist had never received a farthing of salary as a medical professor. Once, in a day of greater difficulty and perplexity than he ever before experienced, he sunk under the discouragement, and felt entirely disposed to relinquish a second time all connexion with Harvard College. This would have been effected had it not been for the encouragement of the venerable Dr. Wiglesworth. 'Persevere,' said he, 'and you will find a reward.' 'Pursue your plan of Natural History, BOTANY especially, which will not fail to raise up friends and supporters. On this subject I will venture to prophecy; it will grow into an establishment.' On this gleam of encouragement he resumed his task with a degree of alacrity, and on the former plan of a guinea each pupil, his numbers were, if he remembers right

ten. The 6th year the numbers were about the same. The 8th year they were nineteen. The 9th year forty one; the 10th year about the same number; and the 11th year I had sixty-six, including some indigent youth who pay nothing.

At this period difficulties were raised through the medium of the late Librarian, respecting giving lectures on Nat^l History in the philosophy Chamber, when your memorialist was ejected from it without a hearing. This ejection materially affected the profits of his course of lectures, by altering his time of lecturing from autumn to the busy season of spring; and has in every succeeding year reduced his pupils one half. Your memorialist has never been indulged with any opportunity of representing this matter to the Corporation. This with some other matters connected with it, have been sources whence flowed uneasiness & discontent. Your memorialist was considered by some as an adventitious Lecturer without rights, rank, or privileges.

Your memorialist begs leave to remark that he was the originator of the CABINET of MINERALS; and has ^{been} for more than thirteen years the principal agent in collecting the specimens therein contained; which for number and value surpass anything in the United States. By the help of this collection a competent naturalist may illustrate one of the three Kingdoms of Nature. This rich collection is not like that of books, or plants perishable by time, but will remain unimpaired for ages.

Your memorialist has likewise collected some curious and valuable articles in other branches of Nat^l History; which he gratuitously transferred from his own private museum to that of the College; the particulars of which he has detailed to that member of the Corporation who resides in Cambridge.

Beside mineralogy your memorialist has sedulously cultivated 'philosophical Botany;' or the anatomy and physiology of vegetables, together with the elements of agriculture and vegetation; and this he presumes he has carried as far as his slender pecuniary means & other requisites could reasonably be expected. As his plan differs from any hitherto made public, he has chosen to submit it to the severity of public criticism. Your memorialist has collected no small number of indigenous plants & made & procured not a few drawings illustrative of the Linnaean System. In a word he has strove beyond his strength to introduce and build up the science of Nat^l History in general in the University at Cambridge; but finding his strength failing, discouragements multiplying, and innovations approaching, he naturally turns to his constituents for protection & encouragement.

Your memorialist begs leave to remind the Corporation, that he has been repeatedly enjoined by that Revd & Hon^{bl} body, to extend the correspondence in the line of Nat^l History; that in obedience to their injunctions he distributed six quires of a printed circular letter, and that he is pretty constantly receiving letters on the subject of Nat^l History, and that he is generally considered both at home and abroad as a Professor in that department.

While thus laboring alone & unassisted in the field of Nat^l History your memorialist has learnt from time to time, by transient report, that there was a scheme in agitation, which if carried into full effect would interfere, if not supercede him in his long labored plan of Nat^l History; and that this was to be effected by a subscription principally among the mercantile part of the community. The whole of the design your memorialist could never discover, as information came only from those to whom application had been made without success; and to these different applicants gave different views of the thing intended. In one point they all agree, viz. that your memorialist was not

to be regarded.

Although he was frequently mentioned in these applications your memorialist did not think proper to inquire into the business till within a few weeks past. He has never seen the plan, but he hears, in the best qualified form of it, that it is to bring forward a person with the title of Professor to take the most conspicuous and captivating part of his branch, with an extension and splendid patronage, while your memorialist is to remain with the vague and humble title of Lecturer, without rights, privileges or rank; and of course liable to those vexations and perplexities, which have for three or four years past, rendered his life, at times very unpleasant, and which he dreads again to encounter.

From all the considerations he is induced to say that having done faithfully the duties of a Professor of Natural History during the long space of 17 years he feels no delicacy or embarrassment in declaring that he conceives that in the present state of things, it is no more than common justice that he should have the title of Prof^r of Natl History, previously to the adoption of any person chosen in the novel mode by private individuals. They will find on inquiry that the usage of foreign Universities countenances the idea.

The main object of this memorial is to entreat the Hon^l & Rev^d the Corporation that nothing may be done decisively in this business at present; but that time may be allowed to your memorialist to read the plan and to consult his friends upon it. He has done all in his power to check the exertions of his friends at this time, on being assured that everything was doing to benefit him, and to promote his views and interest. He has therefore waited in silent confident, the result, and he was in hopes they would have indulged him with a sight of the plan before it was presented to the Corporation for their adoption. He is aware that the Corporation never had a more delicate business before them. It is he knows, in some respects without a parallel. Private individuals have brought forth the nicest point of honor that can arise among literary men for the Corporation to decide on; which some of the most discerning men in the community are waiting to see how the Corporation will act in so novel and so delicate & unprecedented business.

As no plan is so likely to be durable as that which is adopted with deliberation your memorialist earnestly hopes that this business may not be precipitated, especially when it is considered that the most delicate part of the whole business is thrown on the Corporation. All these considerations and more, that might be added, did time permit, induce your memorialist to pray that this business may not be hurried through. He has no apprehension that the Corporation will be disposed to sacrifice his feelings and his fame to a rich offer, he only fears that they may consider it in but one or two points of view, when it admits of more. He fears that an interference and rivalry in point of honor, if not interest will be established instead of a friendly cooperation. Your memorialist heard by mere accident of this business being about to be laid before the Corporation, and has not had sufficient time to express his ideas and arrange them as he ought; nor has he been allowed to see the plan drawn up by the Committee of the Subscribers, and of course knows not exactly the points of interference, or whether there are any than what he has transiently heard of. As he has been compelled to write this memorial in haste, he hopes the circumstances in which it is written will apologise for its incorrectness. All of which is submitted with the highest respect to the Hon^l and Rev^d the Corporation by

Benjamin Waterhouse.

Cambridge Mar. 1, 1805.

In the meantime Dr. Waterhouse interviewed several of the promoters of the enterprise and was assured that the title of the Professorship was to be "Botany and Entomology," rather than "Natural History," and that there was no intention of interfering with his lectures. The following abstract from one of the Doctor's newspaper articles written in 1812, over the signature "An Independent Whig," already referred to, gives an interesting resume of several of these interviews with Mr. Parsons.

"To this distinguished gentleman, (Mr. Parsons) it seems Dr. W. applied; and related to him his fears and apprehensions respecting the contemplated professorship of botany. These conversations were in the winter of 1804 and 1805. As we cannot well give an account of these without running into perhaps a tedious detail, we shall throw the sum and substance of them into the form of a dialogue, in imitation of some of the Greek and Roman writers; so that, without professing to vouch for the precise words and phrases, we hope to give an accurate idea of the whole; for we are not able, after a lapse of seven or eight years, to state verbatim, the queries, and the answers, and the replies, and the rejoinders, and the compliments &c. &c. We shall be careful nevertheless to say nothing but what we conscientiously think was said, omitting superfluous matter, however learned, sensible or witty. After a great deal of thought, and unusual deliberation, and calling into requisition all the power of reminiscence, the following is believed to be the substance of these different conversations, with their spirit also.

*P.- - 'I am very glad you have called upon me, and spoken your mind so freely respecting the contemplated Professorship, and Botanical garden. I had been wishing to see you, because I had heard, from several, that you were uneasy, under an apprehension that we might, in carrying into operation the favorite plan of my friend Lowell, do something that would interfere with your lectures, destroy the fruit of your labours, or otherwise injure you.'

*Parsons

*L.-- I had those fears; and so had several of my best friends; and the care which appeared to be taken to conceal from me, and from my intimates the steps taken in the business did not lessen my apprehensions, nor those of my friends; and this accounts for the refusal of several to subscribe to your scheme.

P. -- 'They and you are entirely mistaken. I will explain to you the whole in a few words. Judge Lowell originated the plan; and it was his will and wish to bring from his recluse situation ~~situation~~ in Kittery, Mr. William Dandridge Peck, a man of learning and great ingenuity and industry; who quitting his mercantile pursuits has devoted all his attention, for several years past, to the subject of plants and insects. Our wish therefore is to bring this man from his obscurity, and place him at Cambridge, that he may communicate his vast fund of natural history to others: and would you yourself obstruct the intention if you could?'

W.-- By no means. So far from it, I would assist you in it. And I feel, in a degree mortified, that you have not enlisted me in carrying your design into effect. I will do everything in my power to bring Mr. Peck forward, if you will only take care, as you have already intimated, that he shall not interfere with me: and that the fruits of my labour for fifteen years past shall not be taken away from me, and given to another. I should rejoice in the idea of co-operation; but I wish to be satisfied that I shall not verify in my own person the fate of Virgil's BEES.-- his "sic vos non vobis mellificulis apes." (So ^{do} you bees make your honey, not for yourselves.)

P.-- You may banish all fears on that score. Take my word for it-- I solemnly assure you that I have no such intention; nor do I know any one who has. We all know that you began the business of natural history at Cambridge; and that you have given the young men highly useful and expansive ideas of nature; and that all who have attended your lectures have been highly delighted with the manner in which you treat the various subjects

of nature. Now our intention is that Mr. Peck shall only treat of two subjects, namely, plants and insects.

W. -- Perhaps you have not been informed that I have, more than a dozen years past, treated of both? And of the first in a manner entirely new.

P. -- Yes I have. And I believe there is no man who has treated the physiology of the vegetable more thoroughly than you have done. The professor we contemplate will leave this all to you; & will have a garden and will describe the various plants, and their systematic arrangement; and will describe those insects particularly that infest and destroy our most useful vegetables. You will go on as you have done, uninterrupted; and our professor will go on as I tell you. There will be a path for each of you to walk in withouy interference.

W. -- I desire no more. I am satisfied; and only wish that this could be guaranteed to me.

P. -- I am glad you express it. I had the principle hand in drawing up the institution, and will explain the principles on which it is founded. In the first place we have called it the Massachusetts Professorship of BOTANY and ENTOMOLOGY; and this we did purely out of consideration of your feelings. -- Our professor is to superintend the formation of a garden; and attend to the culture of the plants, and give every information in his power to the visitants; but he is to give lectures on no other parts of natural history than plants and insects; and as to the first he will not treat upon the structure and physiology of the vegetable; that is to remain with you. As to minerals I have been particularly careful, because I consider them, and the Cabinet so much "a child of your own," that we have made it the duty of our professor to collect minerals, but to do nothing with them excepting placing them in your cabinet. You will therefore lecture upon them, and not he. We have done more than this, - It may so happen that there may be some monies in our funds unappropriated; we have therefore made an arrangement, allowing it to be given towards the

compensation of such professor as may be teaching any branch of natural history not specified in our institution. Now I can assure you that this was done in special reference to yourself. We had you in mind, and only you.

W. -- What you say diminishes greatly my apprehensions. There is one thing however, I cannot easily account for; I mean the marked secrecy with which this business is conducted as it regards me, who have been a public teacher of Natural History, including Botany and Entomology at Cambridge, for sixteen or seventeen years. How am I to explain it, or reconcile it to the instances you have recited of a particular attention to my feelings and interest?

P. -- As to that, it is easily explained. I would mention to you, that I have been very sorry for, which has been injurious to you. I wish you had been asleep instead of undertaking to vindicate Jefferson's MOUNTAIN of SALT in Louisiana. It has created you enemies.

W. -- Did I say anything on the subject that was not true? Beside, I was called upon by name in the Centinel to give information on that subject as Professor of Natural History; and was assured by the Editor that it was written by a member of the board of overseers. I only testified that mountains of salt could exist; and did exist in various parts of the world; and therefore might exist in our newly purchased territory.

P. -- That is nothing to the purpose. You had better said nothing on the subject. It has lessened the number of your friends. Some have said, when your name was favorably mentioned by some of us - "We will never assist, or countenance the man who will write anything to flatter JEFFERSON."

W. -- Indeed! Felix qui potuit rerum cognoscere causas! "That man is fortunate who can trace out the causes of events and things."

This anecdote of the Jeffersonian Mountain of Salt is too precious to be lost. It contains a volume.* This vindication of the exist-

*See next page.

ence of salt mountains, together with the refusal to wear Peter Porcupine's British cockade,** gave some folks reason for the belief that the Professor of Physic was not a suitable material wherewith to make a Bob for the Essex Kite; and he was, from that time, treated as refuse stuff."

"Last page. "When this volume appears it will, we hear, be inscribed to the Hon. Theophilus Parsons and the Rev. Dr. John Thornton Kirkland; to the first out of gratitude for his friendly solicitude for the author; (Dr. Waterhouse) and to the latter for his constantly mentioning the subject of it, whenever he solicited subscriptions in favor of the new professor."

"This refers to an incident related by the Doctor in another of his "Independent Whig" articles as follows: "During the short war between the United States and France a British hireling printer at Philadelphia, under the insolent name of 'Porcupine' recommended to all the advocates of war with France to wear a block, that is a British cockade as an outward and visible sign of an inward attachment to England and hostility to France. Strait way all orders of men in and about Boston put this block ensign in their hats. In this fashion however the Professor of Physic, although a federalist, stood a solitary non-conformist. This first drew the eyes of suspicion, and Mr. Jefferson's poor mountain of salt was confirmation strong, that in the field of politics, he (Dr. Waterhouse) was not a gregarious animal."

Dr. Waterhouse tells us in another place that he was assured by the promoters of the new professorship that in their opinion the new establishment would so increase the interest in Natural History that where he had one pupil he would later have ten.

A copy of the foundation of the new department was now sent to the Corporation and by them to the Doctor. "It appeared so fair and agreeable," says the latter, that he immediately wrote the following letter to that body.

To the Honorable & Reverend the Corporation of Harvard College.

"Agreesably to the direction of the Corporation Dr. Pearson delivered to me the plan or constitution of the Professorship of Botany & entomology; which I have carefully perused; and find it so far different in its spirit and tendency from what had been represented to me, by various people, that I hesitate not to declare my full approbation of it. It appears to me a noble design, dictated by wisdom. It moreover impressed my mind, that the framers of it have been studiously careful not to interfere with me, far less to aim, as has been reported, to lay waste, as it regards myself, the results of many years labor.

There is one article, viz. the 6th in Chapter III which seems to admit of innovation and allow of interference; but as its operation will be wholly under the guidance of the President & Fellows of the College, and of the visitors of the Professorship, it leaves nothing to the caprice of any individual whatever, and is therefore entirely satisfactory.

Hitherto I had been in the dark respecting a design, which was generally supposed would interfere with my interests & reputation, and which if founded, would certainly alter my plans in life. It was therefore highly important that it should be elucidated. I am far from being disposed to impede the progress of this business, that, lest any difficulties may arise with any of the subscribers, I am inclined to wave, for the present, the discussion of the "Title of the Professor of Natl History," and to refer it to a future period, when the Corporation may by enquiries into the customs and usages of other Universities, be led to do the thing that may seem in their wisdom just and proper, provided nevertheless, that this must not be construed into a renunciation of the principles, which dictated the claim to the before mentioned title.

I remain with the hope, that the Corporation will devise means by which my path may be widened through the woods of Natl History, seeing it is more than probable that both roads will finally meet in one professorship. With the utmost respect & deference I am &c "

Benjamin Waterhouse

Camb. Mar. 4, 1805.

As already intimated it was the original intention of the subscribers to establish a Professorship of Natural History but, possibly because of the memorial and remonstrances of Dr. Waterhouse, the same was spoken of, as we have seen, under the title of Botany and Entomology. It was with this title that the plan of the Foundation was presented to the Corporation March 4, 1805 and by it accepted, subject to certain changes. A copy of which being sent to the Doctor, as before noted, called forth the above letter.

Evidently, however, the subscribers were not satisfied with this less comprehensive title and establishment for on the 28th of the same

month the Corporation held another meeting at which a new Foundation was presented and the following action taken.

"The foundation of a Professorship of Natural History with the rules, and principles by which it should be regulated and conducted agreed upon by the Society of Subscribers for that Establishment at their meeting on the 27th Instant, in place of a foundation for a Professorship of Botany and Entomology heretofore agreed upon by the Subscribers aforesaid, having been communicated to the Corporation, and by them fully considered, thereupon

Voted -- That the Corporation assent to the said foundation of a Professorship of Natural History, as agreed upon and submitted by the Subscribers, aforesaid, and that the same be entered on the Records of the Corporation.

William Dandridge Peck, Esq., who had been elected by the Subscribers as the first Prof., was confirmed."

In one of his "Independent Whig" articles Dr. Waterhouse writes of this change as follows:

"After Dr. W. had been assured that the new Professorship was to be of Entomology he did not go to Boston for a week but when he did go he found, to his great surprize, that a very considerable change had taken place in the affairs of the new professorship in his absence. He found that there had been one or more meetings of its friends: and that they had changed its name from Botany and Entomology, to the broad one of Professor of Natural History! and that the professor chosen by the subscribers was to lecture upon Zoology, that is on the animal kingdom generally; and upon Mineralogy, as well as Botany; or, in one word, upon ALL THE THREE KINGDOMS OF NATURE, without any exception, proviso or limitation.

After recovering a little from the surprize which this new and secret order of things had occasioned, Dr. W. called on some of the gentlemen who had been most active in all this strange business, in order to obtain some explanation of it. He found them shy, or silent or else in a great hurry. He collected, however, thus much, that there was a difficulty among some of the subscribers, who refused to pay their subscription, saying they had not subscribed to any such thing as Entomology, and did not know what it was; and that when they were told that it meant insects,

they declared they would not give money for lectures on butterflies and cock-roaches, but for subjects relating to agriculture, the arts, minerals, trade and medicine and the like; and some of them said that they had a long time before subscribed to a printed paper which had a caption to that effect.

The following absolute falsehood was at that time in circulation in Boston, viz. that Dr. Waterhouse had said that Mr. Peck was only to superintend the making of a garden, and the construction of green houses and the rearing of plants, and the collection of curious exotics, while he himself was to perform the teaching part, by giving all the lectures, making poor Mr. Peck little more than a head gardener. Ridiculous as was this story it had the effect desired by its propagators. But some believed it and others effected to believe it, and Dr. W. was not on the spot to contradict it; and it was generally viewed as a very reprehensible thing in that gentleman to make such a dishonorable and full representation of the functions of the new professor. When Mr. *Higginson found Dr. W. very much disturbed at this false report, and very intent in tracing out the author of it, he advised him in a very friendly manner to give it over; for that the style of the professorship had already been changed, and that what had been done could not now be undone; and that rather than have any further difficulty about it, he should be an advocate for compensating Dr. W. for any injury that he should sustain by their new scheme; and that he himself would not hesitate to give two or three hundred dollars to have the thing go on smoothly. In the course of this conversation, which was in the street, Mr. Higginson begged Dr. W. not to persist in his attempt to trace the authors of the report; for, said he, at parting, "you must be sensible my dear Sir, that there is always in such cases A LITTLE MANAGEMENT!" *****

Dr. W. as you may naturally suppose, called on Mr. Parsons, whom he found more reserved than usual, being more disposed to evade than answer.
*one of the

ver certain questions put to him. He at length delivered himself thus, as nearly as we can recollect in those words; certainly to this effect --
 "I would^{like} to remark to you, Doctor, lest you should mistake me, and draw some erroneous inferences, that as we have now chosen our professor, you may well suppose that we shall be more attentive to the man of our own choice than to you. I declare to you that I will do nothing to your injury; but at the same time, you must be sensible that we shall in all things give preference to our own professor, whom we have elected;" He then added, "why Doctor, this is small business from you. How many pupils have you to attend your natural history lectures?" He was answered that he had of late years from 50 to over 60. "No, no! you have not. You have never had more than 17 or 18." Dr. W. replied, that the profits of his lectures had become lately so considerable as to make the subtraction to be felt by his family. The man's answer to this deliberate assertion was expressive of a doubt of the truth of it: whereupon Dr. W. improved the first proper vacancy in the conversation to withdraw; and never after entered his house till he was sent for to stand the Inquisition set on foot by this very man, relative to his (Dr. W.'s) administration of the affairs of the "hospital."

Dr. Waterhouse tells us that when the foundation of the new professorship, with its broader title and scope, was presented to the Corporation at its meeting, as above stated, some of the members of that body objected thinking that in that form it was unfair to the Doctor. The promoters replied that his was only a lectureship and merely a permission, but the chief argument was that here was a fine offer and it ought not to be rejected just because it might hurt the feelings of one person. It was rumored, the Doctor says, that if the professorship was not accepted as made the same would be offered to the Academy of Arts and Sciences.

Notwithstanding the establishment of this new department Dr. Wa-

* To be noticed later.

terhouse continued to give his lectures although he was evidently still uneasy as to their future, for he closes a letter to Dr. Pearson, dated Dec. 11, of the same year, 1805, as follows:- "But I wish in a more particular manner to submit to the Rev^d & Hon^{bl} the Corporation the propriety of expressing in some vote or record that my course of Natural History lectures is not annihilated nor superceded by the recently established Professorship, but that, agreeably to the united declarations of the Pantores of that establishment, my lectures are not only to proceed as heretofore without any infringement from them, but to be encouraged. With esteem and respect I am, Sir, your humble serv^t."

Benjamin Waterhouse.

The records show that this letter was read to the Corporation Jan. 13, 1806, but action was deferred. Finally the Doctor's worst fears were realized for, at a meeting held Apr. 27, 1809, the Corporation took the following action.

"Whereas when there was no Professor of Natural History in Harvard College to instruct the Pupils in any branch of Natural History the Corporation on the 29, April 1788 authorized Dr. Waterhouse to deliver annually a course of Lectures upon Natural History to such students as should obtain permission under the hands of their Parents or guardians to attend, since that time a Professorship of Natural History has been founded at Cambridge & Professor elected & introduced into that office capable of reading Lectures in every branch of Natural History who has already been directed to read Lectures on Botany, Entomology & Zoology and who may read Lectures in such other branches of Natural History as may be directed agreeable to the foundation, as it is inconvenient & improper that Lectures in Natural History be read by two distinct professors, therefore it is Voted-- that hereafter no Lectures on Natural History be read in the College or to any of the students but by the Professor of Natural History. But as the Corporation has learnt that Dr. Waterhouse has already begun his annual course of Lectures for the present year it is further voted that he may finish the said course agreeably to the terms of the said vote passed in 1788, and that after his present course is finished to wit from & after the last Wednesday in August next the said vote to be rescinded and made null and void."

It seems that this action on the part of the Corporation did not become known to Dr. Waterhouse for some months and in the late fall he sent the following letter to Dr. Holmes with a memorial to be presented to the Board of Overseers.

Cambridge, Nov. 6, 1809.

Rev. and Dear Sir.

During the eight and twenty years that I have been a professor in this University, I have never once had occasion to communicate with the Board of Overseers; and am therefore unacquainted with the precise channel through which my Memorial should pass. I have however concluded if it went through the hand of my parish minister, it would not be far from the right path. I intended to arrange the narrative, or series of facts mentioned in the memorial, in the summer vacation; but could not find the requisite leisure: for the first part of it was engaged in an arduous task assigned me by the Corporation in a department of Natural History (the Mineral Cabinet.) Directly after professional engagements of a peculiar nature called me from home, (Vaccination) and then my Medical Lectures commenced, and still occupy me every day in the week.

It is, I believe, five years since I mentioned to you my feelings and my fears respecting the subject of this memorial. I was however soothed, and tranquilized by assurances, from certain gentlemen, that I should never be interrupted in my lectures on Natural History. In the present state of the business, I presume you will think with me, that the affair ought to be looked into, and thoroughly examined by the Board of Overseers.

Twenty one years have made a change in your Board, as well as in that of the Corporation. The Rev. Dr. Lathrop is the only member of the Corporation that is left to remember the first establishment of the Lecture-ship of Natural History. All the rest are dead! I think it is of some importance to my own reputation, as well as a duty I owe my family and children, to leave behind me a narrative of my labours in Natural History in this University, were it only as an explanation and apology for leaving them so little property.

Do you agree with Murphy in his translation of "Sublatis studiorum pretiis, etiam studiis peritura"-- TAKE FROM MEN THE FRUITS OF THEIR STUDIES, AND LEARNING WILL WITHER ON THE STALK.

With high esteem &c. &c.

Benjamin Waterhouse.

To the Rev. Dr. Holmes, Cambridge.

The following is the Memorial:

Cambridge, Nov. 6, 1809.

The Memorial of Benj. Waterhouse, Professor of the Theory and Practice of Physic, and Lecturer on Natural History in Harvard College, to the Hon. and Rev. the Board of Overseers, most respectfully sheweth---

"That in the month of July last your memorialist heard transiently, that the Rev. President of the College had presented to the Rev. and Honorable the Overseers a vote of the Corporation, having for its end the abolition of the Lectureship of Natural History, which the College legislature had called your memorialist to fill more than 20 years ago. As no such vote had ever been transmitted to him, as was customary, your memorialist doubted the fact, untill he applied to

President Webber, from whom he learnt that such a vote had actually passed the Rev. and Hon. the Corporation, three months before.

Neither the Corporation as a body, nor any individual of it, ever gave your memorialist the least reason to suspect that this their establishment was meant to be of a temporary nature-- On the contrary, the proposal made to him, in the year 1788 was absolute, and unconditional, as it respected duration; so that your memorialist went on laboring, from year to year in full expectation that it would one day settle on him in all the forms of a regular professorship, to be added to his duties as a medical Professor; and this expectation was expressed by your memorialist in writing to the Hon. and Rev. the Corporation, several years ago.

Situated as your memorialist has been; and circumstanced as he now is, he is led in the most respectful manner to ask leave of the Rev. and Hon. the Board of Overseers to lay before them a series of facts, respecting the origin and the progress of the before mentioned Lectureship; as he is confident that none of the younger members of either branch of the College Legislature have a competent idea of it. The board has outlived a knowledge of facts. He wishes for a deliberate and fair exposition of the whole business.

The sudden frustration of an assigned and long continued scientific labor is a serious thing. To suffer this, without a moments warning, or the least intimation, is an extraordinary occurrence in the affairs of men; more especially in the history of Universities; and is what no faithful literary laborer in this, or any other country, ought to occur. Your memorialist cannot but view this as a case of importance, not merely as it regards himself, but as it may regard others, who may hereafter be in a similar situation. "Sublatis studiorum pretiis, studia peritura," is as true now, in this country, as it was in Rome, when Tacitus wrote it.

All which is submitted to the Hon. and Rev. the board of Overseers, with great respect &c."

Benjamin Waterhouse.

(Prof. of Theory and Practice of Physic; and)
()
(Lecturer on Nat. History in Harvard College.)

This memorial was considered by the Overseers and referred to a committee who reported at a later meeting of the Board "That it was expedient to concur with the Corporation, provided compensation be made to Professor Waterhouse for any detriment he may sustain in consequence of the discontinuance of his lectures." No further action was taken and about a year later the Doctor again memorialized the Board, under date of Oct. 10, 1810. The matter was referred to another committee but as matters were now approaching a crisis in the Doctor's relations with his brother medical professors and the college authorities nothing seems to have been done about it.

During this controversy over the Professorship of Natural History Dr. Waterhouse was going through another unpleasant experience in this branch of his work because of criticism of his administration of the mineral cabinet. In one of his "Independent Whig" articles the Doctor says:- "He (Dr. W.) had heard however in the summer of 1803, from several persons, that there were complaints made, of gentlemen having applied to him for a sight of the minerals, and that he had refused to gratify them. At length this neglect of duty was mentioned in the Corporation; and the President of course spoke to Dr. W. on the subject." The Doctor assured the President there was no truth in the complaint but the latter said there was one person in particular who had found fault. On being urged to name the person the President said it was Mr. Peck, who was later made Professor of Natural History. Dr. Waterhouse then wrote Mr. Peck who practically exonerated the Doctor, but the tone of the letter did not entirely suit the latter. For a number of years there was constant friction between him and the Corporation over the cabinet, as shown by the quite extensive correspondence on the matter, now preserved in the college papers. He naturally considered the mineral cabinet, in a sense, as the product of his own creation and it is not strange, perhaps, that he was somewhat restive under the criticism of members of the Corporation whom he felt had no practical knowledge of mineralogy and somewhat slow and not over careful in carrying out the suggestions and recommendations of that body.

In 1806 the Corporation, wishing more detail regarding his expenses, voted:- "that no allowance be made on account of said cabinet unless a particular account of the same be exhibited." In the reply the Doctor writes as follows:- "This I understand to mean any extra expense, as freight &c. The expense does not arise from such things, but in the course of correspondence, for in fulfilling the injunction of the Corporation, as expressed in their vote May 20, 1795, I am lead into an expense

as undefinable as the expenditures in entertaining company in consequence of holding an official station: for example, I have never had the confidence to beg minerals of my transatlantic correspondents without previously sending them publications or natural productions of our own country: but of such things I have never kept a debtor and credit account, or ever shall. To note down the postage of letters, the expence of packages, and trifling charges of portage is to expect more than I shall ever perform: for besides being mixed with things merely personal, it is a sort of business I have an utter aversion to." During this year a committee was appointed by the Corporation to examine the cabinet and after considerable controversy, as to how the specimens should be arranged and cared for and catalogued, extending over some years, at a meeting held Oct. 31, 1809 that body "voted that the President and Judge Davis be a Committee to inquire into the state of the Mineralogical Cabinet belonging to the College, and to take care that all the specimens belonging to the College be immediately placed in said Cabinet, and that the President be requested to take of Dr. Waterhouse the keys of the cabinet, and also those which open the doors leading to the Philosophical Chamber, and thereupon Dr. Waterhouse be discharged from any further care of the Cabinet."

This committee soon after made a report charging that some of the specimens were missing and calling upon the Doctor to produce them. The latter replied in a note filled with indignation and finally wrote the following letter to the Corporation.

The Honorable & Reverend

The Corporation of Harvard College

Gentlemen,-

The only proper step which a man in the service of the College can take, when he feels himself aggrieved, is to express himself respectfully but freely to the Legislature of the University.

I have been keeper of the college cabinet of minerals twenty years: and have been the remote or proximate cause of the whole collection. I am attached to the thing in proportion too the pains, labour, and attention bestowed upon it. I knew not but I gave entire satisfac-

tion as keeper of it, untill I saw a report of a Committee, signed "Samuel Webber and Jno. Davis" dated July 11, 1806, and March 12, 1807. Discontented as I was with that report, I had no opportunity of remarking upon it, as it was not sent to me by President Webber untill about a year and a half after the Corporation voted to accept it. I found that this Committee had noted in the catalogue eleven specimens as missing from out of the cabinet. The whole report appeared to cast a shade of ignorance and negligence over my conduct as keeper of the cabinet: and to require of me some things that were impossible. Not willing to trust wholly to my own feelings, I submitted this report to the cool, discriminating judgment of a distinguished character in the college family, whose decision confirmed my own.

My letter to President Webber of Aug. 19, 1809, expresses how far I had proceeded in carrying into effect the recommendations of the Committee, as specified in the report just mentioned, together with my reasons for deviating from those recommendations, and adopting one more scientific; which reasons were, it seems, approved by the committee, and adopted as the groundwork of my next proceedings.--

In my letter of the 30th of Octr., I informed the Committee of my further progress, viz,- "That in the early part of the summer vacation, I had completed one part of the direction of the Corporation, and that every specimen had been taken down and brushed, or blown with bellows, and then replaced systematically; and that in this task I was occupied six days, with an assistant; and that I had not had time to do much with the new catalogues before my Medical Lectures commenced, but that they (the catalogues) should be attended to in the winter."

All this was, I presume, indicative of attention to the business, as opportunity allowed; for I avoided going into the philosophy chamber to any such work, while the experimental lectures were in course.

Only ten days after writing this letter to the President I received from him a billet informing me that Judge Davis and himself were a committee of the Corporation "to examine the state of the mineralogical cabinet, belonging to the college; and to take care that all the minerals belonging to the college be immediately placed in it;" and requesting me to meet the committee the next Monday in the philosophy chamber. After my very recent communication to the President respecting the state of the cabinet, I was totally at a loss how to account for this reappointment of a committee to re-examine the state of the cabinet, which I had so recently put in order.

It was late at night when I received the President's billet; but late as it was, I went directly to the President with the keys and insisted on his sealing them up, so as to prevent all access to the cabinet before the committee went to it.

When the committee met in the philosophy chamber to examine the cabinet, I could draw nothing from them respecting the cause, which had induced the Corporation to judge it needful to order a new examination, as it would derange what I had just been doing. I however collected from rumours out of doors, principally among the chemical students that an idea afloat was, that there had been a number of finest specimens missing from out of the cabinet; and notwithstanding what I had said, and repeated, it was shrewdly suspected that they were at my house: and it was accordingly conjectured that the keys of the cabinet would be soon taken out of my hands, & placed in others, where the specimens would be better taken care of.-- What gave color to these reports was the conduct of Dr. Goreham, who sent an undergraduate to me with an abrupt message to send him the keys of the mineral cabinet. I desired the youth to tell Dr. G. that I should be glad to accommodate him; and if he would call on me I would explain to him why I could not

let the keys go out of my hands. He however was offended at my refusal, & mentioned it in that way to his pupils; which induced my son, who was one of them, and who heard what I had said to the messenger, to attempt to set him right. The next day, I wrote him, as I thought, a complaisant letter, and told him that I would endeavor to accommodate him, and that I wished to see him to explain what I could do and what not; and asked him to explain this to his pupils, but he neither did, nor took any notice of my letter. These occurrences convinced me that there were indirect steps taken without, to effect certain purposes within the Corporation. I was desirous to divert this young Professor from treading in the same path with his colleague.

I must here remark that I had said to President Webber and to Judge Davis, that I knew of no specimens belonging to the college out of the cabinet. This I had repeated and re-iterated. But it was apparent to me that these gentlemen did not believe what I said.- The President and Judge Davis spent three days in scrutinizing that cabinet which I had recently put in systematical order; after which the Chairman of the committee sent me a catalogue of the missing minerals, with a letter, saying that "these specimens (68 in number) of the Lettsonian and French donations, were not found by the committee of the Corporation, in their examination of the cabinet," and then the President added --- "the committee wish you to Bring or Send in those specimens, as soon as you can, that they may be put into the cabinet."

I detained the President's messenger till I wrote an answer to these extraordinary expressions, which was indicative not merely of my astonishment, but my indignation; yet not devoid of that respect due to a chairman of a committee of the Honble and Revd the Corporation." It is not possible that President Webber could have forgotten my assertions, and re-iterations respecting my having no knowledge of any specimens belonging to the college out of the cabinet. It must be borne in mind that all this time, and for a week or two before, the keys of the cabinet were in the hands of the committee, and that it was never opened but in their presence.

Four or five days after this, I received a notification from the Pres., to attend him and Judge Davis in the philosophy chamber, then and there to point out the missing minerals.-- Some men would never again have met these gentlemen on this business. But I was determined to undergo the scrutiny, notwithstanding I was treated to say the least of it, with very little delicacy in the course of it, especially by the President."

.....
 "The following is a copy of the letter.

Nov. 29, 1809.

Revd. President Webber.

"I retain the person who brought your letter mentioning the specimens that are missing, in which you say, "The Committee wish you to bring or send in those specimens." Bring them in from where Sir? Does the Committee think I have them? -- I wish you to keep the keys until I have time to examine the Cabinet myself, when I have no doubt but most of those now marked as missing will be found in the cabinet, as it was once before, when those marked as missing were found in the cabinet."

I am respectfully

Yours, ect.,

B. Waterhouse.

I obeyed the summons above mentioned, and repairing to the philosophy chamber on Monday, Dec. 4th. with my son John, who is a real mineralogist, we there, without much difficulty pointed out to the Committee each & every specimen, that they had marked down as missing. Two (the President says three) only excepted.

To be the keeper of a cabinet of Minerals twenty years, and to have shown the specimens to so many different people, and to have only two missing is an indication either of good management. or unprecedented good fortune. I leave the Corporation to determine which. Should anyone enquire how came the committee to return sixty-eight specimens as missing, when sixty-six of them were actually found by me in the cabinet? Shall I answer this question? -- Or must I pass it over in respectful silence? It is no discredit to a man to be ignorant of a branch of knowledge he does not possess. He should however be a little diffident in examining those who do. I was the first who gave lectures on Mineralogy in the United States, and I believe the first who collected a cabinet of minerals, yet I daily feel my deficiency of knowledge of Fossil bodies.

That the committee should not know the external marks of minerals, so as not to discriminate one from another is not to me strange. But how the Committee should make out a catalogue of sixty-eight minerals, as missing, when Twenty-four of these sixty-eight were in their systematic places, with their labels on them; each label marked with the Roman, and the Arabic figures, together with the initials of the Donor, is not so easily accounted for; because this depends not upon a knowledge of this particular branch of Natl. History, but merely on accuracy. I should have left these narrated facts to the spontaneous remarks of the Corporation, had not my knowledge, my accuracy, & my attention been implicated in the former report of the same gentlemen.

Most of these specimens now in the cabinet, that have no labels attached to them, are principally my own donation, or the donation of my son John Fothergill.* I applied to the President for the keys, in order to mark them as such, but he refused them, altho' I reminded him that I was still the regular constituted keeper of the Mineralogical cabinet. There are three or four articles I put in the cabinet which I wish to retain.

The apology since offered to me, that it was not meant 68 specimens missing, but specimens without labels, is by no means admissible; because the words of the Chairman of the Committee cannot be misconstrued: they are "that all the minerals belonging to the college be immediately placed in it." And in another letter that "you Bring or Send those (68) specimens, as soon as you can, that they may be put into the cabinet." These words are not only unequivocal, but authoritative; and their obvious meaning is, you have, in our opinion, minerals in your private possession, belonging to the public cabinet, and you are horribly directed "immediately" to "Bring" them in yourself or if you should be ashamed, you may "Send them" by ~~thamxinxymussik~~ or if you another person.

I consider it not merely proper, as it regards myself, but I deem it a duty towards some of the Donors, to acquaint the Honbl & Revd the Corporation of the recent state of the Mineralogical cabinet, prior to the late dislocation of the specimens by the committee.

Every specimen was taken out of the cabinet; and the interior of the cabinet cleaned. Then each & every specimen was cleaned. Such as could not bear hard rubbing were cleaned with a soft brush and water. Others with a soft dry brush; and such as from their delicacy, could bear neither without injury were blown with bellows. Then they were placed in their proper order on the shelves, they being previously cov-

John Fothergill Waterhouse.

ered with painted paper. Some of the drawers must necessarily contain rubbish; but take the whole cabinet throughout, especially the shelves, the specimens were as neat, and in as good preservation as any minerals I ever saw in any cabinet in Europe. The specimens had never suffered chaffing, scratching, or fracture in the hands of me or my assistant; nor has the cabinet, considered as an elegant piece of furniture, ever suffered so much defacement, during the twenty years that it has been under my care, as it has during the late examination by the hands of others.

I have repeatedly asked the President to have the cabinet "high varnished", not merely as a beautifier, but as a preservative of that costly piece of mahogany work.

The Corporation doubtless perceive that I have spoken, as I proposed, respectfully but freely. As it is a Principle with me to respect the constituted authorities, whether of the University- the State- or the Union; and if I am compelled to speak to either of them in the form of a complaint, I shall always do it in the stile of respect, but in a tone of firmness, being always ready to retract, if I should have deviated from the right line, through mistake.

With a high degree of respect, I remain the Corporation's very humble servant,

Benjn. Waterhouse, Keeper of the
Mineralogical Cabinet.

Cambridge, Dec.13,1809.

P. S. Judge Davis asked me, two or three years ago, if all the specimens in the cabinet belonged to the College.

I answered in the affirmative, without sufficient reflection. There are a few things I placed therein, that I never intended to remain if the Cabinet were removed and I ceased to be the keeper of it."

B. W.

In writing to Dr. Lettsom in 1810 Dr. Waterhouse says: "The history of your mineral cabinet would make you weep. If I have my health, and can hold a pen, you and the public shall know the whole of it. Sometimes, one man influences and impels the sentiments and conduct of the public. I am not calculated by nature or habit to combat intrigue."

In another letter to the Doctor he writes: "It would give you pain if I were to relate the persecution I have undergone for presuming to take the lead in botany and mineralogy in this University. I am no longer keeper of the Lettsonian Cabinet of Minerals. The public have resented the treatment, and have patronized my Lectures on Natural History in Boston beyond example. I have just given a course to a large audience, composed of the first characters of the state, of both sexes."

The echoes of this controversy over the cabinet were heard some fifteen years later when the college published a circular, which, in referring to the origin of the mineral cabinet, entirely ignored Dr. Waterhouse. This omission the latter considered an injustice to himself and occasioned the following letter:

Cambridge, Mar. 16, 1824.

To

The Revd. President Kirkland,-

Sir,-

I had given to me, perhaps a year ago, a printed "Statement of the course of Instruction, with the history of the Foundations, and of the scientific apparatus of Harvard College," and had sent a copy of it to Europe, amongst other publications, which I thought would do honor to this University, without adverting to a passage in it, since pointed out by a friend; and which occasions this letter: I mean the passage in p. 22, where the Chemical Department is spoken of, and under it, as its appendage, the Cabinet of Minerals, "which", says the "statement," "accrued chiefly from the gift of the agency of mines of the French Republic in the year 1795; and of the late Dr. Lettson in London";-thereby intimating that the Cabinet owes its origin to that late and inconsiderable donation.

This present, comparatively trifling, (not amounting to two hundred specimens) came from M. le Tombe, called usually in Boston "the old French consul;" and was in consequence of his politely magnifying my friendly services to him on a critical occasion, readily explained by recourse I presume, to the records of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, about the time the Consul returned to France.

It was five years anterior to the date above mentioned, that I commenced the collection that adorns the College; and about two years after that, Dr. John Coakley Lettson, of London, sent me a small box of minerals, the area of which did not exceed that of the page on which I am now writing to you. Consul le Tombe saw my collection, I conjecture in 1793, or 94, at my own house, when it amounted perhaps to five hundred specimens, and he promised to add to it when he got home. He did not forget it, but sent them through Mons. Mozard, dignified by the inflated language of that day, & country they came from; and as he addressed himself, in the first instance, to President Willard, I suffered it to pass without much comment, as I perceived that Consul Mozard was greedy to take to himself the credit which really belonged to his predecessor. In the year 1796, the Cabinet was the richest & most extensive collection of minerals in the United States; as you may judge from my account of it published in that year and published in Pottigrews Memoirs of Dr. Lettson, Vol. 1st, pp. 192 to 196, London, 1817.

From all which, and much more if needed, I feel myself warranted in saying, that the Cabinet of Minerals referred to in p. 22 of your "Statement" owes its origin, progression, & accretion to me, from the year 1790 to the period when it was wrested out of my hands, in the manner well known to you, & the public.

The collection of polished marbles was the result of my pretty hard and re-iterated begging from my friend Mr. Bowdoin, who was unwilling to give them to College; but gave them to me.

The very fine collection of Salts, I wrote for to England particularly and expressly, to illustrate my assertion, that a mountain of salt was within the compass of Nature's productions; and they came to me personally. The same may be remarked of certain petrifications & incrustations, sent me by my uncle, Dr. Peter Oliver.

My son, Dr. John Hothergill Waterhouse, added many from his own collection; for at that time, neither of us hardly supposed it possible, that we, or ours should ever be denied access to that collection, the museum, or the Library, having labored to enrich all three.

Well knowing my friend Lettison's susceptible side, I strove unceasingly to throw all the credit of our fine Cabinet upon him; as he assuredly was its greatest benefactor.- Nay- I have ever spoken of him as the Father of Mineralogy in the U.S., altho' it is well known at home and abroad, that I was the first to commence the collection, and by many years, the first who gave lectures on the Mineral Kingdom in this country -- See Vol. 2d of Life and correspondence of Dr. Lettison by Pettigrew, where the Editor has published a number of my letters, without my knowledge. Even in that haphazard collection of my letters, you will find presumptive evidence of the correctness of my assertions. I would here remark that neither the Corporation, nor President Willard were made acquainted half the time, with the accretions to that Cabinet, & to the museum generally; and only when the freight & charges of articles were too high for me to bear.

I have little inclination at this late period of my life," (two latin words here not legible) "but respect for the memory of my transatlantic Friend, duty to my family, as well as a justifiable sense of self-respect, compel me to remonstrate against the glaring omission of my name in your "statement," when speaking of the rich collection of minerals, which owes its origin, and splendid incrementum chiefly to the labors of myself, and of my deceased son, which made it an object of notice.

Being myself one of those improvident characters, who value reputation more than money, neither you nor the Corporation, to whom I wish this letter to be communicated can wonder that I have taken this step towards redressing that which the scientific world universal would deem a grievance. They, and you, must bear in mind that I have borne that, with other hard stripes, fourteen years, with no other consolation, but that which is drawn from the "XXXVII Psalm: People at home & abroad might well be surprised, after what has been published in England, & here, at seeing such a mutilated account of the Mineral Cabinet, printed at the University Press, while the original teacher and collector of mineralogy was actually living on the spot, to declare the statement deceptive; and the act injustice.

It should be remembered, that in all praise-worthy enterprises- "Le premier pas" (The first step) is a point of honor, even to a proverb. To which I will take the liberty to add, that whenever you of Harvard College cease to respect the "Frimordia veruna." you pull a corner stone out of your Institution.

Very respectfully

Yours

Benjamin Waterhouse.

* This Psalm begins: "Fret not thyself because of evildoers."

To this letter President Kirkland replied saying: "I think your view of the subject is incomplete and partial. I should like to submit the question to a common Judge and to agree to abide by his decision and give any redress in my power, and which should be awarded."

Dr. Waterhouse answered this as follows: "Dr. Waterhouse returns his thanks to the Revd. the President for his attention; but being at the moment, occupied by visitors, must defer his particular answer to Monday morning."

Saturday evening

Mar. 20th, 1824.

This appears to have ended the matter so far as any further reference to the same is found in the college papers. until about a year later when the following letter seems to have closed the controversy

Cambridge, Mar. 2, 1825.

Revd. President

Kirkland

Sir,

"I transmitted those printed documents respecting the University to Mr. Jefferson, one alone excepted: I mean that "circular" relative to the collection of minerals, which I therefore return; because, had I sent it, I should have been accessory to spreading error instead of fact. If it does not convey the idea, that Andrew Ritchie laid the foundation of the collection, it more than insinuates that the French Government did; neither of which is true.

I have enclosed the objectionable paragraph in brackets. I am ignorant who wrote it; and therefore forbear saying, that it is an artful piece of fallacy; and I will only now remark, that it appears to be the result of thought, and artfully worded, so as to deceive. When a fact is designedly presented to the public with its wrong end foremost, does it not become an untruth?

I have already spoken of my feelings on this subject, in my letter to you, dated 16 of March of the past year. To which I will now add, that I had the honor of exhibiting to his Royal Highness Prince Edward Duke of Kent my collection of minerals, two or three years before they were placed in the cabinet in the philosophy chamber, which was a few weeks after the death of Governor Hancock which was in 1793.-- My circular letter was not printed until 1796. Anterior to 1790, I wrote Sir Joseph Banks and to Dr. Lettsom on the subject of a Botanical Garden in Cambridge. The late Judge Lowell knew that I contemplated something of that sort, and he forestalled me, when I gradually retreated before so formidable a man. That followed you know as well as myself.

I mention these things now, that I may be contradicted, before I record them in detail, in a less evanescent form, than the columns of a newspaper."

Very respectfully

Your obt Servt

Benjn Waterhouse.

After the close of his career as a lecturer on mineralogy and natural history at Harvard Dr. Waterhouse gave his lectures on these subjects in Boston where, he tells us, they were liberally patronized. The original course consisted of twelve lectures but it was afterwards increased to twenty-six. The following are the heads of the lectures.

HEADS

of a course of Lectures on NATURAL HISTORY.

1.

Introductory. Curiosity, or desire of knowledge, a certain sign of a vigorous intellect; exemplified in the inhabitants of some parts of the United States, and of China. The importance of gratifying properly this "thirst of the soul" in young people. The grand object, or effort of education is to engage the mind by pleasure, while you fill it with instructive ideas. The outlines of the course before us. The first suggested the natural history of our country.

2.

Opinions respecting the creation of the world. The sum total of matter now, the same as at the first creation. Concerning the PRIMARY MATTER, or that original fund, which is constantly changing out of, and into all the various substances perceivable by the senses. The production of a vegetable, and every other organized body, not a fresh creation, or calling of something out of nothing; but a mutation, or change of something that before existed. This doctrine illustrated. "Omnia ex ovo." (All from an egg.)

3.

Concerning simple matter, and its astonishing divisibility, especially in animal bodies. Matter cannot move itself. Of that original power, which causes weight; and that which causes heat; or gravitation and expansion. Of chemical attractions, and of caloric, or the fluid matter of heat. Of light. Organization, sensation, and spontaneous motion exist only in places exposed to the influence of light. Of the fable of Prometheus.

* See the Constitution of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts. Chap. W. Sect. 2.

4.

Concerning the Efficient Cause, or that spirit, or principle of motion, which throws into shape and actuates the otherwise lifeless matter. Concerning the elements of fire, water, and air. How far they may be considered as elements. By that term we mean to express the last point, which analysis is capable of reaching. Of that spirit, which moved upon the face of the water,

"On wings outstretch'd, o'er chaos hung sublime."

5.

Distribution of knowledge into particular sciences. Philosophy divides itself into the doctrine of DEITY, of Man, and of Nature. That is meant by the Great Book of Nature; the art of reading it. The SCIENCE OF NATURAL HISTORY comprehends two objects; first, that of discovering, naming, and systematizing all the various productions of nature; this is dry, mechanical and incomplete; secondly, that of relating the properties, manners, and relations which they bear to man, and to each other; this is useful knowledge, widening the prospect of nature around us, and giving us a relish for existence. Both necessary to form the consummate naturalist. METHOD the soul of science; by it a confused heap of facts may be so arranged that the judgment may perform its office with advantage. A caution not to mistake classification for NATURAL HISTORY; or to pursue it so far as to loose sight of nature.

6.

Concerning the transition from inert to organized matter; and from vegetable to the lowest order of animated nature, viz. the ZOOLOGY; or that order of beings which connects insensible to animated nature. As every animal in nature came from an egg, so every vegetable springs from a seed. Of molecules, or organized particles susceptible of life. The general doctrine of a vegetable. The anatomy of a seed; demonstrated to be an organized body, furnished with vessels like an animal, and containing the future plant in miniature. Of the successive changes a seed undergoes when placed in a due degree of heat and moisture. Of the oxygenating process in the growing plant, and the evolving egg. How the molecules or infinitesimally small organized bodies are absorbed by a vegetable in the act of growing.

7.

BOTANY. Anatomical description of a full grown vegetable; of the seven essential parts of it, discoverable in seed, root, stem, branch, leaf, bud, flower and fruit. A biographical sketch of LINNAEUS, the prince of naturalists.

8.

The Linnaean system of Botany briefly explained, a system encumbered with fewer difficulties than any hitherto published. Of the private and public virtues of vegetables; or of their specific virtues; and the power which the collective body of vegetables possesses in pu-

*The Monas; Vermis inconspicuous, simplicissimus, pellucidus, punctiformis. An invisible, pellucid, simple, punctiform worm; or a live jelly-like point. See Adams 430.

rifying the atmosphere. Of the pernicious effect of sleeping in a small room crowded with flowers or fruit. How every vegetable, from the tall pine and stately oak of the forest, to the humble grass of the field, contributes to form one grand apparatus for cleansing the atmosphere from pernicious exhalations.

9.

On the noble and honorable art of Agriculture. Agriculture gives man the only riches he can call his own. The advantages of Labour: It is a task kindly imposed on man by his beneficent CREATOR as the best means of preserving his health, his safety, and his innocence. By agriculture only can Commerce be perpetuated. Of the food of plants. Does the food of plants reside in water alone? or in air? or in putrid animal substances? or in a combination of all three? Of the different kinds of soil; and of the manures adapted to each; some of directly opposite qualities to others. Of that unceasing rotation between the growth and decay of vegetables, and the vitality of animals, by which circulating life is kept up, without a pause, throughout every part of the creation.

10.

Directions how to form a Hortus Siccus. Importance of the art of drawing to every man of education, especially to the Naturalist. Of the easy multiplication of drawings by the simple act of etching. Examples. The art of printing; or the ARS ARTIUM OMNIUM CONSERVATIO. A digression, whether SCIENCE, MORALITY, or LIBERTY, have, or will be gainers by this discovery. Gesner and Aldrovandus celebrated and lamented! what is the ultimate end or use of BOTANY? All the public Professors of Botany, in every period of its existence as a science, have been medical men.

11.

The Animal Kingdom. The difficulty of drawing exactly the line between the vegetable and the animal kingdom. Do they in fact divide themselves into two distinct kingdoms? or do they form only one immense family? As all vegetables come from a seed, so every animal comes from an egg. The anatomical description of an hen's egg. Heat, an exciting and preserving stimulus, necessary to begin and to support animal life. The gradual unfolding of a chicken, from the first hour of incubation, till it breaks its shell and shews itself an active animal in the open air. This process applied to the primordia of all other animals in creation. *Of respiration in man and other quadrupeds.

12.

ORNITHOLOGY, or the doctrine of Birds. As, in the descending scale of Nature, quadrupeds follow after man, so birds follow after quadrupeds. The difference between the internal structure of birds and quadrupeds. How air penetrates every part of their bodies, even their bones, while their lungs are nearly quiescent. The difference between their digestive organs and man's. The curious structure of a feather.

*These subjects will be extended, contracted, or entirely omitted, according to the audience. To an audience of medical men they may be extended; to a mixed company of gentlemen contracted, or entirely omitted.

of moulting. Nothing in nature so strong, so forcible, and so light, as the wings of a bird. Why man must ever despair of flying with feathered wings. The flying of a bat on different principles from that of birds. Of the eyes, and surprising sharpness of sight in birds: their eyes nearly as large as their brains. General character of the rapacious class of birds. Of the instinct of birds.

13.

AMPHIBIOLOGY; or the doctrine of that class of animals which live sometimes in the water; have hearts with a single auricle and ventricle; cold red blood; a third part of which only passes through their lungs; with cartilages instead of bones. Divided into Reptiles, under which is found the turtle, frog, and lizard tribe: the Serpentes; and Nautes. Miscellaneous observations.

14.

ICHTHYOLOGY: or the doctrine of Fishes; a class of animals living entirely in the water, and having lungs in their heads; and a vesica aeris, or swimming bladder, in their bodies. Miscellaneous observations. Fishes the eldest children of creation?

15.

INSECTS. Smallness does not constitute an insect. Definition. Their curious structure, exemplified in the caterpillar. Can live the longest when deprived of those organs deemed vital in the higher order of animals. Their amazing number; more numerous than vegetables; a proof of their imperfection. The Microscope operates like enchantment, by calling up to view the invisible world, totally unknown to the ancients. Insects the most captivating branch of Natural History; "vidi et obstupui;" but the least useful. Among such an innumerable host, the silk-worm, the bee, the cantharid, and the cochineal, are nearly all that are useful to man. The VERMES, placed between Insects and Plants. They are the very outskirts of animated nature, extending to the confines of the vegetable world. On Instinct.

16.

On the SCALE OF BEINGS. 1. Of inorganized beings, as a mineral: 2. organized and inanimate beings, as a plant: 3. organized and animate beings, as the brute animal: 4. organized, animate, and reasonable beings, of which there is but one on earth, viz. MAN. Of the faculties of organized bodies: (a) of the nutritive faculty; (b) the vegetative; (c) the sensitive; and (d) the rational. Does the reflective faculty belong only to man? Can we exclude the dog, the beaver, or the elephant? Of the economy of organized bodies. The animal produced by a cutting, as in the polypus, is but one degree above a vegetable, that produced from an egg (oviparous) is one step higher; that class of animals which is brought forth alive (viviparous) still more exalted; of these such as bring forth one at a time the most complete, the foremost of which stands the great master of all, MAN. Man placed on the top of the visible series of creation; and uniting in himself all the powers and faculties of nature; hence called microcosmos. Does the scale end where it ceases to be visible? The opinion of Locke, Addison, and Jennings.

17.

The Doctrine of MAN, comprised under six heads. The 1st considers him Physiologicæ; 2. Dieteticæ; 3. Pathologicæ; 4. Naturaliter; 5. Politice; and 6. Theologicæ:— "Hæc si noveris HOMO es, et a reliquis animalibus distinctissimum genus." LIN. The human body unites all the powers and faculties of nature; it is the masterpiece of creation. Instinct, a propensity prior to experience and independent of instruction; directs the animal creation to choose what is good for food, and to avoid what would be destructive; but man, blessed with reason, feeds on everything, and varies it infinitely, the art of cookery. Of the Vis Mediatric Naturæ, or that innate power which the human body possesses of curing ~~when~~ diseased. Man in his savage state; in his civilized state; and lastly as distinguished from all other animals by a knowledge of his Creator.

18.

MAN distinguished from all other animals by the expression of his feelings, as in laughing, and shedding tears. In all animals whose individuals are so widely different it is acquired by education. Is the difference in the minds of men so much the effect of education, as organization? The skull of an negro, an Asiatic, an European, and American compared. Of the animal Economy; or that innate power which conducts man from helpless infancy to his full growth; a power which ceases not its operation while sense and appetite are asleep; being the power that nourishes, refreshes and animates him, and which causes him to sleep and to wake. A distinction between this innate power and that of the MIND; or the power of thinking, reflecting, comparing, and representing to itself past, present, and to come; which power is termed comprehension, understanding, reason, mind, will, freedom, or collectively by the single word SOUL. The opinions of certain ancient and modern philosophers on the locality of the soul.

19.

MAN, of all earthly beings, alone possesses the power of contemplation: He alone is capable of surveying the universe, and of elevating his mind to the Almighty hand that directs the whole: exemplified in a view of the SOLAR SYSTEM; the prospect so astounding as ultimately to oppress the mind by undiscerning amazement! The SUN the great source of heat, light, life, and joy to the globes circulating around him. General description of one of these bodies, viz. the TERRAQUEOUS GLOBE, which we inhabit. The Solar system so perfect that nothing can be mended, or altered for the better; not so the EARTH, where man heightens his enjoyment by mending his habitation. This mending the earth is the noble art of agriculture, whence emerges commerce with its long train of benefits. Commerce binds the world together in a golden chain.

20.

Of the most celebrated theories of the formation and present state of the earth, viz. Burnet's, Woodward's, Whiston's, Buffon's, and Hutton's. Of the formation and use of mountains and the origin and use of rivers.

*itself

21.

The Crust of the earth described; the knowledge of which constitutes the science of MINERALOGY. The contents of the earth but little known; all below 3000 feet is dark conjecture. Of the structure of primaeval and of alluvial mountains. The history of MINERALOGY; of the collection of minerals in the University of Cambridge; its origin, progress and present condition.

22.

Of the Primary Earths. Characteristic properties of ores. Definition of a metal. What some mean by Phlogiston, or fire clothed with a body? Of Platina, Gold, and Quicksilver, or perfect metals; so called because they suffer no oxydation in the furnace. Of Silver, Copper, Iron, Lead, Tin and Zinc. Of the Semi metals. The UNITED STATES replete with minerals; yet we are dependent on foreign nations for riches that lie under our feet! Better for us to find mines of Tin than Gold. The scarcity of the last augments its value. The extravagant price set on diamonds, and other glittering stones, ridiculous in the eyes of Americans. "Quot manus atteruntur, ut unus niteat articulus!" Pliny.

23.

The Natural History of WATER. Water enters the composition of every vegetable, mineral and animal. Whence do Rivers derive their uncoasting supply? Of the perpetual circulation of fresh water from the salt Ocean, through the atmosphere, down the Mountains, and, in the form of Rivers, to the Ocean again; all having a special reference to the sustentation of vegetables; which afford, directly, or indirectly, nutriment to all terrestrial animals. The Natural History of the Atmosphere, a desideratum. Is the Air the offspring, or expiration of Water; and Fire of Air? The opinions of some of the ancients, especially of Thales. "All things out of water." The subject of Agriculture and Commerce resumed. Commerce the best cure for local prejudices.

24.

Of the art of reading the Great Volume of Nature. How the ancient Magi construed it. The analogy between things material and intellectual; or an attempt to show that the material world is a mirror, reflecting moral truths.

25.

The French "System de la Nature," opposed by arguments drawn from Newton, Clarke, Butler, Voltaire, and the common sense of mankind.

26.

After all the struggles of a reluctant philosophy, the necessary resort is to a DEITY. The marks of Design are too strong to be got over. Design must have had a Designer. That there is a God, a perceiving, intelligent, designing Being, at the head of creation, and from whose will it all proceeded, is nevertheless an INFERRE CONCLUSION.^x

^x Terrestrial is here used in contradistinction to submarine.
^x Paley.

The "Boston Medical and Surgical Journal" in announcing Dr. Waterhouse's death, has the following to say of these lectures: "Those who had the benefit of attending these lectures will recollect them as distinguished by the animation of their delivery and the entertaining vivacity of their style."

In 1811 the Doctor published his "Botanist", dedicated to John Adams, "as a token of gratitude for his early recommendation of natural history to his countrymen, as expressed by his able pen in the Constitution of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, and as a mark of that esteem and respect for his character, social, domestic, literary and political long entertained for him by the author." This book consists of a series of essays adapted from his lectures on Natural History and printed in the "Monthly Anthology" published in Boston, in 1804 and continued more or less irregularly. He prefaces one of these essays with the following passage from the "Spectator."--

"If love be any refinement, conjugal love must be certainly so in a much higher degree. It is the parent of substantial virtues and agreeable qualities, and cultivates the mind while it improves the behavior."

He then begins his essay thus:

"We dedicate the present number to such of our fair country women, as honor these essays with perusal. Our Flora, on this occasion, has bound her cheerful brow with myrtle and placed the white rose in her bosom. We have moreover selected as a motto, a passage from that accomplished scholar, and friend of the sex, Addison, as containing a charming sentiment, every way proper to precede the the history of a female, (Mrs. Elizabeth Blackwell) who not only shone with uncommon splendor as an artist and a botanist, but was rendered still more conspicuous by the additional luster of conjugal affection, which virtue she exercised at the darkest periods, and during the most distressful pangs of human calamity.

Our fair readers will pardon us, if we should fail in celebrating conjugal affection, the groundwork of all domestic virtues. Teachers of righteousness themselves may excuse us, if we cast a look of regret to this too much neglected portion of moral philosophy. We have colleges for teaching every art and science. We have minute directions in gardening and agriculture. We have numberless books on the doctrine of business; on self policy, or the art of rising in life; on oratory, and on politics; while that which is worth them all, the doctrine of domestic happiness, is left comparatively uncultivated; yet this is that philosophy, spoken of by Lord Bacon, which of all others comes home to men's business and bosoms. The history of every civili-

ized nation, nay every man's own recollection, affords abundant proofs, that the female mind is equally capable with that of the male. It is situation and circumstances that rouse the latent energies of the female soul. Whence is it, that the children of widows become generally better men and better women than children brought up in conjunction with the father? Is it because afflictive circumstances have called forth the dormant energies of heroic woman, and perfected a virtue peculiar to the sex; a virtue, which originated in conjugal affection. Can this evanescent world, this anxious science, exhibit a more interesting sight to the philosopher, than a virtuous widow weeping over her houseless child of want? Yes; there is one picture still more afflicting. It is when the father and husband is worse than dead, through his folly and his crime. Here, if conjugal love has not been ripened into maternal affection, and grown up into the highest of stoical virtues, nay more, sublimed into religion, the wretched woman sinks into intemperance, or is lost in despair. An over anxious and unrestrained fondness is not true maternal affection. The fowls of the air and the beasts of the field have also a blind, a furious fondness for their young. Maternal affection is when judgement draws more closely the bonds of nature."

It is evident that Dr. Waterhouse never became reconciled to the change through which he ceased to be the lecturer on natural history. In a letter written to President John Quincy Adams, about 1825, about what seemed to him to be the natural boundaries of the country, he closes as follows:

"I close with a word or two on this University- Dr. Pearson told me some years ago, that his father-in-law, President Helyoke, said to him, on his death bed- 'if any man wishes to be humbled and mortified, let him become President of Harvard College,' " said the Dr., I then thought a very strange speech; but I now perceive the wisdom of it; for Pearson retired from it in utter disgust. Webber lost his life by it; and I do not believe that the chair, even now, feels, at all times, as if stuffed with elder-down. Pearson predicted to me, & to others, that the ingrafting the botanical & natural history professorship on the University would operate the destruction of the institution. I everyday see his prediction verifying. Two of their ablest teachers," men who have studied & travelled in Europe have recently left them, & are about establishing a seminary for the instruction of lads at Northampton. The Amherst college has lost, by sudden death, its Calvinistic President but the institution is progressing, while 40 young men of spirit have left Harvard filled with resentment. The establishment is in no small distress for money, owing principally to following the advice of some of the very wisest men that ever trod the soil of Essex, who persuaded them to sell out their 6 pr. cent stock when it was down to 85! This was all owing to political blindness, & clerical ignorance. It is said, & I believe it, that the funds of the Natural History professorship is nearly all consumed wasted without honor or profit. If so, I think the history of Ahab, Habsath & Jezebel is about finished. If this be a true state of things, they have the bitter reflection, that it is all owing to the advice of one man, who accepted a seat in the Corporation on the express condition of doing as he had a mind to. I heartily wish the

prosperity of this noble institution; but I am convinced, that one generation, with its rancorous politics, must pass away, before this college, and its adjunct, the Academy of Arts & Sciences, will be placed on a safe, honorable & prosperous footing. I wish never to have anything more to do with them. I have no more sons to listen to their instructions; and I think so little of them that I wonder how I came to say so much of their affairs; for assuredly they very rarely occupy the thoughts of your old Leyden Friend."

Benjⁿ Waterhouse.

Notwithstanding the unpleasant experiences of Dr. Waterhouse in connection with his labors in natural history in Harvard College, he never lost his interest in or love for this branch of science. When an old man, nearly eighty years of age, he wrote to a gentleman in Newport, for which place he always cherished a great fondness, as follows:

"Commence a museum, by collecting and preserving the many numerous fishes of Rhode Island, which can be easily preserved and by due care, kept free from vermin;- make also a collection of stuffed birds and shells of all kinds, and indeed every product of nature. If I do not mistake, Mr. Hunter has a valuable folio book on Fishes by Redi,- From these you can go to insects, including butterflies,- Only begin and you will be surprised how a collection will grow to respectability. BEGIN, and remember the potent efficacy of 'le premier pas,'* Remember the greatest body was once in embryo, therefore begin.

Allow me to recommend Lyceum Lectures to the gentlemen of Newport, and that on any subject except politics, religion or the mystic tie, or anything savoring of party,- I was the first who commenced the all important subject of Natural History by giving a few lectures at Providence College in the year 1785; and from that small beginning, see how that department has grown and spread through the Union.

Therefore I say- Begin, and echo the truth that the greatest body was once in embryo.

To show that I am in earnest, I will do my part and assist in the business,- I will, if my health and faculties are spared six months longer, come to Newport, and give you a Lecture or two by way of aiding in the good cause which you have been the means of suggesting."

We now come to that part of Dr. Waterhouse's work which won for him his most permanent fame, namely the introduction of the newly discovered process of vaccination, as a preventive against small pox, into this country and hemisphere.

From his youth the Doctor had been interested in measures for the prevention of small pox. He communicated an account of the laws and regulations for that purpose to Dr. Haygarth, of London, and his letter on the subject was printed in that city as early as 1782..

*the first step.

In order that the reader may appreciate the importance of a discovery, the practice of which is so common to us of the present day, let us glance briefly at the condition of the world at that time, as regards the prevalence of small pox, and the incidents which led to the great discovery. We quote from Harrington's "History of the Harvard Medical School:"

"In the last fifty years of the 18th century the death rate in England from Small-pox was ninety-seven per 1000 deaths, viz. one in every ten deaths from all causes at all ages was due to smallpox. In the last twenty-five years of the same century thirty-two and one half per cent of all cases of smallpox were fatal. It has been estimated that sixty million inhabitants died in Europe from smallpox during the eighteenth century, also that one tenth of all the deaths of the human race were due to this cause at the time when Jenner was making his observations."

Another writer says that smallpox destroyed or disfigured a fourth part of mankind. Dr. Waterhouse in one of his publications writes:

"The inhabitants of New England view the smallpox with singular dread; not that they ever suffered any remarkably desolating visitation from it, but the malady has been kept at an awful distance, by restrictive laws, and still stronger popular impressions; so that in New England, the most democratical region on the face of the earth, the priest, the magistrate, and the people, have voluntarily submitted to more restrictions and abridgements of liberty, to secure themselves against that terrific scourge, than any absolute monarch could have enforced."

We quote again from Harrington:

"It had been recognized that milkmaids of Holstein and of dairy districts of England seemed to enjoy a special immunity from the disease, and, even before Jenner's experiments, that there was a definite connection between this exemption and the occurrence of cow-pox. Among the best authentic cases is that of a schoolmaster (Peter Flett) who in 1791 inoculated three children. This was done with virus taken directly from the cow. He used a pocket knife with which he made a series of cuts upon the back of the hand between the thumb and fore finger. Proof of the value of this measure came three years later, when all the children of his school, except those three whom he had so crudely inoculated, contracted smallpox. These early beginnings went unnoticed until Jenner's 'Inquiry'".

Jenner vaccinated his first patient May 14, 1796. Not caring to vaccinate from arm to arm he did not have another opportunity until Mar. 1798. The results of these experiments were published later in the same year.

That Dr. Waterhouse was closely in touch with medical events in England is shown by the fact that early the next year he received Jenner's publication which was sent him by his old friend, Dr. Lettson. Indeed, Dr. Waterhouse says that he first heard from England regarding the matter when Jenner had vaccinated only about six persons. He seems to have immediately grasped the possible importance of this discovery. "The prospect of the vast importance," he writes later, "not only to my country, but to mankind, of this discovery, so filled my mind, that I put every other consideration under my feet, and gave myself up to the cultivation and diffusion of a practice, destined to withdraw another evil from the condition of man. I willingly sacrificed my private business to this great work. For seven years I defended this salutiferous practice, in its disputed march through a host of enemies, till it attained a triumph so complete, that throughout the six New England States, it is rare, very rare, indeed, at this time to meet an American wearing in his face the marks of small-pox."

The narrative of the part which he took in introducing, diffusing and defending, against the ridicule of many of the profession and the prejudice of the public in this country, what has proved to be one of the most important discoveries ever made in the medical world, can, perhaps, be best told in the Doctor's own words, which the writer has taken from his works, "Prospect of Exterminating the Small Pox, or A History of the King Pox &c &c." and "Progress of the new Inoculation in America."

"In the beginning of the year 1799 I received from my friend, Dr. Lettson, of London, a copy of Dr. Edward Jenner's 'Inquiry into the causes and effects of the Variolae Vaccinae, or Cow Pox,' a disease totally unknown in this quarter of the world. On perusing this work, I was struck with the unspeakable advantages that might accrue to this country, and indeed to the human race at large, from the discovery of a mild distemper that would ever after secure the constitution from that terrible

scourge, the small pox. My attention was not the less awakened by a previous impression, now confirmed, that the small pox came originally from the brute creation, As the ordinary mode of communicating even medical discoveries in this country, is by newspapers, I drew up the following account of the cow-pox entitled, 'Something Curious in the Medical Line,' which was printed in the Columbian Centinel, * Mar. 12, 1799."

As this is the first information ever given on the subject in this hemisphere, the following abstract will, perhaps, be read with interest.

"Everybody has heard of those distempers accompanied with pocks or pustules called the small pox, the chicken pox and the swine pox, but few have ever heard of the cow-pox, or if you like the term better the cow small pox; or to express it in technical language, the varicellæ vaccinae. There is however such a disease, which has been noticed here and there in several parts of England, more particularly in Gloucestershire, for sixty or seventy years past, but has never been an object of medical inquiry until very lately. ~~*****~~ This malady appears first on the teats of the cows in the form of irregular pustules or pocks. They are commonly of palish blue, somewhat approaching to livid, and surrounded by an erysipelatous inflammation, resembling the St. Anthony's fire. ~~*****~~ The cows soon become sick, and the secretion of milk is lessened, but I never heard of one dying with it. Those who milk cows thus affected, seldom or ever fall catching the distemper, if there be cracks, wounds or abrasions in the hands. That is to say they are inoculated. When affected there appears on different parts of the hands and wrists, inflamed spots, having the appearance of blisters produced by burns. These run quickly to suppur. These superficial supurations have a circular form with their edges more elevated than the center, very much resembling a certain stage of the small pox. These depressed pustules or pocks, are of a color approaching to blue. Absorption now takes place and a soreness and sometimes tumors appear in the armpits. Then the arterial system becomes affected; the pulse is quickened, and shivering with a general lassitude and pains in the back and limbs supervene, and these symptoms are not unfrequently accompanied with vomiting. There is to, a pain in the head and dizziness. These symptoms varying in their degree and violence, generally continue from one day to three or four, leaving ulcerated sores, about the hands, resembling those on the cows teats, from whence they sprung. The lips, nostrils and eyelids are sometimes affected with sores, but those evidently arise from their being rubbed or scratched with the patients infected fingers. This is the common course of the disease with the human species. No person was ever known to die of this distemper. But what makes this newly discovered disease so very curious, and so extremely important is, that every person thus affected is ever after secured from the ordinary small pox, let him be ever so much exposed to the effluvia of it, or let ever so much ripe matter be inserted into his skin by inoculation. In other words - a person who has undergone the local disease and specific fever occasioned by the cow-pox infection, is thereby rendered ever after unsusceptible of the

*Published in Boston.

small pox. It is worthy of remark that the infection of the cow pox can be conveyed to the human species by the ordinary mode of inoculation. And it is observed, that there is no difference in the effects of the matter taken from the cow, and of the matter generated successively in the second, third, fourth or fifth human creature. Such are the outlines of a mild disease, the knowledge of which may lead to consequences of the utmost importance to the whole human race, no less indeed than that of superciding if not extinguishing that terrible scourge, the small pox." ***** "This imperfect sketch is thrown into the newspaper at this time, with a view of exciting the attention of our dairy farmers to such a distemper among their cows. It may also be gratifying to some of the faculty of medicine, who, it is presumed, are not yet generally informed of an epizootic disease, capable of being communicated from the brute to the human kind, and which when communicated, is a certain security against the smallpox.*****

It is highly probable that some of the most distressing diseases which afflict mankind, have an animal origin; and time may prove, that small-pox, whooping cough, and one kind of quincy, have like the hydrophobia a similar source."

Cambridge, Mar.12,1799.

"This publication," says Dr. Waterhouse, "shared the fate of most others on new discoveries. A few received it as a very important discovery, highly interesting to humanity; some doubted it; others observed that wise and prudent conduct, which allows them to condemn or applaud, as the event might prove; while a greater number, especially the physicians, absolutely ridiculed it as one of those medical whims which arise today and tomorrow are no more." At a meeting of the American Academy of Arts & Sciences, held a few weeks after in one of the rooms of this University, I communicated what I knew of the novel distemper. The reception of this communication was, much to my satisfaction, especially with the illustrious president, (John Adams, President of the United States) who to a profound erudition in laws and politics, joins a no small knowledge of Medicine."

Soon after this Dr. Waterhouse received another publication on the subject, by Dr. William Woodville, physician to the smallpox and inoculating hospitals in the city of London. The large amount of information contained in this work and what he had also obtained by correspondence

 "It was also denounced from many pulpits with great bitterness as an attempt to bestialize the race.

confirmatory of the value of the practice was "too great," he declared, "to be resisted by any mind not perverted by predudice," and this induced ^{him} to make a second communication to the "Centinel," which was printed in the issue of Nov. 15, 1799, under the title "Cow-Pox."

This article received more favorable consideration than the first publication.

"I now found," writes the Doctor, "that the brief history which I had given of the origin and progress of this disease made a favorable impression on the minds of the people. Perceiving that this disease began to excite a spirit of inquiry among our literary men, I deemed it of importance to collect and examine everything that had or might be published on the subject, and to acquire, from my correspondents in England, every information respecting a distemper so interesting to humanity. But distance in space operates on some minds like distance of time. People are not so ready to believe what happened a great while ago, or a great way off. I therefore found it necessary to bring the matter home to us, and to repeat in America the experiments performed on the other side of the Atlantic. Under a serious impression of affecting a public benefit, and conceiving it more over, a duty in my official situation in this University, I sent to England for some of the vaccine or cow-pox matter for trial. After several fruitless attempts, I obtained some by a short passage from Bristol, from Dr. Haygarth of Bath, and with it I inoculated the younger part of my family. The first of my children that I inoculated was a boy five years old, named Daniel Oliver Waterhouse."

This was the first person inoculated for the Kine pox in the Western Hemisphere and the operation took place July 8, 1800. The second to be inoculated was the Doctor's son, Benjamin, three years of age; the third his daughter, Mary, one year old; the fourth his daughter, Elizabeth, seven years old; and then three of his domestics, all in Cambridge. These experiments on his own children caused much unfavorable comment.

Some even went so far as to say that he was murdering them and the visit of a few physicians from Boston and elsewhere for the purpose of learning something of the "new inoculation" gave rise to a malicious report among some of his brethren that one of his children was so ill as to require consultation. The first person inoculated in Boston, was Mr. Eliphalet Williams, merchant, Aug. 19, 1800.

Wishing to carry his experiments still further Dr. Waterhouse now wrote to Dr. Aspinwall then in charge of the small-pox hospital at Brookline, Mass., as follows:-

"I have collected everything that has been printed, and all the information I could procure from my correspondents, respecting this distemper (cow-pox), and have been so thoroughly convinced of its importance to humanity that I have procured some of the vaccine matter, and therewith inoculated seven of my family. The inoculation has proceeded in six of them in exactly as described by Woodville and Jenner, but my desire is to confirm the doctrine by having some of them inoculated by you. ~~*****~~ I can obtain variolous matter and inoculate them privately, but I wish to do it in the most open and public way possible. As I have imported a new distemper, I conceive that the public has a right to know exactly every step I take in it. I write this, therefore, to enquire whether you will on philanthropic principles, try the experiment of inoculating some of my children who have already undergone the cow-pox. If you accede to my proposal, I shall consider it as an experiment in which we have co-operated for the good of our fellow citizens, and relate it as such in the pamphlet I mean to publish on the subject."

Dr. Aspinwall acceded to this proposal and all seven of Dr. Waterhouse's family were inoculated with the matter of the small pox, without the least trace of infection. Dr. Aspinwall, after observing the process and results, said; "This new inoculation of yours is no sham. As a man of humanity, I rejoice in it, although it will take from me a handsome annual income."

In an article in the "Centinel" Sept. 20, 1800, Dr. Waterhouse pays the following tribute to his open minded assistant:

"It would be wrong to terminate these communications without saying that I could not have thus completed my experiments without the assistance of Dr. Aspinwall. The Dr. met these experiments, which apparently militate at present with his interests, with a candor, and ingenuousness much to his praise. His conduct through the whole business has done honor to his liberality as a practitioner, and to his patriotism as a citizen. If the public have been gratified by the

result of these experiments, they have reason to thank Dr. Aspinwall for his assistance, as I have to reiterate mine for his generosity."

"This decisive experiment," says Dr. Waterhouse, "encouraged others to follow the example set by my own family, so that by the first of September I had inoculated about fifty persons, of different ages, sexes and conditions. By this time the public attention was thoroughly excited, and judging by the the very numerous letters I received from all parts of New England, requesting further information, as well as a supply of matter for carrying on the inoculation, we must conclude that there was never anything, in the medical annals of our country, that excited half the speculation."

Referring to this test the Doctor says, "one fact in such cases is worth a thousand arguments," and to show the advantages of inoculation over the natural disease, and of vaccination over inoculation, he published in the "Centinel" a comparative view of these affections, somewhat figuratively stated, as follows:

Natural Small-Pox:	Inoculated Small-Pox:	Kine-Pox:
"A contagious disease. One in six who take it dies. It is like an attempt to cross a dangerous stream by swimming, where one in six perishes."	"Contagious. One in three hundred dies. It is like crossing the stream in an old leaky boat, where one in three hundred perishes."	"Non-contagious. Never fatal. It is like crossing the stream on a new and safe bridge."

Dr. Martin* has the following to say regarding the labors of Dr.

*Dr. Henry A. Martin was graduated from the Harvard Medical School in 1845. He became interested in vaccination and made a special study of the subject. "He was," says Dr. E.M. Welch, of Philadelphia, "without much doubt, the best informed man in this, or perhaps, in any country, on the general subject of vaccination."

Waterhouse in the cause of vaccination from this time:

"With Waterhouse's announcement of the successful vaccination of his family and the thorough and triumphant test and proof of its value, as a perfect prophylactic of variola, his labors and troubles began: labors and troubles to be continued throughout many years, utterly thankless and unrewarded, but performed and overcome with wonderful energy, enthusiasm and wisdom. The reader may safely accept my assurance that the persecution of Waterhouse was as ferocious and vindictive as that of Dr. Boylston who introduced inoculation, years before, though the weapons were a little finer, than mobs with halters, lighted bomb-shells and attempts at murder and arson. Innumerable were the inquiries and demands for vaccine virus, and, although he was untiring in his efforts, innumerable the complaints because, all were not answered and every demand not immediately gratified. In the secular press, in the rarely appearing issues of medical journals, in every available way he ceaselessly cautioned the profession to be careful to follow exactly the precise and admirable rules laid down by Jenner, not one of which has failed to withstand the test of time, or to survive the antagonistic doctrines of innumerable theorists. Over and over again, he repeated, and enforced the repetition with much ability and eloquence that inestimable 'GOLDEN RULE' of Jenner adhering to which, exactly, one can hardly go amiss, and departing whence has been the fertile source of an incalculable amount of evil. Waterhouse's cautions and labors were unheeded, misjudged and futile."

In 1800 Dr. Waterhouse published a pamphlet on the prospect of exterminating the smallpox and in 1802 a book on the "Progress of the New Inoculation in America." The part which the Doctor took in the gradual extension of this practice throughout the country is interestingly told in these publications and we will give the story briefly, largely in his own words:

"The very numerous applications at this time for vaccine virus

embarrassed me not a little, I throw out a cautionary hint on this subject, and intreated even my quondam pupils to pretract their application for virus, until the practice was more firmly established by experiment. But this disinterested hint was misconstrued, and the mischief I dreaded ensued. I had been particularly careful to caution my readers against spurious cases. I warned them, that there were circumstances, which, if not critically attended to, would bring the inoculation of this recently imported disease into temporary disrepute. I mentioned, that when the pustule or inoculated part, had degenerated into an ulcer, the matter taken from it, though it possesses the power of inflaming the arm, and of raising the fever in the person to whom it is applied, is nevertheless incapable of securing the system against the infection of small-pox.

I felt it my duty in November of the same year to acquaint the public, through the medium of the newspaper, that the kine-pox had, in many places, degenerated from its original mild character, and that this deviation appeared to have arisen from the inoculator taking his matter from the pustule at too late a period. To give all possible weight to my cautions respecting spurious cases, I added this extract from the celebrated Jenner. 'Much caution is therefore necessary in the progress of this inquiry; and this is my grand fear, that the discovery may fall into discredit from a want of that attention in conducting the experiments which the subject requires: for example, a person may conceive he has cow-pox on his lancet, when, in fact, there may be only a little putrid pus. However, truth must appear at last.'

But these repeated cautions were disregarded by the young and sanguine practitioner, who saw nothing but regular cases, little trouble and great profits. Perceiving that my reiterated warnings were misconceived and misrepresented, and finding some professional gentlemen in the country so wrapt up in ideas of extreme simplicity, that they encouraged women and children to inoculate each other, I ceased from further expres-

sions of that kind, and endeavored to content myself with predicting the consequences.

During this period, viz. the autumn of 1800, a singular traffic was carried on in the article of Kine-pox matter, by persons not in the least connected with the medical profession; such as stage drivers, pedlars and in one instance the sexton of a church. I have known the shirt sleeve of a patient, stiff with the purulent discharge from a foul ulcer, made so by unskillful management, and full three weeks after vaccination, and in which there could have been none of the specific virus; I have known this cut up into small strips, and sold about the country as genuine kine-pox matter, coming ~~exactly~~ directly from me. Several hundred people were inoculated with this caustic morbid poison, which produced great inflammation, sickness, fever, and in several cases eruptions with a greater disturbance of the system than what occurs in the true disease. At length a very serious occurrence arrested, in some degree, the blind rage for promiscuous inoculation.

I had inoculated two inhabitants of Marblehead a town about 16 miles from Boston. Dr. S. had obtained some matter from the arm of a sailor who came into that town from London. But this matter which was supposed to have been kine-pox virus, was in fact variolous matter, and Dr. S. began the use of it on his own children. The consequence was, the smallpox spread through the neighborhood, and the municipal authority gave leave for a general inoculation. Previously to this sad accident, Dr. D. had inoculated about forty persons, from the arm of his son whom I had vaccinated, but did not adhere to my directions respecting the time of taking the matter. All that he inoculated took the small-pox, one excepted. The consequence was, as might have been foretold, a sudden downfall of the credit of the new inoculation, and not a few execrations on the original promotor of it. Although I clearly saw the cause of this disaster, I found it vain to attempt to explain or palliate, but left its develop-

sent to time, that infallible test of truth. There was one thing, however, which attracted the attention of a few, namely, that the two persons whom I inoculated escaped the smallpox. When the popular voice condemned the kine-pock these two facts pleaded strongly in the minds of a few for an arrest of judgment."

This was a very serious affair and there were so many idle and false reports in circulation regarding the situation that Dr. Waterhouse requested the Massachusetts Medical Society to appoint a committee to visit Marblehead, to inquire into the facts of the disaster, and to publish the exact results. Such a committee was appointed consisting of the President, Vice President and Dr. Waterhouse and all arrangements were made to meet at a certain place on a certain day. Dr. Waterhouse was, however, the only one to put in an appearance at the appointed time and he went on alone as far as Lynn. Hesitating to go further without the other members of the committee and thinking there might have been some misunderstanding, he sent word to them that he would remain over night in that place. The next morning he proceeded to Marblehead alone.

The other members of the committee gave as a reason for not meeting the Doctor, as agreed, that they had important cases which they could not leave and that they had sent a message to that effect. This message was not received by Dr. Waterhouse. This excuse did not satisfy the latter and his insinuation that the other members of the committee were not sincere in making the appointment finally led to a very bitter newspaper controversy between the Doctor and several members of the Medical Society in which, according to the custom of the time, the words, "lie" and "falsehood" were freely used.

Arriving at Marblehead Dr. Waterhouse "examined every link in the chain of their calamity." Eight days previous to this he had vaccinated his chaise driver "and the clergymen, physicians, and other respectable characters in Marblehead, all declared that their unfortunate cases

had a very different appearance from his." He also found a person who had not passed through the smallpox and inoculated him from the arm of his chaise driver that they themselves might see the true disease in all its stages. "This completed their conviction," says the Doctor, "so that now (1801) there is no town in New England where the inhabitants are more convinced of the efficacy of the kine-pock as a security against small-pox."

Dr. Martin, in an article which he published, refers to this unfortunate affair as follows:

"Those only who have looked more deeply into Waterhouse's long stewardship can know and estimate the courage with which he alone, abandoned by the President and Vice-president of the Massachusetts Medical Society who had promised to accompany him, calmly faced the enraged population of Marblehead. They alone know how bravely he met that mob of afflicted and enraged men, afflicted because those near and dear to them were in the grasp of the destroyer; enraged because the professional brethren of Waterhouse had informed them that their affliction was but a legitimate result of their new-fangled inoculation which Waterhouse had so ardently taught. They know, too, that that mob being neither one of medical or theological bigots did not hang Waterhouse or tar and feather him at least, which it must be feared would have been an exquisite gratification to the two brethren who should have been with him but were not, but listened to his calm, clear, honest, and under all the circumstances, marvellously sagacious and accurate explanation of the disaster and accompanied him homeward with thanks and honor and cordial invitations to visit their town again."

To resume Dr. Waterhouse's narrative:

"Some of my trans-atlantic brethren seemed to have had a just sense of the anxious situation incident to the first steps in an important experiment and practice, entirely new. For it should be borne in

mind that I commenced this new inoculation at a period when it was a novelty even in London. To rouse attention, to create belief, to inspire confidence, were laborious preliminary steps. But to confirm assertion by public experiment, insulated as I was, and remote from all aid in case of embarrassment, was a task delicate, difficult, and anxious.

I wish not to conceal from the public, that about the latter end of the autumn, or the beginning of the winter of 1800, I perceived that the vaccine disease had deviated from its original character, and assumed a face with which I was not acquainted. Some adopted the notion that the small-pox was at its origin the cow-pox, and that it increased in force and malignity as it progressed through sinful man.

I used on three or four persons some shining, glazy looking thread which was dispensed in great profusion in Boston and it produced in every case very distressing, if not alarming symptoms. I dared not, at that period, utter ~~the~~ my thoughts as to the cause. Had these severe cases continued, I should ^{have} relinquished the practice, and advised everybody else to do likewise.

At this gloomy period of the ~~practice~~ business I wrote my correspondents in England for a fresh supply of virus. I gave Dr. Jenner a minute history of the whole transaction and begged him to explain this deterioration of the virus, for I wish not to conceal my own perplexity at this period."

Replying, Dr. Jenner wrote him a very friendly letter in which he emphasizes the importance of taking the virus before the efflorescence appears. This direction was afterwards known as the "golden rule" of Jenner. The following is an abstract of the letter.

London, Bond Street Feb. 24,
1801.

My dear Sir:-

"I believe according to the laws of true politeness, I should begin this letter with an apology. Allow me then to request you to pardon my seeming inattention. I say seeming, for be assured you are

frequently in my thoughts; and when I think of you, I foolishly long for powers that a mortal ought not to aspire at. Nothing less than a trumpet, not that wispering thing used by the mariner, but one that would carry my voice on the rapid wings of the wind across the wide ocean that divides us. How quickly would I then sooth a thousand unpleasant feelings! How quickly would I then silence the malevolent tongue of an ----- that seems to wish to disturb your repose for being an advocate in the cause of human happiness. It is impossible for me, who bear in mind the philanthropic intrepidity, of your conduct in adopting vaccine inoculation, in a part of the world so remote from all aid, in case of embarrassment; to think of you, without feeling indignant at the unjust dealings of this insidious person. But I shall suspend my resentment, hoping that when you favor me with another letter it may inform me of this Gentleman's conversion and the recantation of his errors. Every champion in the cause of vaccination has had his ---- to contend with --. As for myself, I have had an Host of them upon me; but, thank Heaven, they are all subdued, or nearly so; and vaccination is marching triumphantly through the globe.****

What a lamentable thing distance is! distance almost immeasurable between friend and friend! - Would I could say, will you dine with me? or take coffee with me tomorrow, that we may talk over fully our vaccine affairs? But alas! so great is the space between us, you might as well receive my invitation to the moon, nay the georgium sidus, as on the other side the Atlantic. We must do the best we can under these disadvantages, and be thankful that the ingenuity of man has devised ships, and given speech to feathers."

After writing of the beneficent results of the practice as shown by an investigation having in mind a possible reimbursement to himself by Parliament, and giving some details in regard to spurious cases, &c., he concludes:

"And now, my good Doctor, I would fain proceed further, and settle my epistolary account with you; but our friend Spaulding tells me if I do not make haste the ship, intending to convey this, will be gone. Spare then my life a little longer. I have not said half I wish to say, nor taken that notice of your excellent epistles so fully as I ought. But I am this moment fifty letters behind hand with my correspondents - a distressing idea,- Think what a weight has fallen upon me, and be compassionate when you peruse this blotted scrawl; and think too how highly you are esteemed by

your faithful friend and servant

Edward Jenner."

"Very early in the spring of 1801," continues Dr. Waterhouse, I received a fresh supply of matter from Dr. Lettison and Dr. Jenner; and soon after more from Dr. Pearson, Dr. Woodville, Mr. King, Mr. Wachsels, Mr. Kerre, Sir Grenville Temple, and the Vaccine Institution of London; -----
had asked
 "Dr. Waterhouse for a biographical sketch of his life.

and also from Dr. Haygarth and Mr. Creaser of Bath; and from Mr. Dunning of Plymouth-Dock. Previously to this second importation, I had reason to believe that the true virus had become extinct throughout America.

The Mass. Medical Society as well as several practitioners in Boston and vicinity imported the matter about the beginning of this summer but it failed in communicating the true disease with one exception. Practitioners of New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, Charleston, Newport and Providence, R.I. had the same unfortunate experience.

With more information and a fresh supply of virus I recommenced my inoculation in March 1801 and rejoiced to find the distemper possessing every genuine characteristic.

The second interruption, in the continuity of my cases was from relying on some of my brethren, for the recent fluid. This was a source of inexpressible anxiety and perplexity. But for one patient, the virus would have become extinct a second time in America. The anxiety I have endured and the offence I have given when it was not in my power to transmit an inch of infected thread are not mentioned in a tone of complaint; but to notify the young practitioner that he must not expect to diffuse the blessings of this benign remedy, and reap the rewards of it, without some trouble and some anxiety.

About this time (the Spring of 1801) I received a number of letters from a variety of people in the Southern states, especially from Virginia, expressing a strong wish to be better acquainted with the Kinpoek, and a desire to introduce this benign remedy into that extensive region. As most of the writers were entirely unknown to me, I was at a loss how to act. I might deny a physician of character, and I might entrust it to a person who had none. While doubting what course to take, the right road opened to my view.

Jefferson

I had heard that President ^{Jefferson} was favorably impressed by my first annunciation of the Jennerian discovery and practice. Indeed the fol-

following letter written in consequence of transmitting him a copy of my pamphlet on this subject, sufficiently testifies it.

Washington, Dec. 25, 1800.

Sir,-

"I received last night, and have read with great satisfaction, your pamphlet on the subject of the king-pox, and pray you to accept my thanks for the communication of it.

I had before attended to your publications on the subject in the newspapers, and took much interest in the results of the experiments you were making. Every friend of humanity must look with pleasure on this discovery, by which one more evil is withdrawn from the condition of man; and must contemplate the possibility, that future improvements and discoveries may still more and more lessen the catalogue of evils. In this line of proceeding you deserve well of your country; and I pray you accept my portion of the tribute due to you, and assurances of high consideration and respect, with which I am, Sir,"

Your most obedient, humble servant,

Thomas Jefferson.

Dr. Waterhouse, Cambridge.

"Hearing from some gentlemen direct from the seat of government," continues Dr. Waterhouse, "that the President wished for still more information, and that he was desirous to see the practice introduced into Virginia, and the other southern States, I sent him the vaccine virus, and painted representations of the pustule, in all stages on the white man, and on the African, together with the following letter.

Cambridge, June 8, 1801.

To THOMAS JEFFERSON, President of the United States, and
President of the American Philosophical Society.

Sir,

There may possibly seem a want of due consideration in sending this letter, and what accompanies it, to draw the attention of the President of the United States from important concerns of our nation to a subject more nearly allied to medicine, than to the affairs of state.

On this account I should have hesitated still longer, were I not constantly receiving letters from unknown persons, in different parts of Virginia, entreating me to send them the vaccine matter, with instructions for carrying on the king-pock inoculation. From one, received very lately, I learn that the small-pox is unknown to half the inhabitants of your extensive and populous state; that in some quarters

of it, the very name of small-pox excites terror; and that your laws are full as severe as those of Massachusetts and Rhode Island, respecting its introduction by inoculation. From these letters I am convinced that there is, perhaps, no state in the Union more deeply interested in the adoption of this new inoculation than Virginia. By letters from Norfolk, I find, that the inoculation for the king-pock has been attempted there, but that the subjects of it did not resist the small-pox. Such failures may bring this admirable discovery into disrepute, and deprive you, for a time, of its blessings; nay, what is very serious, such accidents may be the means of spreading the small-pox among you, as it has in some places among us. Not merely ignorance, but avarice, rivalry, and some other unworthy passions, have cast a temporary shade over this important discovery, in some of the towns of this Commonwealth; and I suspect you have experienced something similar, though not from the same causes.

I presume you will think with me, that too much care and attention cannot be exercised in the introduction of this valuable but delicate remedy among you. I will do all in my power for its establishment, provided I can obtain the countenance of men of more consequence than myself. Amidst the pelting storm of his adversaries, Dr. Jenner had the countenance of his COVENANT; and the Duke of York is the patron of the London Vaccine Institution. BONAFANTE took a lively interest in the diffusion of vaccinism in France; and so did the German nobility at the court of Vienna. Under such patronage, people in inferior walks of life embraced the doctrines of this new discovery with entire confidence.

Having no personal acquaintance with any medical man in Virginia (some of my own pupils excepted, to whose inexperience I should hardly venture to commit this delicate business) I cannot see my way clear to transmit the matter to I know not whom. After much thought, and some advice, I have concluded to send it to President Jefferson, together with such books and descriptions as may enable a physician experienced in exanthematous diseases, to conduct the process with certainty.

My view is this:- The President can at once fix his eye on some proper medical character, to whom the first experiments may be entrusted; some cautious discerning person, perhaps his own family physician. A series of experiments may be directly instituted by him; and when the distemper has proceeded according to the description herewith sent, the subjects of them, may afterwards be submitted to the test of the small-pox inoculation, just as was done at Paris, under direction of the National medical school.

As your domestics are principally blacks, I have taken no small pains to procure a picture of the disease, as it appeared on their skins. Besides being of vast importance to the state at large, I conceive that an exertion to preserve this wretched people from the horrors of the small-pox, cannot but be agreeable to that beneficent and Entium, who has seen fit to make that enviable distinction between the situation and faculties of this helpless race and us!

By causing this inoculation to pass through the respectable channel here contemplated, Virginia, and of course, the other southern States, will insure to themselves the blessings of this invaluable discovery, and the serious evils that have arisen in some places, will be avoided. Young and unexperienced practitioners are most forward in this business; yet such can neither excite attention, nor inspire confidence; whereas, if it came from Mr. JEFFERSON, it would make, like a body falling from a great height, a deep impression. Need I then, make any further apology for sending the matter first to you, encumbered, as I know you must be, with other concerns?

I here send a little book, compiled by Mr. Aikin, Surgeon of London; being perhaps, the best manual for the inoculator, extant. I have it in contemplation to publish something of the kind, more adapted to this country, and containing some letters of Dr. Jenner to me, on the best mode of conducting this inoculation. I also transmit for your acceptance, exact pictures of the kine-pock pustule, in all its stages, from the third day to its final termination, painted with surprising justness, together with similar representations of the small-pox, on corresponding days. The dark coloured picture, is a representation of the kine-pock on the skin of the negro. I have never inoculated but three of this colour; but, as far as I can remember, it is equally accurate. The graphic art never, perhaps, received a greater honour. I likewise send some fresh infected thread, confined between two thin plates of talc, and inclosed in the laminae of a card; the whole pasted up so as to exclude entirely the external air. In this way, I conjecture, it may be sent to the Cape of Good Hope, the Isle of France, or the hot regions of India, without losing its efficacy. The red thread marks the place where it is to be opened.

I would advise the inoculator, when he makes the incision, or rather scratch, in the arm, not to draw blood, if he can help it. If this be unavoidable, it is best to wait a moment until the exudation ceases, lest the blood should dilute the virus too much, and so weaken its power. Thread is then to be covered with a piece of gold beaters skin, which I generally take off in 24 hours. By the fifth or sixth day, the inoculator may expect to see the effects of his operation. By the eighth the vesicle will be found to contain a small quantity of pellucid fluid, but in no degree resembling matter, or pus; on the contrary, as limpid as the dew drop on flowers, at this season. And this is the exact period, and proper condition of the vaccine fluid, for I will not call it matter, for the purpose of inoculation. It may be taken on the ninth day, but seldom or never later. The want of strict attention to this important point, has produced all the disasters that have occurred in this inoculation in Europe and America, and therefore, this rule cannot be too emphatically urged. The virus should never be taken after the efflorescence has come on, much less during the febrile symptoms. Mr. Aikin allows too much latitude. Some give a still wider license, and assert that the genuine virus is found in a pustule on the twelfth or thirteenth day; but Jenner and experience say otherwise. 'I wish you to consider,' says Dr. Jenner, in one of his letters to me, 'this EFFLORESCENCE as a sacred boundary, over which the lancet should never pass'. I cannot then but reiterate the injunction, to take the vaccine fluid on the seventh, eighth or ninth day, and not on the tenth, eleventh, or twelfth. For want of this knowledge, spurious cases have arisen, and multiplied in our country. It is the most important point in the whole process; the fulcrum on which the whole business turns; and yet no writer, but the celebrated Jenner, appears to be impressed with its importance. It is natural, say some, to conclude that it is best to take the fluid for inoculation, at the very height of the disorder, that is, of the efflorescence. But I am doubtful whether this be the voice even of a legitimate theory. When the inflammation, or efflorescence of the inoculated part commences, it indicates that absorption has already be-

 "It was several weeks after writing this, that I discovered the pernicious effects of heat on the vaccine virus.

gun; and after absorption has commenced, the quantum, or force of the virus in the vesicle, pustule, or inoculated part, denominate it which you will, is diminished. To note the progress and aspect of the pustule, is of prime importance in the commencement of this practice. 'One of the first objects of this pursuit, says Dr. Jenner, should be to learn how to distinguish with accuracy, between that pustule which is the true cow-pox, and that which is spurious. Until experience has determined this, we view our object through a mist.' My insulated situation, and remoteness from all correct information on this head, has compelled^{me} to the closest observation of the progress of the pustule, even from hour to hour, with the microscope; and I am convinced of the importance of Dr. Jenner's injunctions to me; nay more, I am convinced of my own blunders.

In people of weak circulation, I have found the progress of this disease more backward, than is here represented: that is to say, the efflorescence described around the pustule on the ninth day, did not make its appearance until the tenth or eleventh, and continued thus backward through the whole progress. I suspect that this may oftener occur in the southern States, than in the colder regions of the north. I have just inoculated a family from Katchez, where this variation was remarkable. In such cases, I take the fluid for inoculation on the ninth, tenth, and even the eleventh day. Should the physician, or physicians, to whom you think proper to confide this matter, wish for any further information from me, they cannot be more ready to ask, than I shall be to communicate what little I know on the subject.

It is perhaps unnecessary for me to say, that it is found, from the most incontestable experiments,

- I. That the kine-pox is not contagious.
- II. That it never has been fatal.
- III. That it completely prevents the small-pox.
- IV. That it conveys no constitutional disease. And
- V. That it creates no blemish, or mark, on the human frame.

These properties make this vicarious distemper, one of the most precious gifts of Providence to afflicted man. That it actually possesses them all, we are assured by the united testimony of the first physicians in London, which is saying the first physicians in the world.

Besides England, this new inoculation now prospers in France, Germany, and at Geneva. The physicians at Geneva had many spurious cases, and some perplexity, until Dr. Jenner sent them, as he did me, fresh matter, and clearer instructions. It has taken the place of small-pox inoculation in the British army and navy, and is spoken of by the surgeons of the latter, as one of the greatest blessings ever extended to it. By a Madrid gazette, just come to my hands, I find that it is introduced there from Gibraltar, by permission of both the British and Spanish governments. Nay more, Lord Elgin has planted it in Constantinople, just about eighty-six years after the Turks helped us to the practice of the variolous inoculation. In no place has the vaccine inoculation been received with more prudence, than in Paris, under the conduct of the National medical school. The report of the committee may be seen in the 4th volume of the Medical and Physical Journal; where it will appear, that they made themselves sure of every inch of ground they passed over.

As to the progress of the inoculation in this quarter, it is very satisfactory. Last autumn we were pestered with spurious cases, and absolutely lost the genuine virus. The most eminent physicians in this region, as well as the most distinguished characters, in the two other learned professions, are advocates for this inoculation; not that I would insinuate, that this new practice is destitute of the advantage

of having adversaries, even among the faculty.

It is in such a prosperous state of the business, that I am desirous of transmitting the blessings of this new discovery to my brethren of the southern States; and in order to insure it success, I wish it may pass from your hands to them.

Should I be the means of introducing this disease, or rather remedy, not merely into Virginia, but into the vast region of the southern States, I should indeed rejoice in the recollection to the end of life.

With the highest respect,

I remain, &c.

Benjamin Waterhouse.

"The President's answer convinced me, that I had done right in transmitting these things to him. ****

Although the President immediately put the matter into the hands of a long established, judicious, and successful physician, it failed in communicating the disease; so did the second portion I sent; and so did the third. The President observed, that as great anxiety was produced at Washington to obtain a successful inoculation, he wished me to continue to send it until he could inform me it had taken. But, as the weather was extremely hot, thermometer 94, 95, and 97 degrees in the shade, and the distance between Cambridge and the city of Washington 500 miles, he suggested a mode of conveying the infected thread in a small vial, immersed in a larger one, filled with water. This portion of matter, thus guarded from the heat, did not rest at Washington, but went on to the President then at Monticello, and suffered no deterioration from the journey, for Dr. Wardlaw inserted it into some of the President's family on the 6th of August 1801, when it communicated the true disease. It was from this source that the President supplied Dr. Gantt at Washington, and thus first planted the vaccine inoculation in the capitol of the UNITED STATES. ***** The President sent a portion of this matter to Dr. John Redman Coxe at Philadelphia which introduced the true disease, for the first time into that city, November the 9th, 1801. ****

I had taken care to acquaint those gentlemen who had written to me for a supply of the matter, from different parts of Maryland, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and other States still farther south, with the steps I had taken to establish the practice nearer to them, under the auspices of Mr. JEFFERSON, by whose directions they might be accommodated with less risque of disappointment, than if attempted to be supplied from Cambridge. And I have had the satisfaction to hear of his condescending attention to their applications. So that I believe those parts of the Union are happily supplied, through this respectable channel.

It is remarkable, that neither at New York, Philadelphia, Charleston, nor Savannah, did any of the vaccine matter, repeatedly imported from London, by different practitioners, ever communicate the disease. In the latter end of May 1801, I had the satisfaction of planting it in New York; which was effected by inoculating a servant of the Governor of the Mississippi territory, and sending him on to that city, where he arrived time enough to afford the genuine virus. But it was lost before autumn. In November, I supplied the physicians of New York through the hands of Dr. Seaman. Soon after a Vaccine Institution was formed in that city, on a plan similar to the one in Golden Square London. Many were here inoculated, and afterwards tested with small-pox to entire satisfaction. They nevertheless lost the matter a third time, and again I supplied them, November 1802. On this occasion, Dr. Edward Miller wrote to me thus;

"For a number of weeks before the final extinction of the matter here, the disease began to decline from its original exquisite character, and gave us some apprehensions that it might not afford entire security against the small-pox. Was this owing to some unknown neglect, at any one, or more links of the chain of succession? Or is it to be ascribed to any degeneracy of the disease itself, produced by time, climate, temperature, or any similar cause? As you have had more experience on this subject, than any person in the United States, you will do a great favour to the Medical board of our king-pox institution, by giving your opinion on this subject."

"Dr. Seaman, another physician of the New York vaccine institu-

tion, in a letter to me, dated Nov. 15, 1802 says,-

"The kind pox infection with us has been fairly worn out; for notwithstanding a careful attention to taking it within the limited time, it has undergone a regular degeneracy, in gradually producing a pustule, less and less like the original one; and being communicable with less and less certainty, till it finally became perfectly inactive. ~~we~~ We have to acknowledge, that even at our vaccine institution, the infection is extinct. Our institution depends therefore entirely upon Dr. Waterhouse for a supply."

"I gave them my idea of the cause of this seeming degeneracy; and ventured, moreover to say, that if, in taking the matter, for the purpose of inoculation, they did not restrict themselves within a narrower circle, than what is allowed in the writings of Dr. W. and Dr. P. in London; and of Dr. C.* in Philadelphia, they may expect to see this deviation from the perfect pustule.

In the autumn of 1801, Dr. Ramsay of Charleston, South Carolina, wrote to me, "that every attempt to introduce the vaccine disease into that city from England, or elsewhere, had failed; and earnestly requested me to send him the matter for another trial." Besides a particular wish to gratify Dr. Ramsey, I hastened to comply with his request, in consideration of the convenient position of Charleston, for diffusing this practice still farther south. ~~whether~~ Whether the particular matter which I sent, first communicated the disease in South Carolina; or, whether it was effected from the same stock, by another route, I never could distinctly learn. I only know, that within a few months after my transmission of the virus, a Vaccine institution was engrafted on their Dispensary in Charleston, and the practice now flourishes there, in a manner highly pleasing to the friends of science and humanity.

Without being more particular, I shall just mention, that I have planted the true vaccine disease directly in the Province of Maine; in New Hampshire; in the state of Vermont, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York,

* He probably refers to Drs. Woodville, Pearson and Cox.

Virginia, South Carolina, Georgia, Kentucky, and Tennessee; and in every part of Massachusetts, including the Islands of Nantucket, and Martha's Vineyard. The physicians in the states of Pennsylvania, Delaware, North Carolina, and Maryland, were supplied from my stock, through Mr. Jefferson, agreeably to the plan suggested in my letter to that distinguished philosopher, who deserves the praise of every friend of humanity, for extending the blessings of this benign remedy to the savage nations, by causing a numerous embassy of Indians to be inoculated at the city of Washington in the winter of 1801, as will appear by the following

Extract from the European Magazine for April 1802.

"Last winter there was a grand embassy of Indians to the President and Congress at Washington. Little Turtle was the head warrior. The President and Government had supplied them with ploughs, and every instrument in common use in agriculture; as well as with spinning-wheel, looms, &c. &c. and, to crown all, the President explained to Little Turtle, how the Great Spirit had made a donation to the enlightened white man; first to CHAS in England, and to him to one^x in Boston, of the means to prevent them from ever having the small-pox, which had occasioned great fatality among that race; and, such confidence had the copper coloured King in the words of his Father, the President, that he submitted to be inoculated, together with the rest of the warriors, by the hands of the Rev. Dr. Gantt, Chaplain to Congress. On their departure the President caused them to be supplied with the vaccine matter, and gave their interpreter an abstract of the letter of instructions which Dr. Waterhouse had written to him. Not long after, fifteen more warriors came down to Washington to receive the same blessing from the Clergyman who had inoculated Little Turtle and his followers."

"After the vaccine matter had been planted here and there, over such a vast extent of country, I conceived it would conduce to public benefit, to collect ~~the~~ and publish the result of the experiments made with it, in the form of a table. For notwithstanding we could adduce thousands of well attested cases of the king-pox rendering the constitution unsusceptible of the small-pox in England, and other parts of Europe; yet, as people are not ready to believe what happened a great way off, or a great while ago, it was found necessary to collect proofs of its prophylactic virtue in our own country. I therefore addressed the American

*Dr. Jenner.

x
Dr. Waterhouse.

practitioners of physic, as usual, through the medium of the Newspaper, and submitted such a plan to their consideration. My idea was explicitly this,- to establish a central point, to which everything relating to this inoculation might be directed; and whence every ray of light, that came from a single place, might be reflected, and every where extend its power of illumination. I was in hopes that the Massachusetts Medical Society would form such a center; in which case the reflected ray would become not only more brilliant, but even generative at the point of repercussion. But, I was constrained to pursue a more diminutive plan, and to goⁱⁿ on this business, as I began it, ALCKE.

Scarcely anything ever occurred in this country, which excited such an universal speculation, as this new and simple mode of counteracting a malady, peculiarly dreadful to the people of this new world. It may easily be imagined, that personal applications, as well as applications by letter, were numerous and incessant. This, however, constituted but a part of the labor. It was necessary to elucidate doubts, remove difficulties, and guard TRUTH, in its disputed march against an host of unbelievers. Indeed, vaccination and its concomitants absorbed all my attention, engrossed all my time, and abstracted me from all other pursuits.

Besides the contest with the incredulous and the indolent, vaccination had to struggle with the interested. They throw many, many obstacles in its way. Of these, the most mischievous was, the discouraging doctrine, that its prophylactic power lasted but for a short time. The common people, when they applied to certain physicians for advice, were taught to believe, that the kine-pock would secure them against the viruluous infection seven years, and no longer. Though repeatedly urged, I declined for a long time, the discussion of this pernicious doctrine. Knowing that it sprung from one of those motives which does the least hon-

or to the human character, I was fearful it would stir up "the angry passions," and then candid discussion would be banished by personal abuse. But finding that this doctrine was a in a fair way of growing into a fixed belief, I published the following refutation of it in the Centinel, July 28th, 1802."

ON THE ABSURD NOTION OF THE TRANSITORY EFFICACY OF THE
COW OR KINE-POCK, IN SECURING THE HUMAN CONSTITUTION
FROM THE SMALL-POX.

"I was in hopes it would be needless for me to come forward again in the newspaper; and was especially desirous to be excused from the disagreeable task of discussing the present subject; but I am called upon both by letters, from the country, and otherwise, to undertake it. The argument urged upon me is, that the enemies of the new inoculation have been fairly beaten from every ground they have taken, but this; and here they are entrenched to the chin, and think themselves perfectly secure. As I have hitherto met everything, capable of a speedy experiment, that has been brought forward to impede the advancement of this admirable blessing, with a public contradiction, so, in like manner, I will meet this DOCTRINE, and then leave it for the common sense to determine, whether this last redoubt, erected and occupied by sordid interest, be, not only commanded, but infiladed, and in great danger of being leveled with the ground."

After giving various facts, incidents and experiences, both in this country and Europe to prove his contention, the Doctor continues his letter as follows,-

"If people will not believe physicians of the first rank, because they are physicians; if they will not believe noblemen, clergymen, and private gentlemen, because they are Britons, (and however incredible it may appear, even that has been urged) then may they have recourse to one of our own countrymen, who can be consulted every day on the exchange of Boston, respecting the opinion prevalent in England, of the lasting security which the cow or kine-pock affords against the small-pox; as the following letter will fully explain."

After quoting the letter, which was written to him by one, Jonathan Porter of Medford, Mass, on certain observations in regard to the matter made by the latter in England, Dr. Waterhouse closes his article as follows,-

"After the absurd doctrine, respecting the short duration of the efficacy of the kine-pock, is no longer urged, there is but one other scheme, to which the enemies of the new inoculation can have recourse

for effecting its disgrace, and that is, throwing it into the hands of improper persons. I have endeavored to expose the manifold mischiefs that have arisen, and will again arise, from this irregular conduct, in "a narrative of facts, concerning the king-pox inoculation in New England," just published at New York, in the Radical Repository. I should not have glanced at this subject at this time, were not the same practices now going forward in a town close by Boston, where, from the delusive offers of inoculating gratis, or for a very small fee, people have been induced to receive the disease from persons not qualified to judge between the true and the spurious pustule; the consequence has already been, that children have followed the example, and inoculated one another. The result will be, some of these imprudent people will go into the neighbouring hospital, take the small-pox, and then the odium will, as usual, revert to me, because the matter used was taken from my patients. I therefore feel it no more than justice to myself, considering the pains I have taken to mature this business, and a duty I owe to the public, to notice this conduct of ignorance and presumption.

Cambridge, July 21, 1802."

Continuing his narrative of the progress of the new inoculation the Doctor says, - "

Seven years and four months after he had first vaccinated his children he again subjected them to the test of inoculation for the small-pox with the same negative result. This confirmed him in the opinion expressed in the above article that the effect of vaccination was permanent.

Continuing his narrative of the progress of the new inoculation the Doctor says, - "Two gentlemen, one in Middlesex, the other in Norfolk, erroneously supposed themselves particularly aimed at, in the foregoing publication. One of them has forever secured my friendship and respect, for the decent and gentleman like mode of obtaining an explanation."

"It should be remembered, that at this time, the summer of 1802, the new inoculation had not been generally adopted in Boston. It had made greater progress in every capital of each state in the Union, than in the capital of Massachusetts, although the first annunciation in America, of the existence of such a disease as the COX-FOX, was made in Boston, nearly three years before. The faculty in that town, with but one exception, had not given it their decided approbation and countenance.

The younger practitioners inoculated, now and then, a few, but scarcely enough to keep up a continuity of cases, for the preservation of the matter. Soon after, persons not of the profession assumed the business in different parts of the country. From such hands, the practice passed into those of journeyman mechanics, apprentices, day labourers, and, in some instances, children inoculated each other. When rebuked for this imprudence, they replied, they might as well inoculate themselves, as Mr. such a one. Many thoughtful people saw what would be the consequence of such conduct; and both by letter, and in conversation, urged me to publish something on the subject. Indeed, I deemed it my duty to hold this practice up, for the public consideration; which I did in the *Columbian Centinel* August 2d, 1802; but first read it to the President of the Massachusetts Medical Society, determining to suppress it, should the principles and design of it, meet his disapprobation. Its publication, notwithstanding, let loose all "the angry passions."²

The town of Boston was frequently alarmed by the introduction of the small-pox. It was sometimes brought in by sea; sometimes a patient was infected with it, no one knew how; and, being too sick to be removed, the street was boarded up, the red flag displayed on the house, the country people terrified, and the markets affected by it. Such was the actual state of things in Boston, in the month of May 1802. An European can hardly form an adequate idea of the effects of such an alarm in Massachusetts. Thus situated, many terrified people, who dwelt near the infected spot, disbelieving the efficacy of the kine-pock, went to the licenced hospital in Brookline, and were there inoculated for the small-pox. The hospital was, at this time, crowded with patients.

It was ten years since a general inoculation pervaded Boston and its neighborhood; and it was conjectured, that there were nearly fifteen thousand persons liable to the small-pox within that circle. On

² See a specimen in the *Centinel*, by John C. Howard of Dorchester, Mass.

